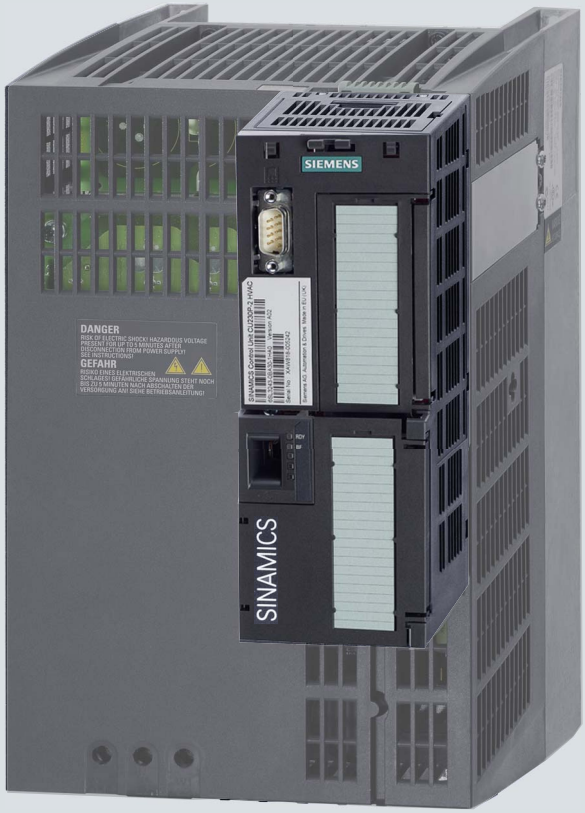
SINAMICS G120

Frequency converters with the Control Units

CU230P-2 HVAC
CU230P-2 DP
CU230P-2 PN
CU230P-2 CAN
CU230P-2 BT - exclusive for Siemens IC BT

Operating instructions · 03/2012



SINAMICS

Answers for industry.

SIEMENS

SIEMENS

SINAMICS

SINAMICS G120 Frequency converters with Control Units CU230P-2 HVAC, CU230P-2 DP, CU230P-2 CAN, CU230P-2 BT

Operating Instructions

Change history

Introduction 1

Description 2

Installing 3

Typical commissioning scenarios 4

Basic commissioning 5

Adapting the terminal strip 6

Configuring the fieldbus 7

Functions 8

Data backup and standard commissioning 9

Service and maintenance 10

Alarms, faults and system messages 11

Technical data 12

Appendix A

Edition 03/2012, Firmware V4.5

Original instructions
03/2012, FW V4.5
A5E02430659B AE

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

⚠ DANGER
indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ WARNING
indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠ CAUTION
with a safety alert symbol, indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

CAUTION
without a safety alert symbol, indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE
indicates that an unintended result or situation can occur if the relevant information is not taken into account.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

⚠ WARNING
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E02430659B AE
℗ 05/2012 Technical data subject to change

Copyright © Siemens AG 2009, 2010, 2011.
All rights reserved

Change history

Important changes with respect to the Manual, Edition 01/2011

New Power Modules	In chapter
• Power Module PM230 with IP20 degree of protection • Power Module PM230 in push through design • Power Module PM240-2 with IP20 degree of protection • Power Module PM240-2 in push through design	Power Modules in degree of protection IP20 and with through-hole technology (Page 17)

New functions in firmware V4.5	In Chapter
PROFINET interface	Communication via PROFINET (Page 91)
Know-how protection	Write and know-how protection (Page 295)

Revised descriptions	In Chapter
Supplemented by the assignment of Power Modules to line filters, line reactors, braking resistors, sine-wave filters and output reactors.	Modularity of the converter system (Page 15)
Descriptions of functions: • Converter control • Setpoint sources • Setpoint processing • Motor control • PID technology controller	Functions (Page 179)

Table of contents

Change history 5

1 Introduction 13

1.1 About this manual 13

1.2 Guide through this manual 14

2 Description 15

2.1 Modularity of the converter system 15

2.2 Control Units 16

2.3 Power Modules in degree of protection IP20 and with through-hole technology 17

2.4 Power Module in IP55 degree of protection / UL Type 12 19

2.5 Line filter 20

2.6 Line reactor 21

2.7 Output reactor 22

2.8 Sine-wave filter 23

2.9 Braking resistor 25

2.10 Brake Relay 26

2.11 Accessories for commissioning and operation 27

3 Installing 29

3.1 Procedure for installing the frequency inverter 29

3.2 Installing reactors and filters 30

3.3 Installing Power Module 32

3.3.1 Dimensions, hole drilling templates, minimum clearances, tightening torques and IP55 33

3.3.2 Dimensions, hole drilling templates, minimum clearances, tightening torques, IP20 and push-through design 34

3.3.3 Dimension drawings PT 36

3.3.4 Connection overview for Power Modules 37

3.3.5 Connecting the line supply and motor 38

3.3.6 EMC-compliant connection of the converter 40

3.3.7 Avoiding electromagnetic interference (EMI) 40

3.4 Installing Control Unit 45

3.4.1 Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU 46

3.4.2 Terminal strips of the CU 47

3.4.3 Wiring terminal strips 48

3.4.4 Selecting the interface assignments 48

4 Typical commissioning scenarios 53

5 Basic commissioning 55

5.1 Preparing for the basic commissioning 55
5.1.1 Does the motor match the converter? 56
5.1.2 Wiring examples for the factory settings 57
5.1.3 Factory setting of the converter control 59
5.1.4 U/f control or speed control? 60
5.1.5 Defining additional requirements for the application 61

5.2 Restoring the factory setting 62

5.3 Using the factory settings 62

5.4 Basic commissioning with the BOP-2 63
5.4.1 Changing settings using BOP-2 65
5.4.2 Basic commissioning 66
5.4.3 Additional settings 67

5.5 Basic commissioning with STARTER 68
5.5.1 Adapting interfaces 69
5.5.1.1 Adapting the USB interface 69
5.5.1.2 Accessing the converter via PROFINET 70
5.5.2 Generating a STARTER project 72
5.5.3 Go online and start wizard for basic commissioning 72
5.5.4 Switch on the motor via the control panel 74
5.5.5 Making additional settings 75
5.5.6 Trace function for optimizing the drive 76

6 Adapting the terminal strip 79

6.1 Preconditions 79

6.2 Digital inputs 80

6.3 Digital outputs 82

6.4 Analog inputs 83

6.5 Analog outputs 87

7 Configuring the fieldbus 91

7.1 Communication via PROFINET 91
7.1.1 What do you need for communication via PROFINET? 92
7.1.2 Connect the converter to PROFINET 93
7.1.3 Configuring communication to the control 93
7.1.4 Select telegram 94
7.1.5 Activating diagnostics via the control 94

7.2 Communication via PROFIBUS 95
7.2.1 What do you need for communication via PROFIBUS? 95
7.2.2 Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS 95
7.2.3 Configuring communication to the control 96
7.2.4 Setting the address 97
7.2.5 Select telegram 98

7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET 99
7.3.1 Cyclic communication 99
7.3.1.1 Control and status word 1 101
7.3.1.2 Control and status word 3 104

7.3.1.3 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection 106
7.3.1.4 Data structure of the parameter channel 107
7.3.1.5 Slave-to-slave communication 112
7.3.2 Acyclic communication 112
7.3.2.1 Reading and changing parameters via data set 47 113

7.4 Communication via RS485 117
7.4.1 Integrating inverters into a bus system via the RS485 interface 117
7.4.2 Communication via USS 118
7.4.2.1 Basic settings for communication 118
7.4.2.2 Telegram structure 119
7.4.2.3 User data range of the USS telegram 120
7.4.2.4 USS parameter channel (PIV) 121
7.4.2.5 USS process data channel (PZD) 126
7.4.2.6 Time-out and other errors 127
7.4.3 Communication over Modbus RTU 129
7.4.3.1 Basic settings for communication 130
7.4.3.2 Modbus RTU telegram 131
7.4.3.3 Baud rates and mapping tables 132
7.4.3.4 Write and read access via FC 3 and FC 6 135
7.4.3.5 Communication procedure 137
7.4.4 Communication via BACnet MS/TP 139
7.4.4.1 Basic settings for communication 140
7.4.4.2 Supported services and objects 141
7.4.5 Communication via P1 147

7.5 Communication over CANopen 151
7.5.1 CANopen functionality of the converter 152
7.5.2 Commissioning CANopen 153
7.5.2.1 Setting the node ID and baud rate 153
7.5.2.2 Monitoring the communication and response of the inverter 154
7.5.2.3 SDO services 155
7.5.2.4 Access to SINAMICS parameters via SDO 158
7.5.2.5 PDO and PDO services 160
7.5.2.6 Predefined connection set 164
7.5.2.7 Free PDO mapping 164
7.5.3 Other CANopen functions 166
7.5.3.1 Network management (NMT service) 166
7.5.4 Object directories 168
7.5.4.1 Free objects 175
7.5.4.2 Objects in drive profile DSP402 175
7.5.5 Configuration example 176

8 Functions 179

8.1 Overview of the inverter functions 179

8.2 Inverter control 181
8.2.1 Switching the motor on and off 181
8.2.2 Two-wire control: method 1 184
8.2.3 Two-wire control, method 2 185
8.2.4 Two-wire control, method 3 186
8.2.5 Three-wire control, method 1 187
8.2.6 Three-wire control, method 2 188
8.2.7 Running the motor in jog mode (JOG function) 189

8.2.8 Switching over the inverter control (command data set) ... 191
8.3 Command sources ... 193
8.4 Setpoint sources ... 194
8.4.1 Analog input as setpoint source ... 195
8.4.2 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source ... 195
8.4.3 Fixed speed as setpoint source ... 198
8.4.4 Specifying the motor speed via the fieldbus ... 200
8.5 Setpoint calculation ... 201
8.5.1 Overview of setpoint processing ... 201
8.5.2 Invert setpoint ... 201
8.5.3 Inhibit direction of rotation ... 202
8.5.4 Minimum speed ... 202
8.5.5 Maximum speed ... 203
8.5.6 Ramp-function generator ... 204
8.6 Motor control ... 205
8.6.1 V/f control ... 205
8.6.1.1 Characteristics of U/f control ... 206
8.6.1.2 Selecting the U/f characteristic ... 207
8.6.1.3 Optimizing with a high break loose torque and brief overload ... 208
8.6.2 Closed-loop speed control ... 210
8.6.2.1 Properties of the sensorless vector control ... 210
8.6.2.2 Select motor control ... 211
8.6.2.3 Re-optimize the speed controller ... 212
8.6.2.4 Torque control ... 214
8.7 Protection functions ... 215
8.7.1 Inverter temperature monitoring ... 215
8.7.2 Motor temperature monitoring using a temperature sensor ... 216
8.7.3 Protecting the motor by calculating the motor temperature ... 218
8.7.4 Overcurrent protection ... 219
8.7.5 Limiting the maximum DC link voltage ... 220
8.8 Status messages ... 222
8.8.1 System runtime ... 222
8.9 Application-specific functions ... 223
8.9.1 Unit changeover ... 223
8.9.1.1 Changing over the motor standard ... 224
8.9.1.2 Changing over the unit system ... 225
8.9.1.3 Changing over process variables for the technology controller ... 226
8.9.1.4 Changing of the units with STARTER ... 227
8.9.2 Braking functions of the converter ... 229
8.9.2.1 Comparison of electrical braking methods ... 229
8.9.2.2 DC braking ... 231
8.9.2.3 Compound braking ... 235
8.9.2.4 Dynamic braking ... 236
8.9.2.5 Braking with regenerative feedback to the line ... 240
8.9.3 Automatic restart and flying restart ... 241
8.9.3.1 Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running ... 241
8.9.3.2 Automatic switch-on ... 242
8.9.4 PID technology controller ... 247
8.9.4.1 Overview ... 247

8.9.4.2 Setting the controller 247
8.9.4.3 Optimizing the controller 249
8.9.5 Load torque monitoring (system protection) 251
8.9.6 Load failure monitoring via digital input 253
8.9.7 Real time clock (RTC) 254
8.9.8 Time switch (DTC) 256
8.9.9 Temperature sensing using temperature-dependent resistors 257
8.9.10 Essential service mode 258
8.9.11 Multi-zone control 263
8.9.12 Cascade control 266
8.9.13 Bypass 270
8.9.14 Energy-saving mode 274
8.9.15 Logical and arithmetic functions using function blocks 279
8.10 Switchover between different settings 283
9 Data backup and standard commissioning 285
9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using a memory card 286
9.1.1 Saving setting on memory card 287
9.1.2 Transferring the setting from the memory card 289
9.1.3 Safely remove the memory card 291
9.2 Backing up and transferring settings using STARTER 292
9.3 Saving settings and transferring them using an operator panel 293
9.4 Other ways to back up settings 294
9.5 Write and know-how protection 295
9.5.1 Write protection 297
9.5.2 Know-how protection 298
9.5.2.1 Settings for the know-how protection 299
9.5.2.2 Creating an exception list for the know-how protection 300
9.5.2.3 Replacing devices with active know-how protection 301
10 Service and maintenance 303
10.1 Overview of replacing converter components 303
10.2 Replacing the Control Unit 304
10.3 Replacing the Power Module 305
11 Alarms, faults and system messages 307
11.1 Operating states indicated on LEDs 309
11.2 Alarms 311
11.3 Faults 314
11.4 List of alarms and faults 319
12 Technical data 327
12.1 Technical data for CU230P-2 327
12.2 Technical data, Power Modules 329
12.2.1 Technical data, PM230 IP20 331
12.2.1.1 General data, PM230 - IP20 331
12.2.1.2 Power-dependent data, PM230, IP20 332

12.2.2 Technical data, PM230 - IP55 ... 338
12.2.2.1 General data, PM230, IP55 ... 338
12.2.2.2 Power dependent data, PM230, IP55 ... 339
12.2.3 Technical data, PM240 ... 343
12.2.3.1 General data, PM240 ... 343
12.2.3.2 Power-dependent data, PM240 ... 344
12.2.4 Technical data, PM240-2 ... 349
12.2.4.1 General data, PM240-2 ... 349
12.2.4.2 Power-dependent data PM240-2 ... 350
12.2.5 Technical data, PM250 ... 352
12.2.5.1 General data, PM250 ... 352
12.2.5.2 Power-dependent data, PM250 ... 353
12.2.6 Technical data, PM260 ... 355
12.2.6.1 General data, PM260 ... 355
12.2.6.2 Power-dependent data, PM260 ... 356

A Appendix ... 357

A.1 Star-delta motor connection and application examples ... 357

A.2 Parameter ... 358

A.3 Interconnecting signals in the converter ... 360
A.3.1 BICO technology: basic principles ... 360
A.3.2 BICO technology: example ... 362

A.4 Application examples ... 364
A.4.1 Configuring PROFIBUS communication in STEP 7 ... 364
A.4.1.1 Creating a STEP 7 project ... 364
A.4.1.2 Configuring communications to a SIMATIC control ... 365
A.4.1.3 Inserting the inverter into the STEP 7 project ... 366
A.4.2 Configuring PROFINET communication in STEP 7 ... 368
A.4.2.1 Communication via PROFINET - example ... 368
A.4.2.2 Configuring the system in HW Config ... 368
A.4.2.3 Inserting the converter into the SIMATIC Manager ... 371
A.4.2.4 Activate diagnostic messages via STEP 7 ... 372
A.4.2.5 Go online with STARTER via PROFINET ... 372
A.4.3 STEP 7 program examples ... 373
A.4.3.1 STEP 7 program example for cyclic communication ... 374
A.4.3.2 STEP 7 program example for acyclic communication ... 376
A.4.4 Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7 ... 380

A.5 Additional information on the inverter ... 382
A.5.1 Manuals for your inverter ... 382

A.6 Mistakes and improvements ... 384

Index ... 385

Introduction 1

1.1 About this manual

Who requires the operating instructions and what for?

These operating instructions primarily address fitters, commissioning engineers and machine operators. The operating instructions describe the devices and device components and enable the target groups being addressed to install, connect-up, parameterize, and commission the inverters safely and in the correct manner.

What is described in the operating instructions?

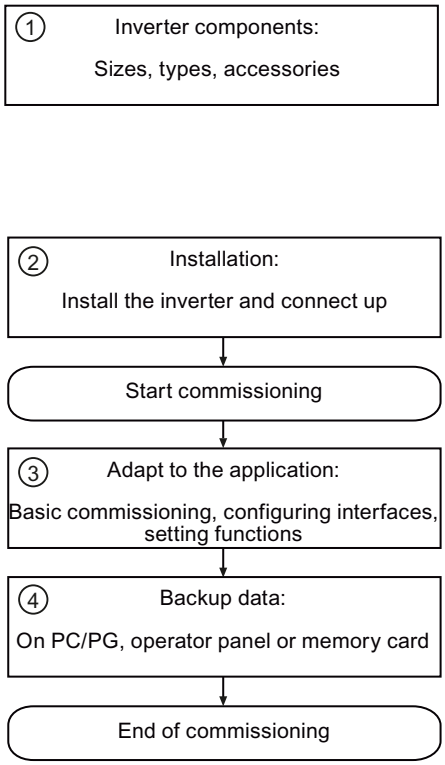
These operating instructions provide a summary of all of the information required to operate the inverter under normal, safe conditions.

The information provided in the operating instructions has been compiled in such a way that it is sufficient for all standard applications and enables drives to be commissioned as efficiently as possible. Where it appears useful, additional information for entry level personnel has been added.

The operating instructions also contain information about special applications. Since it is assumed that readers already have a sound technical knowledge of how to configure and parameterize these applications, the relevant information is summarized accordingly. This relates, e.g. to operation with fieldbus systems and safety-related applications.

1.2 Guide through this manual

In this manual, you will find background information on your inverter, as well as a full description of the commissioning procedure:



① Here you will find information about the hardware of your inverter and the commissioning tools:

- Modularity of the converter system (Page 15)

② • Procedure for installing the frequency inverter (Page 29)

All information relating to the commissioning of your inverter is located in the following chapters:

③ • Basic commissioning (Page 55)
- Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79)
- Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)
- Functions (Page 179)

④ • Data backup and standard commissioning (Page 285)

⑤ Information regarding the maintenance and diagnostics of your inverter is located in the following chapters:

- Service and maintenance (Page 303)
- Alarms, faults and system messages (Page 307)

⑥ The most important technical data for your inverter is located in this chapter:

- Technical data (Page 327)

⑦ The appendix contains some background information and explanatory examples:

- Appendix (Page 357)

Description

2

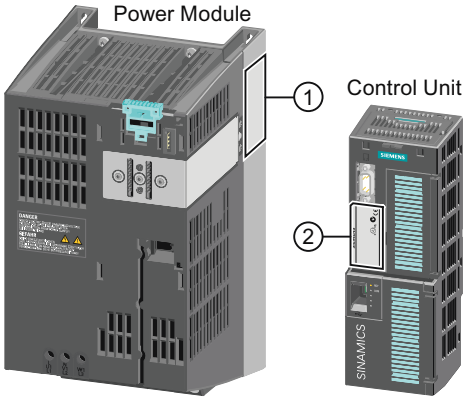
2.1 Modularity of the converter system

Thanks to their modular design, the converters can be used in a wide range of applications with respect to functionality and power.

Main components of the converter

Each SINAMICS G120 converter comprises a Control Unit and Power Module.

- The Control Unit controls and monitors the Power Module and the connected motor. The Control Unit is used to control the converter locally or centrally.
- The Power Modules are available for motors with a power range of between 0.37 kW and 250 kW.



The following data is provided on the Power Module type plate (①):

- Designation: e.g. Power Module 240
- Technical data: Voltage, current and power
- Order no.: e.g. 6SL3224-0BE13-7UA0
- Version: e.g. A02

The following data can be found on the Control Unit type plate (②):

- Designation: e.g. Control Unit CU240E-2 DP-F
- Order no.: e.g. 6SL3244-0BB13-1PA0
- Version: e.g. A02 (hardware) 4.5 (firmware)

Additional converter components

The following components are available so that you can adapt the converter to different applications and ambient conditions:

- Line filter (Page 20)
- Line reactor (Page 21)
- Output reactor (Page 22)
- Sine-wave filter (Page 23)
- Braking resistor (Page 25)
- Brake Relay to control a motor holding brake (Page 26).

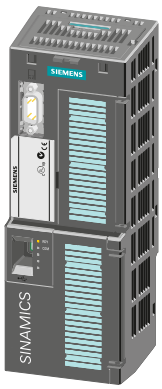
2.2 Control Units

The CU230P 2 Control Units have integrated technology functions for pumps, fans and compressor applications. The I/O interfaces, the fieldbus interface and the specific software functions optimally support these applications. The integration of technological functions is a significant differentiating feature to the other Control Units of the SINAMICS G120 drive family.

CU230P-2-specific functions

- Essential service mode
- Multi-zone controller
- Cascade control
- Energy-saving mode
- Bypass

Table 2- 1 CU230P-2 Control Units are available in the following versions:

Designation	CU230P-2 HVAC	CU230P-2 DP	CU230P-2 PN	CU230P-2 CAN	CU230P-2 BT[1)]	
Order number	6SL3243-0BB30-1HA2	6SL3243-0BB30-1PA2	6SL3243-0BB30-1FA0	6SL3243-0BB30-1CA2	6SL3243-6BB30-1HA2	
Fieldbus	Über RS485 • USS, • Modbus RTU • BACnet MS/TP • P1	PROFIBUS DP	PROFINET IO	CANopen	Über RS485 • USS, • Modbus RTU • BACnet MS/TP • P1	
Digital inputs	6					
Analog inputs	4					
Digital outputs	3					
Analog outputs	2					

[1)]Exclusive version for Siemens IC BT

Shield connection kit for the Control Unit

The shield connection kit is an optional component. The shield connection kit comprises the following components:

- Shield plate
- Elements for optimum shield support and strain relief of the signal and communication cables

Table 2- 2 Order numbers

Shield connection kit 1 for the CU230P-2 Control Units with all fieldbus interfaces except for PROFINET.	6SL3264-1EA00-0FA0
Shield connection kit 3 for the CU230P-2 and CU240E-2 Control Units with PROFINET interface.	6SL3264-1EA00-0HB0

2.3 Power Modules in degree of protection IP20 and with through-hole technology

The SINAMICS Power Modules with degree of protection IP20 and through-hole technology (**P**ush **T**hrough = PT) are available in the following versions:

- PM230 (3 AC 400 V for pumps and fans),
- PM240 (3 AC 400 V for standard applications with dynamic braking),
- PM240-2 (3 AC 400 V for standard applications with dynamic braking, 2nd generation),
- PM250 (3 AC 400 V with energy recovery),
- PM260 (3 AC 690 V with energy recovery),



Figure 2-1 Power Module, IP20 degree of protection

PM230, 3 AC 400 V

Frame size	FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF	FSGX
Power range (kW): IP20	0,37 … 3	4 … 7,5	11 … 18,5	22 … 37	45 … 55	75 … 90	--
Power range (kW): PT	3	7,5	18,5	--	--	--	--

The PM230 IP20 or PT is available without a filter or with integrated class A line filter. They are designed for installation in a control cabinet. The PM230 are not designed for regenerative operation.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3210-1NE… (IP20), 6SL3211-1NE… (Push through)

PM240, 3 AC 400 V

Frame size	FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF	FSGX
Power range (kW): IP20	0,37 … 1,5	2,2 … 4	7,5 … 15	18,5 … 30	37 … 45	55 … 132	160 … 250

PM240 is available without a filter or with integrated class A line filter. The PM240 allows regenerative operation via an external braking resistor.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3224-0BE… and 6SL3224-0XE…

PM240-2, 3 AC 400 V

Frame size	FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF	FSGX
Power range (kW): IP20	0,55 … 3	--	--	--	--	--	--
Power range (kW): PT	2,2 … 3	--	--	--	--	--	--

PM240-2 is available without a filter or with integrated class A line filter. The PM240-2 allows regenerative operation via an external braking resistor.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3210-1PE… (IP20) and 6SL3211-1PE… (Push through)

PM250, 3 AC 400 V

Frame size	FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF	FSGX
Power range (LO) in kW	---	---	7,5 … 15	18,5 … 30	37 … 45	55 … 90	---

PM250 is available without a filter or with integrated class A line filter. The PM250 allows regenerative operation with energy recovery into the line supply.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3225-0BE …

PM260, 3 AC 690 V

Frame size	FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF	FSGX
Power range (LO) in kW	---	---	---	11 … 18,5	---	30 … 55	---

The PM260 is available without a filter or with integrated class A line filter, a sine-wave filter is installed on the motor side. The PM260 allows regenerative operation with energy feedback into the line supply.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3225-0BH…

Shield connection kit for Power Modules

Note

For the PM240, PM250 and PM260 Power Modules, the shield connection kit is an optional component and must be ordered separately.

For Power Modules PM230 and PM240-2, the shield connection kit is included in the scope of delivery.

The shield connection kit offers optimum shield support and strain relief for line and motor cables. Refer to the following table for order numbers.

Adapter for rail mounting for PM250 and PM260, frame sizes FSA and FSB

You can use the adapter for rail mounting to mount the Power Module onto two mounting rails with a center-to-center distance of 100 mm.

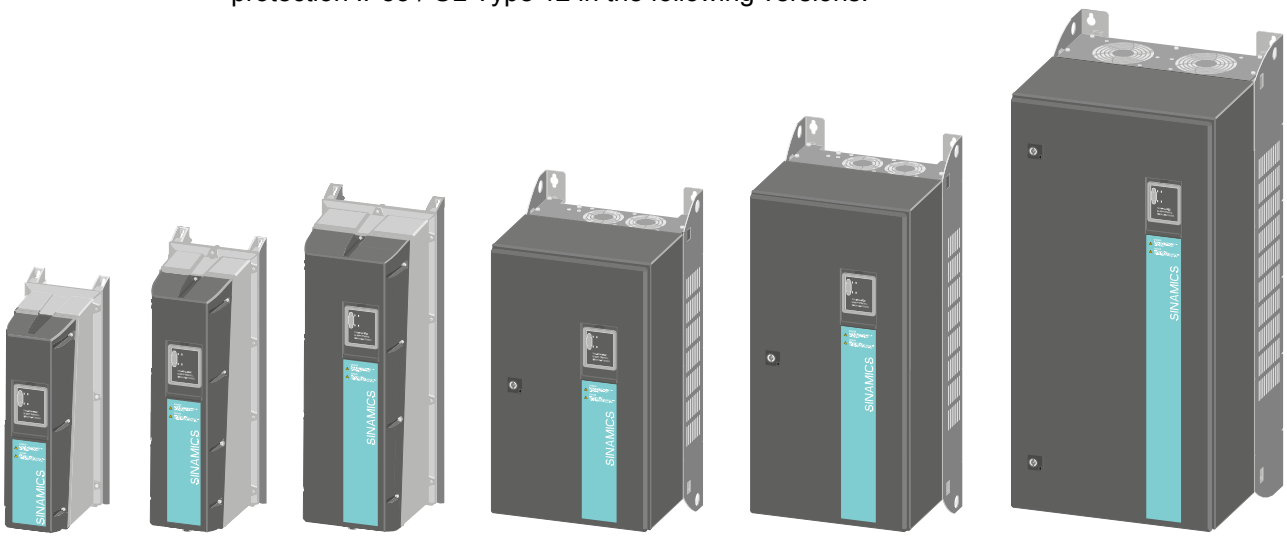
Table 2- 3 Order numbers for shield connection kit and DIN rail mounting adapter

Frame size	Shield connection kit for		Adapter for mounting on DIN rails
	Power Modules PM240, PM250	PM260 Power Module	
FSA	6SL3262-1AA00-0BA0	-	6SL3262-1BA00-0BA0
FSB	6SL3262-1AB00-0DA0	-	6SL3262-1BB00-0BA0
FSC	6SL3262-1AC00-0DA0	-	-
FSD	6SL3262-1AD00-0DA0	6SL3262-1FD00-0CA0	-
FSE	6SL3262-1AD00-0DA0	-	-
FSF	6SL3262-1AF00-0DA0	6SL3262-1FF00-0CA0	-

2.4 Power Module in IP55 degree of protection / UL Type 12

PM230 Power Module, IP55 degree of protection / UL Type 12

The SINAMICS PM230 (400 V 3 AC for pumps and fans) is available with degree of protection IP55 / UL Type 12 in the following versions.



Frame size		FSA	FSB	FSC	FSD	FSE	FSF
Power range (kW)	Filter Class A	0.37 … 3	4 … 7.5	11 … 18.5	22 … 30	37 … 45	55 … 90
	Filter Class B	0.37 … 3	4 … 7.5	11 … 15	18.5 … 30	37 … 45	55 … 90

PM230 IP55/UL Type 12 are suitable for installation close to the motor. They are available with internal line filter, class A or B. PM230 are not designed for regenerative operation.

Range of order numbers: 6SL3223-0DE…

2.5 Line filter

With an external line filter, the converter can achieve a higher radio interference class.

Examples:



Footprint line filter for Power Module PM240 FSA



Line filter for Power Module PM240 FSGX

External line filters for PM240

Table 2- 4 Class A according to EN 55011: 2009

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Line filter, class A
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0, …0BE17-5UA0, …0BE21-1UA0, …0BE21-5UA0	0.37 kW … 1.5 kW	6SE6400-2FA00-6AD0
FSF	…0BE38-8UA0, …0BE41-1UA0	110 kW … 132 kW	6SL3203-0BE32-5AA0
FSGX	…0XE41-3UA0, …0XE41-6UA0	160 kW … 200 kW	6SL3000-0BE34-4AA0
	…0XE42-0UA0	250 kW	6SL3000-0BE36-0AA0

Table 2- 5 Class B according to EN 55011: 2009

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Line filter, class B
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0, …0BE17-5UA0, …0BE21-1UA0, …0BE21-5UA0	0.37 kW … 1.5 kW	6SE6400-2FB00-6AD0
FSB	…0BE22-2AA0, …0BE23-0AA0, …0BE24-0AA0	2.2 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3203-0BE21-6SA0
FSC	…0BE25-5UA0, …0BE27-5UA0, …0BE31-1UA0	7.5 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3203-0BD23-8SA0

External line filters for PM250

Table 2- 6 Class B according to EN 55011: 2009

PM250, order number 6SL3225-…		Power	Line filter, class B
FSC	…0BE25-5AA0, …0BE27-5AA0, …0BE31-1AA0	7.5 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3203-0BD23-8SA0

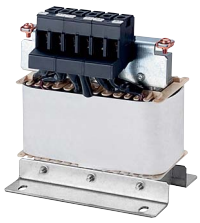
2.6 Line reactor

The line reactor protects the converter in the harsh environment of industrial plants and systems: The line reactor supports the overvoltage protection, smooths the harmonics in the line supply and bridges commutation dips.

Examples:



Footprint line reactor for Power Module PM240 FSA



Line reactor for Power Module PM240-2 FSA

NOTICE
If the relative short-circuit voltage of the infeed transformer is below 1%, you must install a line reactor in order to ensure the optimal service life of your converter.

Table 2- 7 Line reactors for PM240

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Line reactor
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0	0.37 kW … 0.55 kW	6SE6400-3CC00-2AD3
	…0BE17-5UA0, …0BE21-1UA0	0.75 kW … 1.1 kW	6SE6400-3CC00-4AD3
	…0BE21-5UA0	1.5 kW	6SE6400-3CC00-6AD3
FSB	…0BE22-2□A0, …0BE23-0□A0	2.2 kW … 3.0 kW	6SL3203-0CD21-0AA0
	…0BE24-0□A0	4.0 kW	6SL3203-0CD21-4AA0
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0, …0BE27-5□A0	7.5 kW … 11.0 kW	6SL3203-0CD22-2AA0
	…0BE31-1□A0	15.0 kW	6SL3203-0CD23-5AA0
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0, …0BE31-8□A0	18.5 kW … 22 kW	6SL3203-0CJ24-5AA0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	6SL3203-0CD25-3AA0
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0, …0BE33-7□A0	37 kW … 45 kW	6SL3203-0CJ28-6AA0
FSF	…0BE37-5□A0, …0BE35-5□A0	55 kW … 75 kW	6SE6400-3CC11-2FD0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	6SE6400-3CC11-7FD0
	…0BE38-8UA0	110 kW	6SL3000-0CE32-3AA0
	…0BE41-1UA0	132 kW	6SL3000-0CE32-8AA0
FSGX	…0XE41-3UA0	160 kW	6SL3000-0CE33-3AA0
	…0XE41-6UA0, …0XE42-0UA0	200 kW … 250 kW	6SL3000-0CE35-1AA0

Table 2- 8 Line reactors for PM240-2

PM240-2, order number 6SL321□-…		Power	Line reactor
FSA	…1PE11-8□L0, …1PE12-3□L0, …1PE13-2□L0, …1PE14-3□L0	0.55 kW … 1.5 kW	6SL3203-0CE13-2AA0
	…1PE16-1□L0, …1PE18-0□L0	2.2 kW … 3.0 kW	6SL3203-0CE21-0AA0

2.7 Output reactor

Output reactors for the PM240 Power Module and the PM250 Power Module

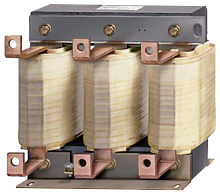
Output reactors reduce the voltage stress on the motor windings.

If you use long motor cables (shielded cable as of 50 m or 100 m unshielded cable), you must use an output reactor in order to reduce the load on the converter due to capacitive charging/discharging currents in the cables.

Examples:



Footprint output reactors for Power Modules PM240 FSA and FSB



Output reactor for Power Module PM240 FSGX

The output reactors are designed for pulse frequencies of 4 kHz.

Table 2- 9 Output reactors for PM240 Power Module

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Output reactor
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0, …0BE17-5UA0, …0BE21-1UA0, …0BE21-5UA0	0.37 kW … 1.5 kW	6SE6400-3TC00-4AD2
FSB	…0BE22-2□A0, …0BE23-0□A0, …0BE24-0□A0	2.2 kW … 4.0 kW	6SL3202-0AE21-0CA0
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0, …0BE27-5□A0, …0BE31-1□A0	7.5 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3202-0AJ23-2CA0
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0	18.5 kW	6SE6400-3TC05-4DD0
	…0BE31-8□A0	22 kW	6SE6400-3TC03-8DD0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	6SE6400-3TC05-4DD0
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0	37 kW	6SE6400-3TC08-0ED0
	…0BE33-7□A0	45 kW	6SE6400-3TC07-5ED0
FSF	…0BE34-5□A0	55 kW	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0
	…0BE35-5□A0	75 kW	6SE6400-3TC15-4FD0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0
	…0BE38-8UA0	110 kW	6SL3000-2BE32-1AA0
	…0BE41-1UA0	132 kW	6SL3000-2BE32-6AA0
FSGX	…0XE41-3UA0	160 kW	6SL3000-2BE33-2AA0
	…0XE41-6UA0	200 kW	6SL3000-2BE33-8AA0
	…0XE42-0UA0	250 kW	6SL3000-2BE35-0AA0

Table 2- 10 Output reactors for PM250 Power Module

PM250, order number 6SL3225-…		Power	Output reactor
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0, …0BE27-5□A0, …0BE31-1□A0	7.5 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3202-0AJ23-2CA0
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0	18.5 kW	6SE6400-3TC05-4DD0
	…0BE31-8□A0	22 kW	6SE6400-3TC03-8DD0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	6SE6400-3TC05-4DD0
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0	37 kW	6SE6400-3TC08-0ED0
	…0BE33-7□A0	45 kW	6SE6400-3TC07-5ED0
FSF	…0BE34-5□A0	55 kW	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0
	…0BE35-5□A0	75 kW	6SE6400-3TC15-4FD0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	6SE6400-3TC14-5FD0

2.8 Sine-wave filter

The sine-wave filter at the converter outputs almost sinusoidal voltages to the motor, so that you can use standard motors without special cables. The maximum permissible length of motor feeder cables is increased to 300 m.

Example:



Sine-wave filter for converter with frame size FSF

The following applies when using a sine-wave filter:

- Operation is only permissible with pulse frequencies from 4 kHz to 8 kHz. Above 160 kW, only 4 kHz is permissible.
- The converter power is reduced by 5%.
- The maximum output frequency of the converter is 150 Hz at 380 V to 480 V.
- Operation and commissioning may only be performed with the motor connected, as the sine-wave filter is not no-load proof.
- An output reactor is superfluous.

Table 2- 11 Sine-wave filter for PM240 Power Module

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Sine-wave filter
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0, …0BE17-5UA0	0.37 kW … 0.75 kW	6SL3202-0AE20-3SA0
	…0BE21-1UA0, …0BE21-5UA0	1.1 kW … 1.5 kW	6SL3202-0AE20-6SA0
FSB	…0BE22-2□A0, …0BE23-0□A0	2.2 kW … 3.0 kW	6SL3202-0AE21-1SA0
	…0BE24-0□A0	4.0 kW	6SL3202-0AE21-4SA0
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0	7.5 kW	6SL3202-0AE22-0SA0
	…0BE27-5□A0, …0BE31-1□A0	11.0 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3202-0AE23-3SA0
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0, …0BE31-8□A0	18.5 kW … 22 kW	6SL3202-0AE24-6SA0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	6SL3202-0AE26-2SA0
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0, …0BE33-7□A0	37 kW … 45 kW	6SL3202-0AE28-8SA0
FSF	…0BE34-5□A0, …0BE35-5□A0	55 kW … 75 kW	6SL3202-0AE31-5SA0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	6SL3202-0AE31-8SA0
	…0BE38-8UA0, …0BE41-1UA0	110 kW … 132 kW	6SL3000-2CE32-3AA0
FSGX	…0XE41-3UA0	160 kW	6SL3000-2CE32-8AA0
	…0XE41-6UA0	200 kW	6SL3000-2CE33-3AA0
	…0XE42-0UA0	250 kW	6SL3000-2CE34-1AA0

Table 2- 12 Sine-wave filter for PM250 Power Module

PM250, order number 6SL3225-…		Power	Sine-wave filter
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0	7.5 kW	6SL3202-0AE22-0SA0
	…0BE27-5□ A0, …0BE31-1□A0	11.0 kW … 15.0 kW	6SL3202-0AE23-3SA0
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0, …0BE31-8□A0	18.5 kW … 22 kW	6SL3202-0AE24-6SA0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	6SL3202-0AE26-2SA0
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0, …0BE33-7□A0	37 kW … 45 kW	6SL3202-0AE28-8SA0
FSF	…0BE34-5□A0, …0BE35-5□A0	55 kW … 75 kW	6SL3202-0AE31-5SA0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	6SL3202-0AE31-8SA0

2.9 Braking resistor

The braking resistor allows loads with a high moment of inertia to be quickly braked.

The PM240 Power Module controls the braking resistor via its integrated braking module.

For frame size FSGX there is an optional pluggable braking module (order number 6SL3300-1AE32-5AA0).

Examples:



Braking resistor for Power Module PM240 FSA



Footprint braking resistor for Power Module PM240-2 FSA

Table 2- 13 Braking resistors for PM240

PM240, order number 6SL3224-…		Power	Braking resistor
FSA	…0BE13-7UA0, …0BE15-5UA0	0.37 kW … 0.55 kW	6SE6400-4BD11-0AA0
	…0BE17-5UA0, …0BE21-1UA0	0.75 kW … 1.1 kW	
	…0BE21-5UA0	1.5 kW	
FSB	…0BE22-2□A0, …0BE23-0□A0	2.2 kW … 3.0 kW	6SL3201-0BE12-0AA0
	…0BE24-0□A0	4.0 kW	
FSC	…0BE25-5□A0, …0BE27-5□A0	7.5 kW … 11.0 kW	6SE6400-4BD16-5CA0
	…0BE31-1□A0	15.0 kW	
FSD	…0BE31-5□A0, …0BE31-8□A0	18.5 kW … 22 kW	6SE6400-4BD21-2DA0
	…0BE32-2□A0	30 kW	
FSE	…0BE33-0□A0, …0BE33-7□A0	37 kW … 45 kW	6SE6400-4BD22-2EA1
FSF	…0BE37-5□A0, …0BE35-5□A0	55 kW … 75 kW	6SE6400-4BD24-0FA0
	…0BE37-5□A0	90 kW	
	…0BE38-8UA0	110 kW	6SE6400-4BD26-0FA0
	…0BE41-1UA0	132 kW	
FSGX	…0XE41-3UA0	160 kW	6SL3000-1BE31-3AA0
	…0XE41-6UA0, …0XE42-0UA0	200 kW … 250 kW	6SL3000-1BE32-5AA0

Table 2- 14 Braking resistors for PM240-2

PM240-2, order number 6SL321□-…		Power	Braking resistor
FSA	…1PE11-8□L0, …1PE12-3□L0, …1PE13-2□L0, …1PE14-3□L0	0.55 kW … 1.5 kW	6SL3201-0BE14-3AA0
	…1PE16-1□L0, …1PE18-0□L0	2.2 kW … 3.0 kW	6SL3201-0BE21-0AA0

2.10 Brake Relay

The brake relay has a switch contact (NO contact) to control the motor brake coil.

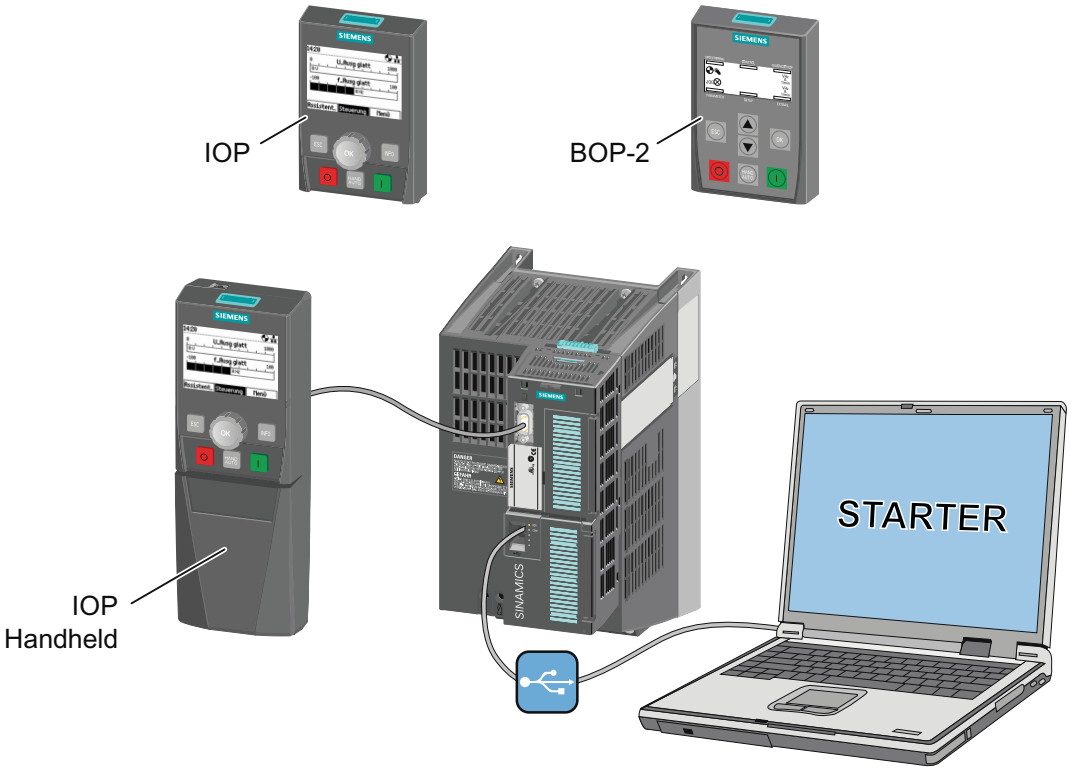
Order no.: 6SL3252-0BB00-0AA0



2.11 Accessories for commissioning and operation

Table 2- 15 Accessories for commissioning and controlling the converter as well as for data backup

Component or tool			Order number
Operator Panels for commissioning, diagnostics and controlling converters			
	BOP-2 - for snapping onto the frequency converter • Copies drive parameters • Two-line display • Guided commissioning		6SL3255-0AA00-4CA1
	IOP - to snap onto the frequency converter or with the handheld • Copies drive parameters • Plain text display • Menu-based operation and application wizards		6SL3255-0AA00-4JA0 IOP Handheld: 6SL3255-0AA00-4HA0
	IOP/BOP-2 Mounting Kit IP54/UL Type 12		6SL3256-0AP00-0JA0
PC tools			
	STARTER Commissioning tool (PC software) connected to the converter via USB cable Downloading: STARTER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804985/130000)		STARTER on DVD: 6SL3072-0AA00-0AG0
	PC Connection Kit Includes a STARTER DVD and USB cable		6SL3255-0AA00-2CA0
	Drive ES Basic As an option to STEP7 with routing function across network boundaries		6SW1700-5JA00-5AA0
Memory cards: to save and transfer the converter settings			
		MMC card	6SL3254-0AM00-0AA0
		SD card	6ES7954-8LB00-0AA0


IOP
BOP-2
IOP
Handheld
STARTER
SINAMICS

Installing

3

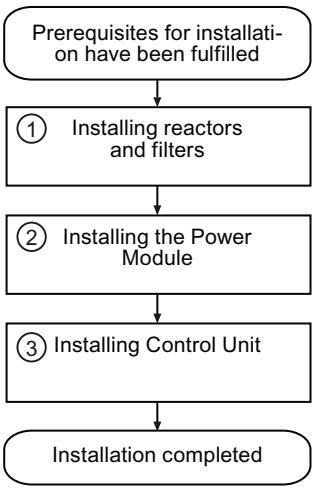
3.1 Procedure for installing the frequency inverter

Preconditions for installation

Check that the following preconditions are fulfilled before installing:

- Are the required components, tools and small parts available?
- Are the ambient conditions permissible? See Technical data (Page 327).

Installation sequence



① Installing reactors and filters (Page 30)

② Installing Power Module (Page 32)

③ Installing Control Unit (Page 45)

You will find details on the installation in the Internet: Hardware Installation Manual (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/30563173/133300).

You can start to commission the converter once installation has been completed.

3.2 Installing reactors and filters

Fitting converter system components in space-saving manner

For the Power Modules FSA … FSC, the system components line reactor, line filter, output reactor, sine-wave filter and braking resistor can installed as base components.

For FSA, two base components are possible – and for FSB and FSC, one or two base components. For further details, please see the diagram below.

Note

Sine-wave filter

For frame sizes FSB and FSC, it is not permissible that the sine-wave filter is combined with other base components.

Line filter

For converters with integrated line filter, an external line filter is not required.

Available system components, depending on the Power Module (IP20 / PT)

System component	PM230	PM240	PM240-2	PM250	PM260
Line reactor	---	x	x	---	---
Line filter	x	x	---	x	---
Output reactor	---	x	---	x	---
Sine-wave filter	---	x	---	x	---
Braking resistor	---	x	x	---	---

Connecting the line reactor

- Line-side: via terminals
- Converter: via a prefabricated connecting cable

Connecting the line filter

- Line-side: via terminals
- Converter: via a prefabricated connecting cable

Connecting the output reactor

- Converter: via a prefabricated connecting cable
- To the motor: via terminals

Connecting the sine-wave filter

- Converter: via a prefabricated connecting cable
- To the motor: via terminals

Converter			Base component 1			Base component 2			
FSA	FSB	FSC	Line filter	Line reactor	Sine-wave filter	Line reactor	Output reactor	Sine-wave filter	Braking resistor
X			X			X			
X			X				X		
X			X					X	
X			X						X
X				X			X		
X				X				X	
X				X					X
	X		X			X			
	X		X				X		
	X		X						X
	X				X				
	X			X			X		
	X			X					X
		X	X			X			
		X	X				X		
		X		X			X		
		X			X				

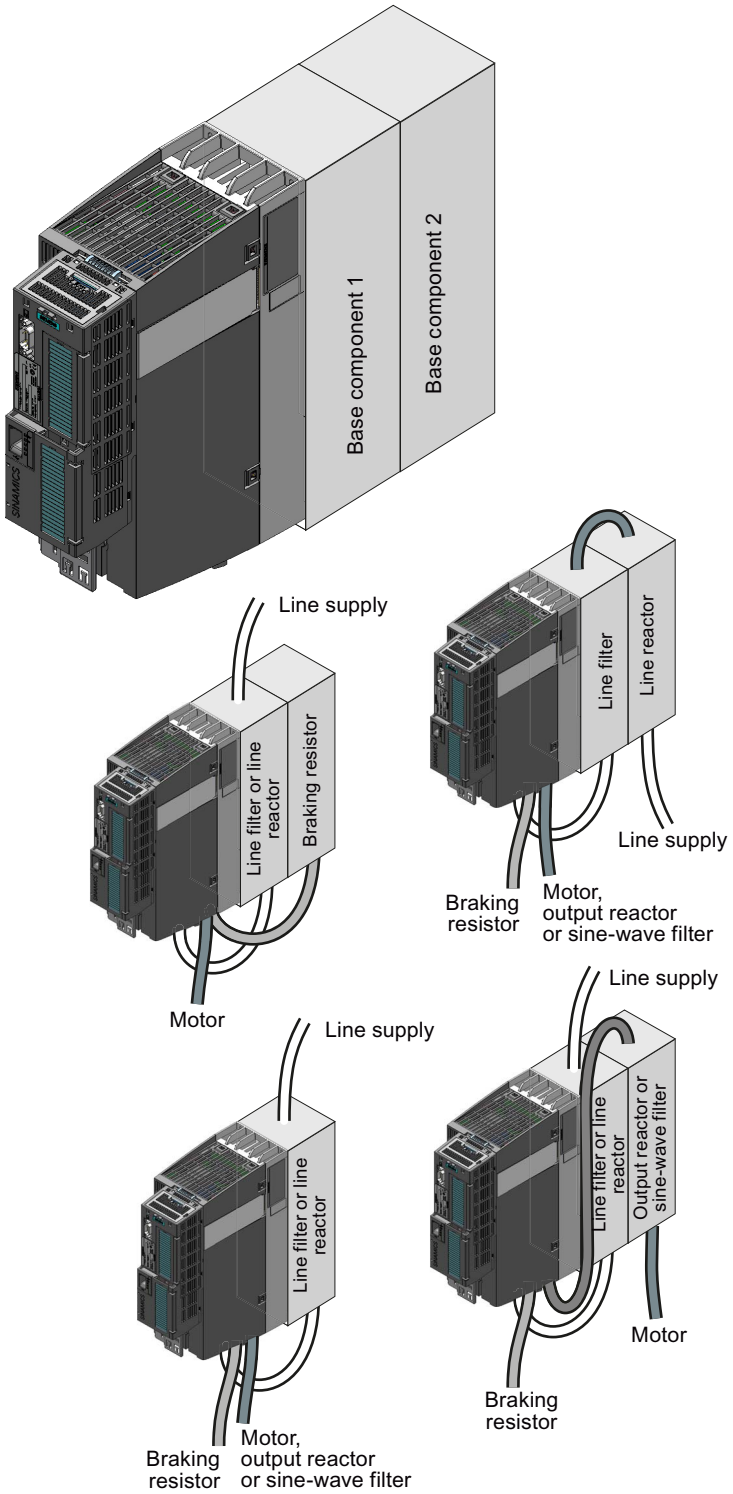
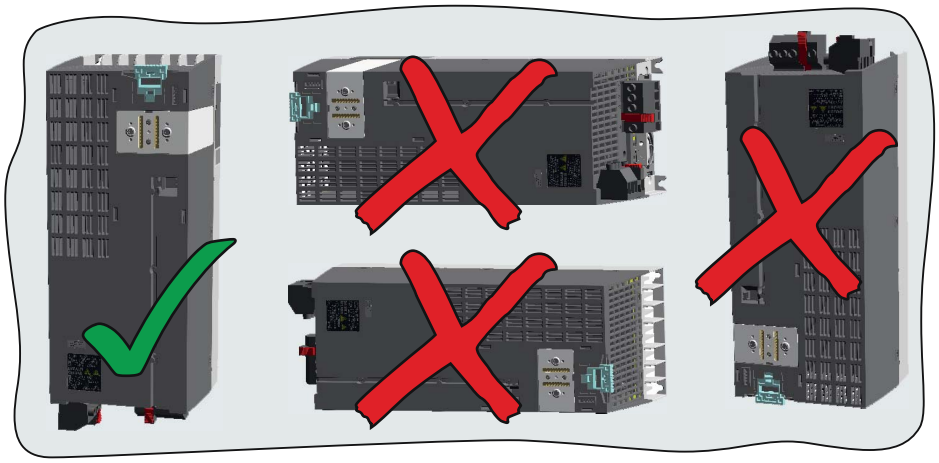


Figure 3-1 Base components and wiring options

3.3 Installing Power Module

Installing Power Modules with degree of protection IP20



- Install the Power Module vertically on a mounting plate in a control cabinet.
  The smaller frame sizes of the converter (FSA and FSB) can also be mounted on DIN rails using an adapter.
- When installing, observe the minimum clearances to other components in the control cabinet.
  These minimum clearances are necessary to ensure adequate cooling of the converter.
- Do not cover the ventilation openings the converter.

Installing additional components

Depending on the application, additional line reactors, filters, braking resistors, Brake Relay, etc. may be required (seeDescription (Page 15).

Please observe the mounting and installation instructions supplied with these components.

3.3.1 Dimensions, hole drilling templates, minimum clearances, tightening torques and IP55

Drilling patterns, dimensions and clearances of the Power Modules PM230, IP55

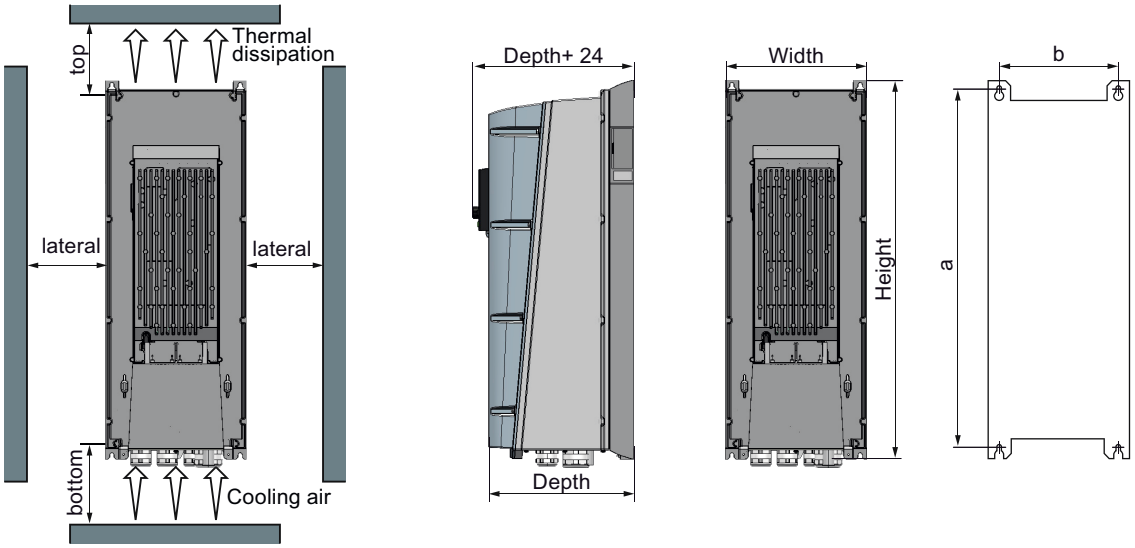


Table 3- 1 Dimensions and clearances

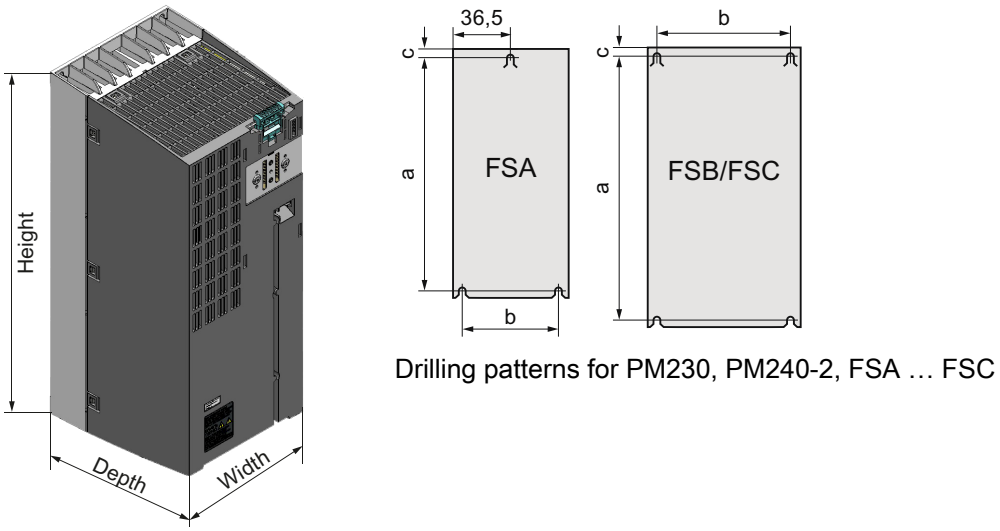
Frame size	Dimensions (mm)					Clearances (mm)		
	Height	Width	Depth	a	b	top	bottom	lateral
FSA	460	154	238	445	132	100	100	0
FSB	540	180	238	524	158	100	100	0
FSC	620	230	238	604	208	125	125	0
FSD	640	320	238	600	285	300	300	0
FSE	751	320	238	710	285	300	300	0
FSF	915	410	238	870	370	300	300	0
Fixing:	FSA/FSB: screws M4, 2.5 Nm, FSC: screws M5, 2.5 Nm,				FSD/FSE/FSF: screws M8, 13 Nm			

3.3.2 Dimensions, hole drilling templates, minimum clearances, tightening torques, IP20 and push-through design

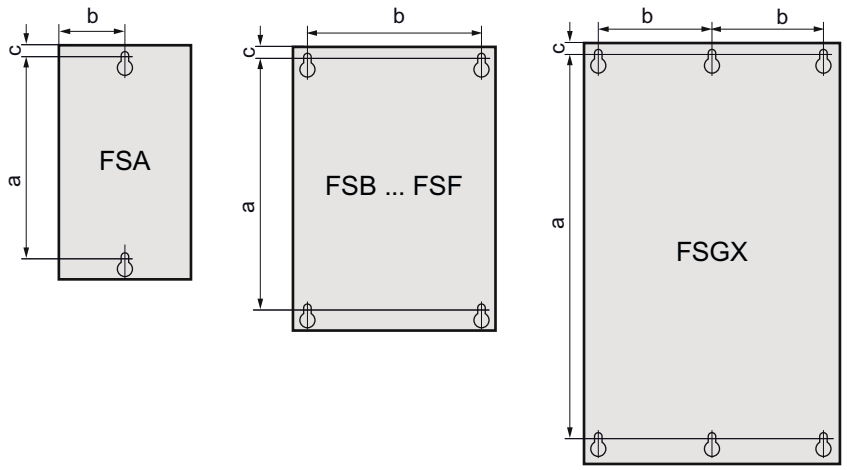
Note

The total depth of the converter increases – with the exception of frame sizes FSGX (160 kW ... 250 kW) – by 58 mm as a result of the Control Unit – and an additional 12 mm or 27 mm respectively, if you use a BOP or IOP.

Dimensions and drilling patterns for PM230, PM240



Drilling patterns for PM230, PM240-2, FSA … FSC



Drilling patterns for PM230 FSD … FSF and for PM240, PM250 and PM260

Dimensions and clearances for PM230 and PM240-2 - degree of protection IP20, frame sizes FSA … FSC

Frame size	Dimensions (mm)						Clearances (mm)		
	Height[1]	Width	Depth	a	b	c	Top	Bottom	Lateral
FSA	196	73	165	186	62.3	6	80	100	0[2]
FSB	292	100	165	281	80	6	80	100	0[2]
FSC	355	140	165	343	120	6	80	100	0[2]
Fixing:	FSA/FSB: M4 screws, 2.5 Nm				FSC: M5 screws, 2.5 Nm				

1) With shield connection kit: FSA: + 80 mm; FSB: + 78 mm; FSC: + 77 mm

2) The Power Modules can be mounted side by side. For tolerance reasons, we recommend a lateral clearance of approx. 1 mm.

Dimensions and clearances for PM240 and PM250 - degree of protection IP20, frame sizes FSA … FSC

Frame size	Dimensions (mm)						Clearances (mm)		
	Height[1]	Width	Depth	a	b	c	Top	Bottom	Lateral
FSA	173	73	145	160	36.5	--	100	100	30[2]
FSB	270	153	165	258	133	--	100	100	40[2]
FSC	355	140	165	343	120	6	80	100	50[2]
Fixing:	FSA/FSB: M4 screws, 2.5 Nm				FSC: M5 screws, 2.5 Nm				

1) With shield connection kit: FSA: +84 mm; FSB: +85 mm; FSC: +89 mm

2) At ambient temperatures in operation up to 40 °C without any lateral clearance. For tolerance reasons, we recommend a lateral clearance of approx. 1 mm.

Dimensions and clearances for PM230, PM240, PM250 and PM260 - IP20 degree of protection, frame sizes FSD … FSGX

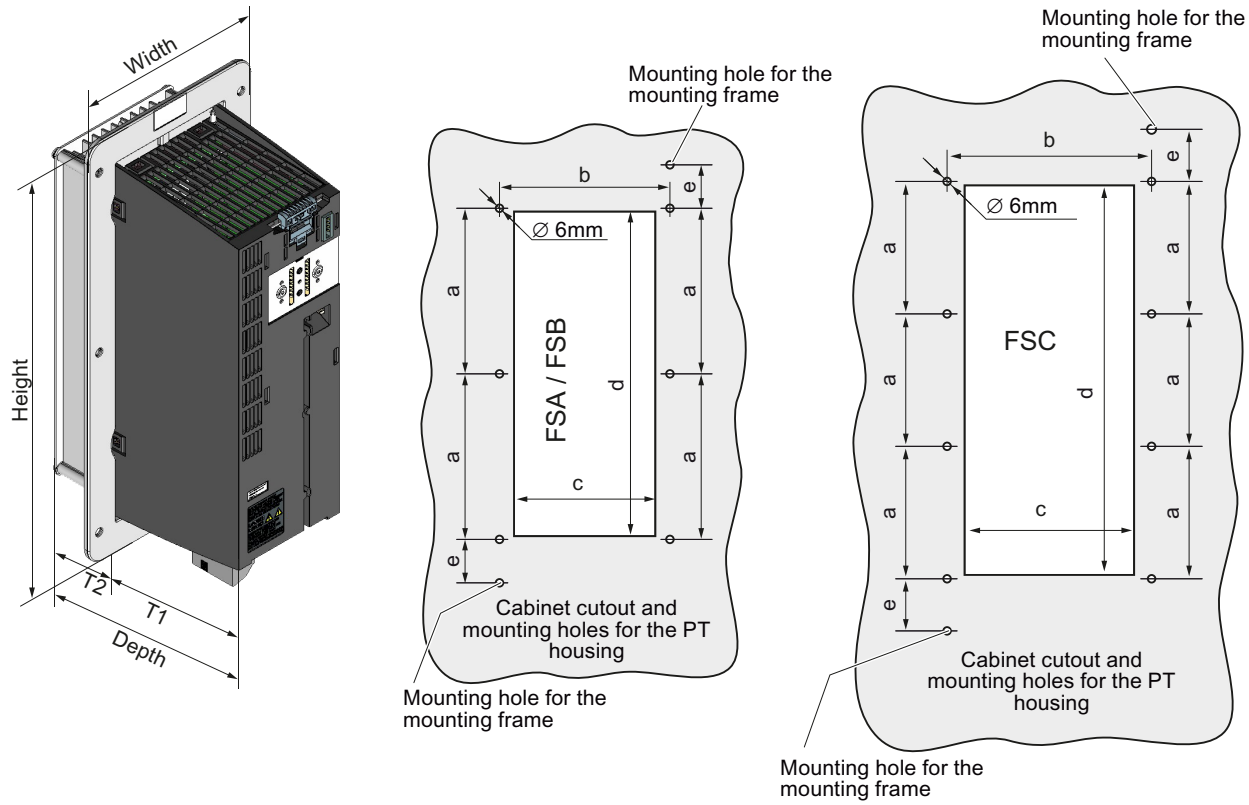
Frame size	Dimensions (mm)						Clearances (mm)		
	Height[1]	Width	Depth	a	b	c	Top	Bottom	Lateral
FSD without filter	419	275	204	325	235	11	300	300	0[2]
FSD with filter	512	275	204	419	235	11	300	300	0[2]
FSE without filter	499	275	204	405	235	11	300	300	0[2]
FSE with filter	635	275	204	541	235	11	300	300	0[2]
FSF without filter	634	350	316	598	300	11	350	350	0[2]
FSF with filter	934	350	316	899	300	11	350	350	0[2]
FSGX	1533	326	547	1506	125	14.5	250	150	50
Fixing:	FSD/FSE: M6 screws, 6 Nm				FSF/FSGX: M8 screws, 13 Nm				

1) With shield connection kit: FSD, FSE, FSF: +123 mm

2) The Power Modules can be mounted side by side. For tolerance reasons, we recommend a lateral clearance of approx. 1 mm.

3.3.3 Dimension drawings PT

Dimensions and drilling patterns for Power Modules with through-hole technology



Dimensions and clearances for PM230 and PM240-2 - degree of protection IP20, frame sizes FSA … FSC

Frame size	Dimensions (mm)									
	Height[1)]	Width	Depth	T1	T2	a	b	c	d	e
FSA	238	125,9	171	117,7	53,1	103	106	88	198	27
FSB	345	153,9	171	117,7	53,1	147,5	134	116	304	34,5
FSC	410,5	200	171	117,7	53,1	123	174	156	365	30,5
Fixing:	FSA/FSB/FSC: M5 screws, 3 Nm									

1) With shield connection kit: FSA: +84 mm; FSB: +85 mm; FSC: +89 mm

Clearances

For the cooling air, the Power Modules require a clearance of 100 mm at the bottom and a clearance of 80 mm at the top in order to be able to dissipate the heat. They can be mounted side by side. For tolerance reasons, we recommend a lateral clearance of approx. 1 mm.

3.3.4 Connection overview for Power Modules

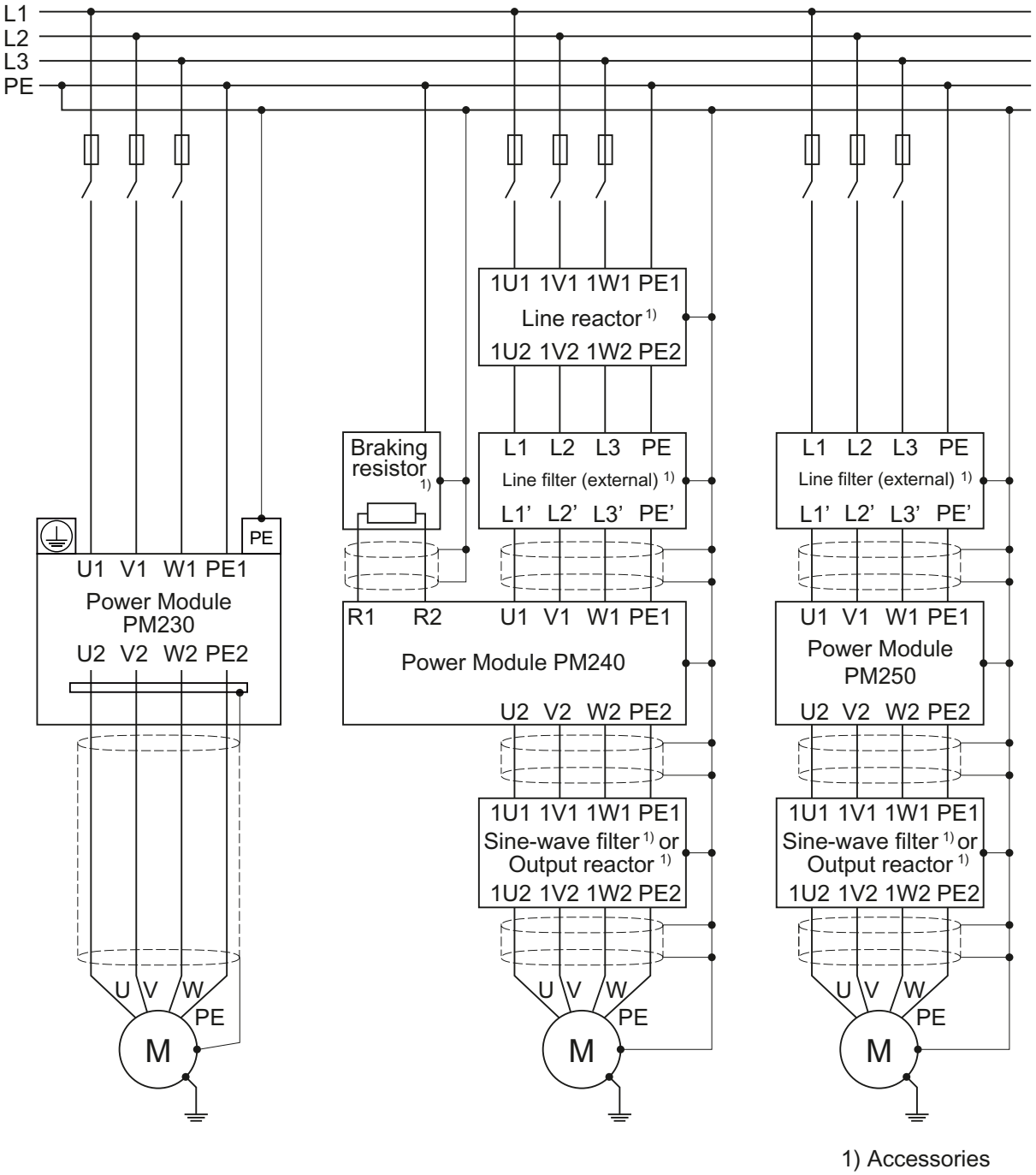


Figure 3-2 Connections for PM230, PM240 and PM250 Power Modules

PM240 and PM250 Power Modules are available with and without integrated class A line filters. Either a Class A or a Class B filter is integrated in the PM230 Power Module.

An external filter has to be installed in PM240 and PM250 Power Modules to satisfy more stringent EMC requirements (Class B).

3.3.5 Connecting the line supply and motor

If the converter and motor have been mounted according to the specifications, then you can connect up the devices. First connect the motor to the converter, and then the converter to the line supply.

The permissible cable cross sections and tightening torques are specified in SectionTechnical data (Page 327).

When doing this, observe the following warning information.



⚠WARNING

Line and motor connections

The converter must be grounded on the line supply and motor side. If the converter is not correctly grounded, this can lead to extremely hazardous conditions which, under certain circumstances, can result in death.

The device must be disconnected from the electrical power supply before any connections with the device are established or in any way altered.

The converter terminals be at hazardous voltages even after the converter has been switched off. After disconnecting the line supply, wait at least 5 minutes until the device has discharged itself. Only then, carry out any installation and mounting work.

When connecting the converter to the line supply, ensure that the motor terminal box is closed.

If the LEDs at the converter do not light up or remain inactive, this does not mean that the converter is switched off or is de-energized (no current condition).

The short-circuit ratio of the power supply must be at least 100.

Make sure that the line voltage is in the permissible input voltage range for the converter - it is not permissible to connect the converter to a higher line voltage.

If you use a residual-current operated circuit breaker on the line side to protect against direct or indirect contact, a type B universal current residual-current operated circuit breaker (300 mA shutdown threshold for filtered Power Modules, 30 mA for unfiltered devices) must be used! If you do not use a residual-current operated circuit breaker, you must guarantee touch protection using other protective measures; for example isolating the electronic devices from the environment using double or reinforced insulation or by using a transformer.

CAUTION

Supply cable and signal lines

The signal lines must be routed separately from the supply cables to ensure that the system is not affected by inductive or capacitive interference.

Note

Converters without an integrated line filter can be connected to grounded (TN, TT) and non-grounded (IT) line supply systems. The converters with integrated line filter are suitable only for connection to TN line supply systems.

Note

Electrical protective equipment

Ensure that the appropriate circuit breakers / fuses for the converter's rated current are fitted between the line and converter (see catalog D11.1).

Connecting the motor

Unshielded cables with lengths up to 100 m are permissible to connect the motor. If you use shielded cables, 50 m is permissible for unfiltered converters and 25 m for filtered converters.

Additional information on the cable lengths is provided in Catalog D11.1.

Motor connection

Connect the motor in either the star or delta connection according to your particular application. Additional information on this is provided in the Section Star-delta motor connection and application examples (Page 357).

Also carefully observe the information provided by the motor manufacturer.

Connecting the motor to the converter

- If available, open the terminal covers of the converter.
- Connect the motor to terminals U2, V2 and W2.
  Carefully observe the regulations for EMC-compliant wiring:
  EMC-compliant connection of the converter (Page 40)
- Connect the protective conductor of the motor to the terminal ⏚ of the converter.

Connecting to the line supply

- Connect the line supply to terminals U1/L1, V1/L2 and W1/L3.
- Connect the protective conductor of the line supply to terminal PE of the converter.
- If available, close the terminal covers of the converter.

3.3.6 EMC-compliant connection of the converter

EMC-compliant installation of the converter and motor are required in order to ensure disturbance-free operation of the drive.

Converters with degree of protection IP20 must be installed and operated in an enclosed control cabinet.

Converters with degree of protection IP55 can also be installed outside a control cabinet.

An overview of control cabinet installation and cabling can be found in the following section. For further details, refer to the installation instructions for the Power Module.

The EMC-compliant connection of the converter itself is described in the following sections.

3.3.7 Avoiding electromagnetic interference (EMI)

The inverters are designed to operate in an industrial environment where a high level of EMI can be expected. Safe, reliable and disturbance-free operation is only guaranteed if the devices are professionally installed.

Inverters with degree of protection IP20 must be installed and operated in an EMC-compliant cabinet.

Control cabinet design

- All metal parts and components of the control cabinet (side panels, rear panels, roof and base plates) must be connected to the control cabinet frame through a good electrical connection – this is best achieved using the highest possible surface area or a high number of individual screw connections
- The PE bar and the EMC shield bar must be connected to the control cabinet frame through a good electrical connection established through a large surface area.
- All of the metal enclosures of the devices and supplementary components installed in the cabinet – e.g. inverter or line filter – must be connected to the control cabinet frame through a good electrical connection through the largest possible surface area. The most favorable design is to mount these devices and supplementary components on a bare metal mounting plate with good conducting characteristics; this in turn is connected to the control cabinet frame through a good electrical connection and the largest possible surface area. It is especially important that they are connected to the PE and EMC shield bars.
- All of the connections must be implemented so that they are durable. Screw connections to painted or anodized metal components must either be established using special contact (serrated) washers that cut through the insulating surface and therefore establish a metallic conductor contact, or the insulating surface must be removed at the contact locations.

- Coils of contactors, relays, solenoid valves and motor holding brakes must be equipped with interference suppression elements in order to dampen high-frequency radiation when switching-off (RC elements or varistors with AC coils and free-wheeling diodes or varistors for DC coils). The protective circuit must be directly connected at the coil.

Cable routing and shielding

- All inverter power cables (line supply cables, connecting cables between the braking chopper and the associated braking resistance as well as the motor cables) must be separately routed away from signal and data cables. The minimum clearance should be approx. 25 cm. As an alternative, the decoupling can be realized in the control cabinet using metal partitions (separating elements) connected to the mounting plate through a good electrical connection
- The cables from the line supply to the line filter must be routed separately away from non-filtered power cables with a high noise level (e. g. cables between the line filter and inverter, connecting cables between the braking chopper and the associated braking resistor as well as motor cables)
- Signal and data cables as well as filtered line supply cables may only cross non-filtered power cables at right angles
- All cables should be kept as short as possible
- Signal and data cables and the associated equipotential bonding cables must always be routed in parallel with the smallest possible clearance between them
- Shielded motor cables must be used
- The shielded motor cable should be routed separately away from the cables to the motor temperature sensors (PTC/KTY)
- Signal and data cables must be shielded.
- Especially sensitive control cables - such as setpoint and actual value cables - should be routed without any interruption with optimum shield support at both ends
- Shields should be connected at both ends to the grounded enclosures through a good electrical connection and through a large surface area
- Cable shields should be connected as close as possible to where the cable enters the cabinet
- EMC shield bars should be used for power cables; the shield support elements provided in the inverter should be used for signal and data cables
- If at all possible, cable shields should not be interrupted by intermediate terminals
- Cable shields should be retained both for power cables as well as for signal and data cables using the appropriate EMC clamps. The shield clamps must connect the shield to the EMC shield bar or the shield support element for control cables through a low inductive connection through a large surface area.

EMC-compliant wiring for Power Module with degree of protection IP20

Using two examples, the following diagram shows the EMC-compliant installation of Power Modules with and without shield plate.

Note

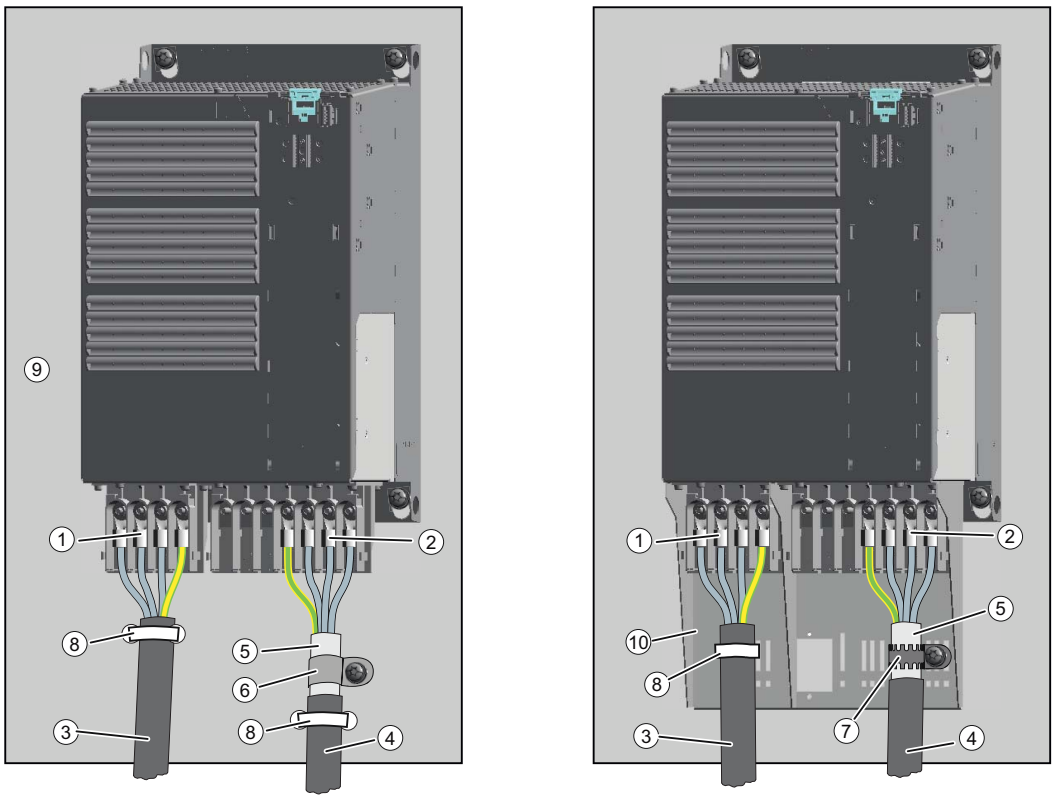
Power Modules PM240-2 and PM230, FSA … FSC

For an EMC-compliant installation, you must use the shield plate.

The shield of the control cable must be installed both on the shield plate of the CU and on the shield plate of the Power Module.

Note

The display in the following diagram is not to scale. The terminal cover cannot be removed. It was only taken out of the diagram to better show the cable connection.



① Line supply connection
② Motor connection
③ Power supply cable (unshielded)
④ Motor connection cable (shielded)
⑤ Cable shield
⑥ Cable clamps for a good conductive electrical connection through a large surface area between the shield and mounting plate
⑦ Serrated collar
⑧ Cable tie
⑨ Metal mounting plate (unpainted and with a good electrical conductivity)
⑩ Shield plate (option)

Figure 3-3 EMC-compliant wiring - on the left without shield plate, on the right with shield plate

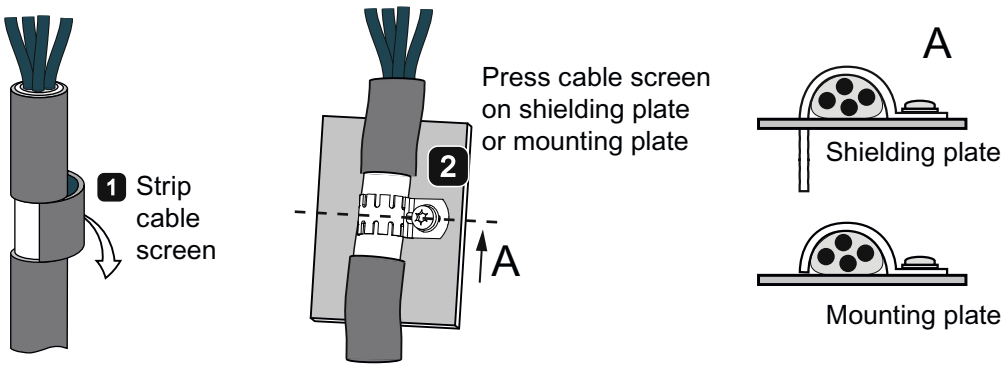


Figure 3-4 Shield connection - detail

Note

Connect a Power Module with integrated line filter with an unshielded cable to the mains power.

If you use an external line filter, you will need a shielded cable between the line filter and the Power Module.

Shielding with shield plate:	Shield connection kits are available for all Power Module frame sizes (you will find more information in Catalog D11.1). The cable shields must be connected to the shield plate through the greatest possible surface area using shield clamps.
Shielding without shield plate:	EMC-compliant shielding can also be implemented without using a shield plate. In this case, you must ensure that the cable shields are connected to the ground potential through the largest possible surface area.
Braking resistor connection:	The braking resistor is connected using a shielded cable. Using a clamp, the shield should be connected to the mounting plate or to the shield plate through a good electrical connection and through the largest possible surface area.

EMC-compliant wiring of Power Modules in degree of protection IP55 / UL type 12

The following diagram shows the EMC-compliant installation of Power Modules with degree of protection IP55 / UL type 12.

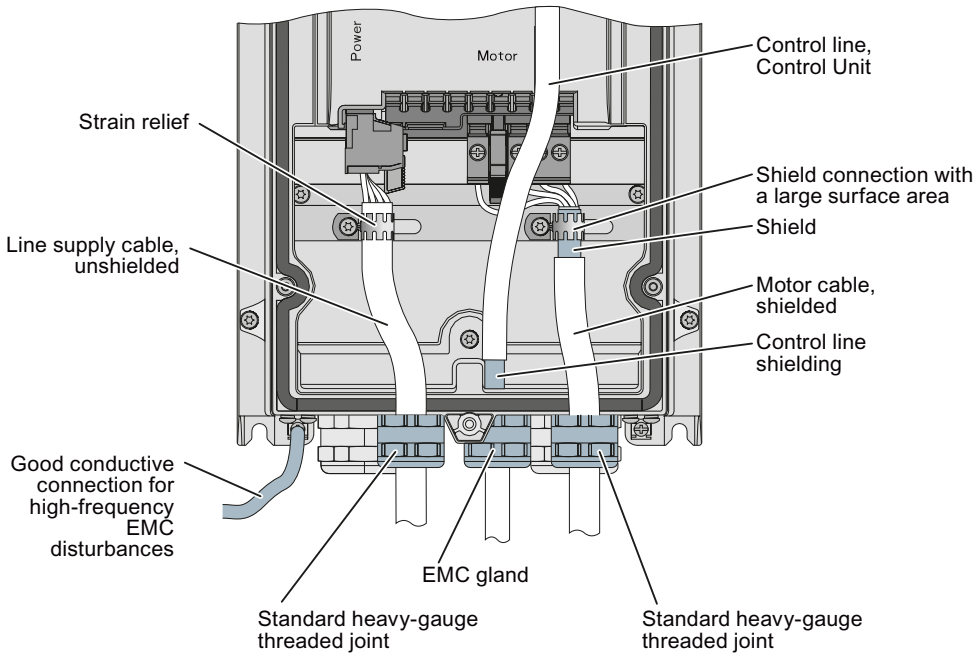


Figure 3-5 EMC-compliant connection of the Power Module PM230, degree of protection IP55 / UL Type 12

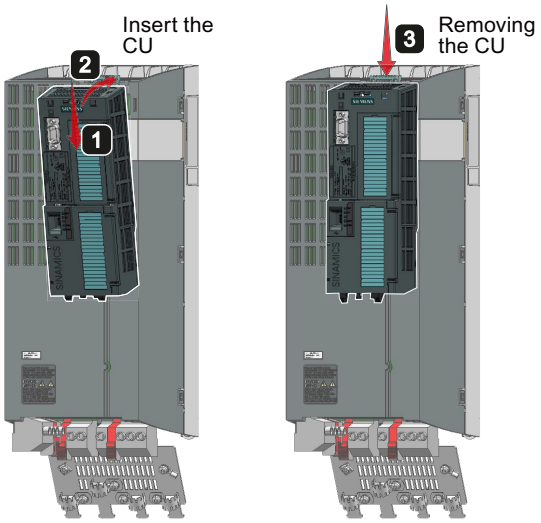
Note

You must use a shielded cable if you use the control terminals of the Control Unit. The cable shield must be connected to the gland plate through a good electrical connection using an EMC gland.

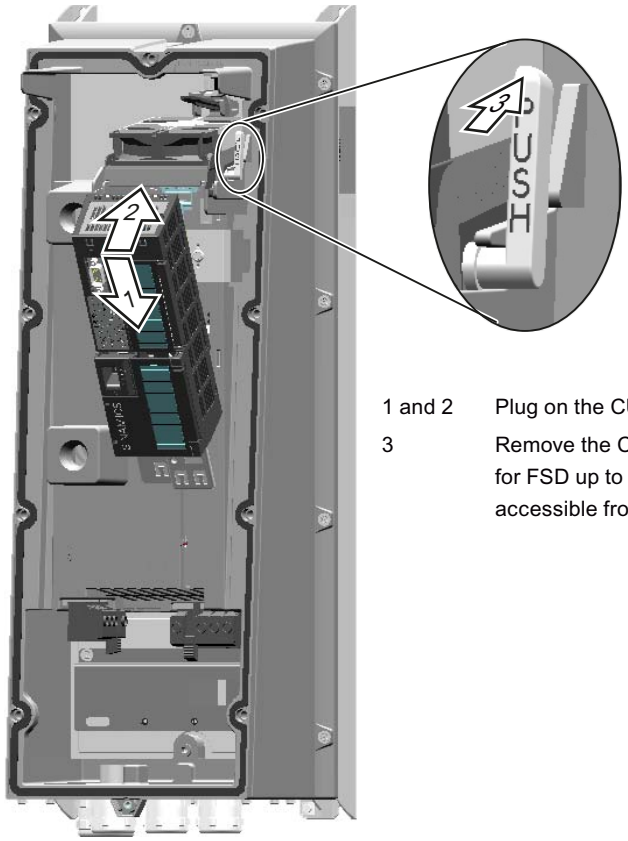
3.4 Installing Control Unit

The Control Unit is inserted on and removed from the Power Module without requiring any tools. To gain access to the terminal strips, open the top and bottom front doors to the right. The terminal strips use spring-loaded terminals.

Installing the Control Unit on an IP20 Power Module

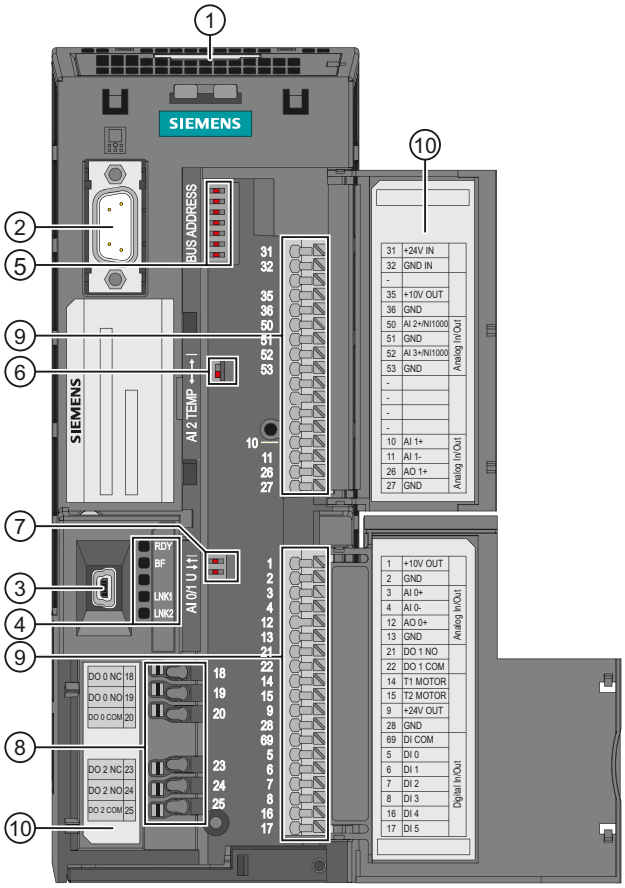


Installing the Control Unit on an IP55 Power Module

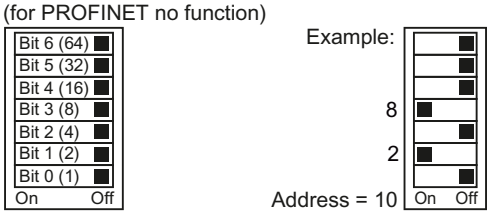


1 and 2	Plug on the CU
3	Remove the CU for FSA up to FSC; for FSD up to FSF, the release knob is accessible from the top

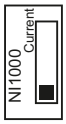
3.4.1 Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU



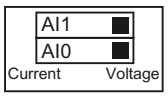
1. Memory card slot (MMC or SD card)
2. Interface for an operator panel (IOP or BOP-2)
3. USB interface for STARTER
4. Status LED
   - RDY
   - BF
   - ---
   - LNK1, nur bei PROFINET
   - LNK2, nur bei PROFINET
5. DIP switch for fieldbus address (for PROFINET no function)



6. NI1000 DIP switch AI2 (terminals 50/51)

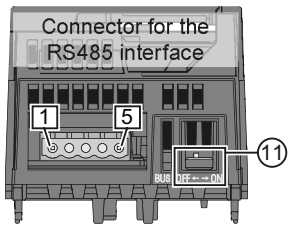


7. DIP switch for AI0 and AI1 (terminals 3/4 and 10/11)

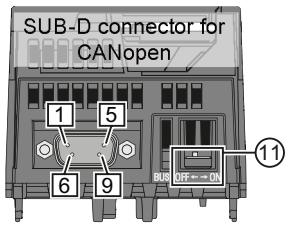


8. Digital outputs
9. Terminal strip
10. Terminal designation
11. Switch for bus terminating resistor

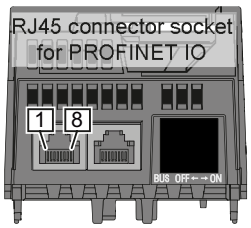




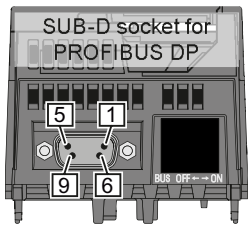
Pin
1 0 V, reference potential
2 RS485P, receive and send (+)
3 RS485N, receive and send (-)
4 Cable shield
5 Not connected



Pin
1 Not assigned
2 CAN_L, CAN signal (dominant low)
3 CAN_GND, CAN ground
4 Not assigned
5 (CAN _SHLD), optional shield
6 (GND), optional ground
7 CAN_H, CAN signal (dominant high)
8 Not assigned
9 Not assigned

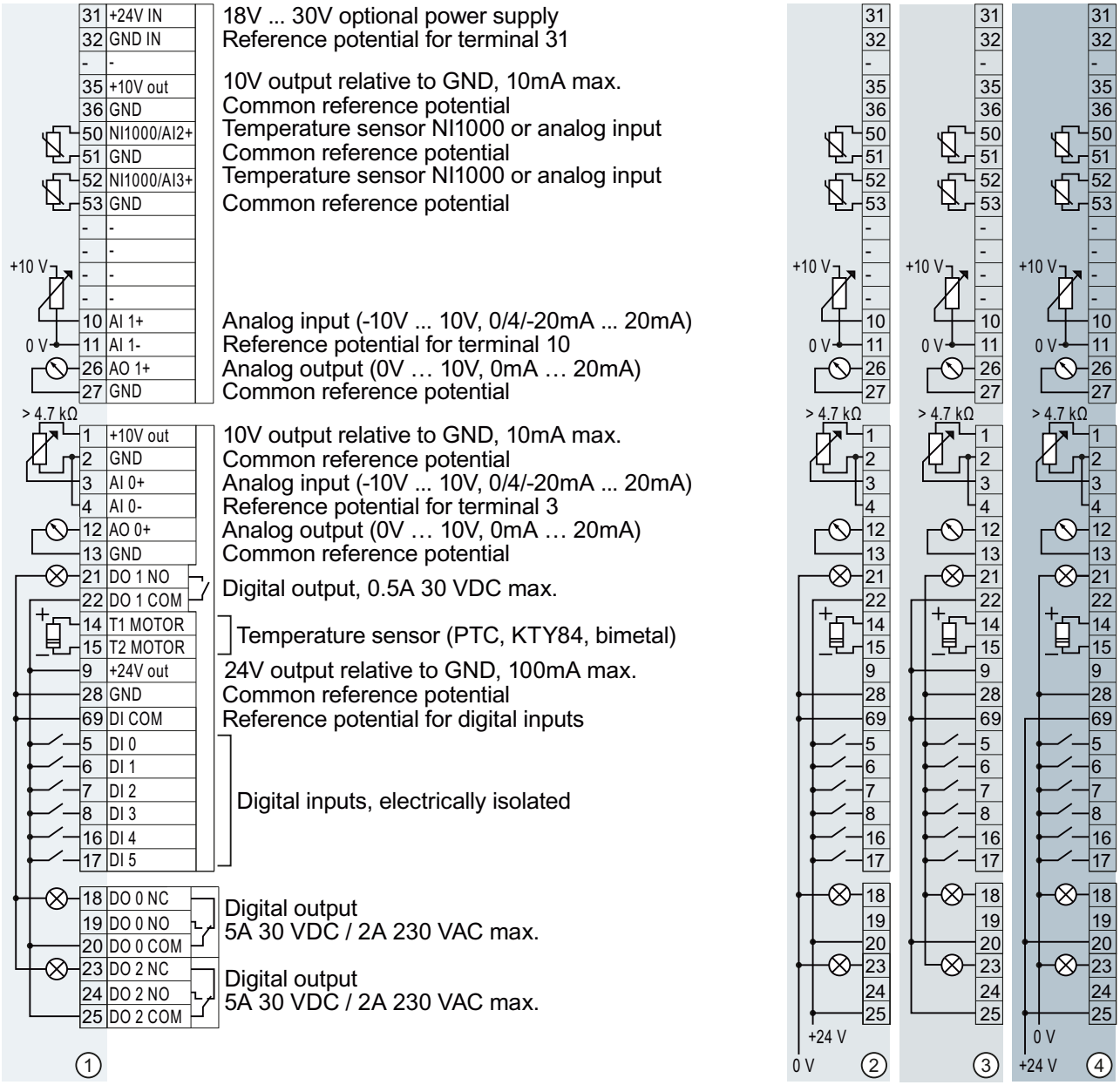


Pin
1 RX+, receive data +
2 RX-, receive data -
3 TX+. Transmit data +
4 Not assigned
5 Not assigned
6 TX-, transmit data -
7 Not assigned
8 Not assigned



Pin
1 Shield, ground connection
2 Not assigned
3 RxD/TxD-P, receive and send (B/B')
4 CNTR-P, control signal
5 DGND, reference potential for data (C/C')
6 VP, supply voltage
7 Not assigned
8 RxD/TxD-N, receive and send (A/A')
9 Not assigned

3.4.2 Terminal strips of the CU



You may use the internal 10V power supply or an external voltage source for the analog inputs.

The analog inputs can be switched over to additional digital inputs.

① Wiring when using the internal power supplies. DI = high, if the switch is closed.

② Wiring when using external power supplies. DI = high, if the switch is closed.

③ Wiring when using the internal power supplies. DI = low, if the switch is closed.

④ Wiring when using external power supplies. DI = low, if the switch is closed.

3.4.3 Wiring terminal strips

Solid or flexible cables are permitted as signal lines. Wire end ferrules must not be used for the spring-loaded terminals.

The permissible cable cross-section ranges between 0.5 mm² (21 AWG) and 1.5 mm² (16 AWG). When completely connecting-up the unit, we recommend cables with a cross-section of 1mm² (18 AWG).

Route the signal lines so that you can again completely close the front doors after connecting-up the terminal strip. If you use shielded cables, then you must connect the shield to the mounting plate of the control cabinet or with the shield support of the inverter through a good electrical connection and a large surface area.

NOTICE
To ensure operating safety even when connecting 230 V to the Control Unit relay outputs DO 0 and DO 2, for these connections cables with double insulation must be used.

3.4.4 Selecting the interface assignments

Description

The converter offers different predefined assignments (macros) for its inputs and outputs and the fieldbus interface.

Only the inputs and outputs whose functions change by selecting a specific assignment, are shown on the following pages.

Procedure

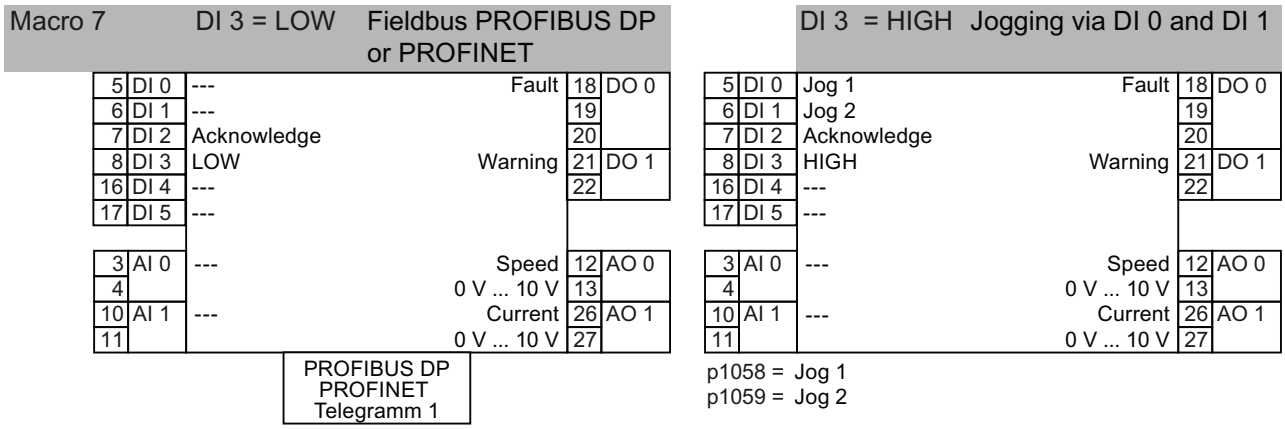
- Wire up the converter according to the interface assignment most suitable for your application.

Further steps

- In the basic commissioning, select the default settings of the interfaces that best match your particular wiring.
- If necessary, after the basic commissioning, adjust the function of the inputs or outputs and the fieldbus interface.

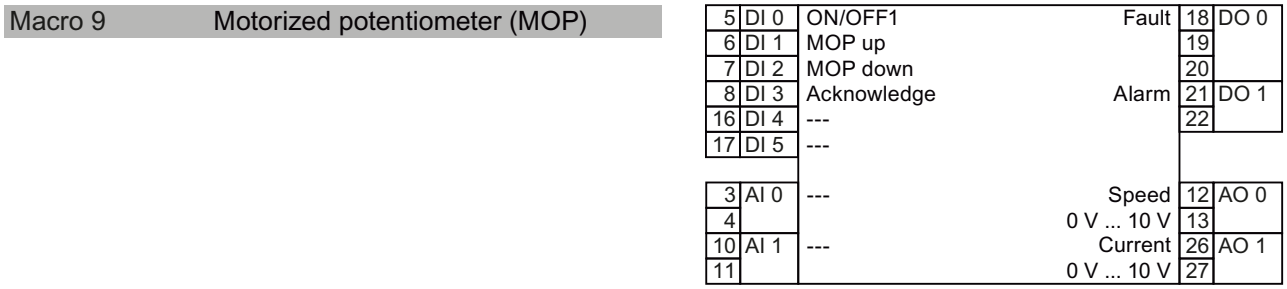
Automatic/local - Changeover between fieldbus and jog mode

Factory setting for converters with PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface:



Refer also to section: Configuring communication to the control (Page 96).

Motorized potentiometer



Process industry

Macro 14 — DI 3 = LOW — PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET fieldbus

5	DI 0	---	Fault	18	DO 0
6	DI 1	External fault		19	
7	DI 2	Acknowledge		20	
8	DI 3	LOW	Alarm	21	DO 1
16	DI 4	---		22	
17	DI 5	---			
3	AI 0	---	Speed	12	AO 0
4			0 V ... 10 V	13	
10	AI 1	---	Current	26	AO 1
11			0 V ... 10 V	27	

PROFIBUS DP
PROFINET
Telegram 20

DI 3 = HIGH — Motorized potentiometer (MOP)

5	DI 0	ON/OFF1	Fault	18	DO 0
6	DI 1	External fault		19	
7	DI 2	Acknowledge		20	
8	DI 3	HIGH	Alarm	21	DO 1
16	DI 4	MOP up		22	
17	DI 5	MOP down			
3	AI 0	---	Speed	12	AO 0
4			0 V ... 10 V	13	
10	AI 1	---	Current	26	AO 1
11			0 V ... 10 V	27	

Refer also to section: Configuring communication to the control (Page 96).

Macro 15 — DI 3 = LOW — Analog setpoint

5	DI 0	ON/OFF1	Fault	18	DO 0
6	DI 1	External fault		19	
7	DI 2	Acknowledge		20	
8	DI 3	LOW	Alarm	21	DO 1
16	DI 4	---		22	
17	DI 5	---			
3	AI 0	Setpoint	Speed	12	AO 0
4		I ■□ U -10 V ... 10 V	0 V ... 10 V	13	
10	AI 1	---	Current	26	AO 1
11			0 V ... 10 V	27	

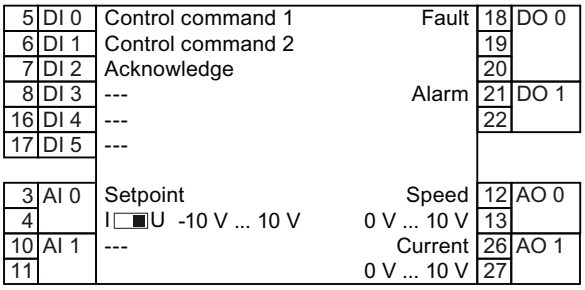
DI 3 = HIGH — Motorized potentiometer (MOP)

5	DI 0	ON/OFF1	Fault	18	DO 0
6	DI 1	External fault		19	
7	DI 2	Acknowledge		20	
8	DI 3	HIGH	Alarm	21	DO 1
16	DI 4	MOP up		22	
17	DI 5	MOP down			
3	AI 0	---	Speed	12	AO 0
4			0 V ... 10 V	13	
10	AI 1	---	Current	26	AO 1
11			0 V ... 10 V	27	

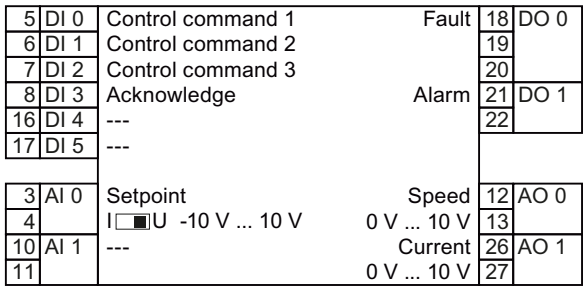
Two- or three-wire control

Macro 12 is the factory setting for the converter equipped with the Control Units CU230P-2 HVAC and CU230P-2 CAN.

	Macro 12	Macro 17	Macro 18
Two-wire control	Method 1	Method 2	Method 3
Control command 1	ON/OFF1	ON/OFF1 right	ON/OFF1 right
Control command 2	Reversing	ON/OFF1 left	ON/OFF1 left



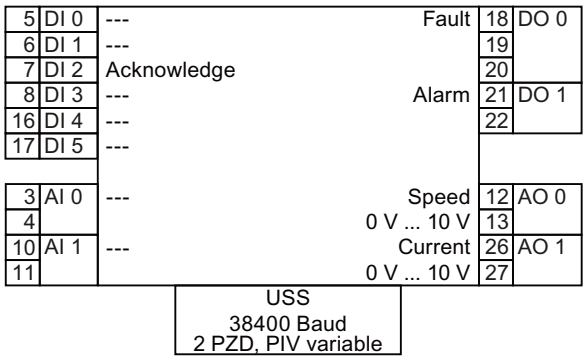
	Macro 19	Macro 20
Three-wire control	Method 1	Method 2
Control command 1	Enable/OFF1	Enable/OFF1
Control command 2	ON right	ON
Control command 3	ON left	Reversing



Communication with a higher-level control via USS

Macro 21	Fieldbus USS

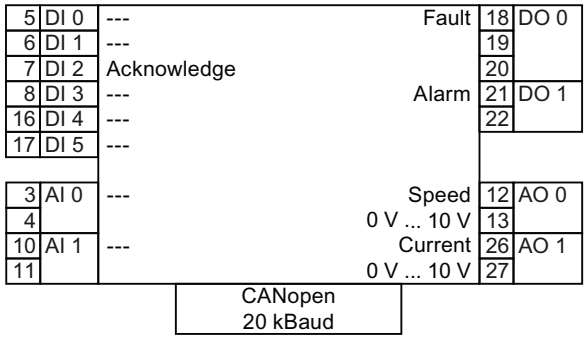
p2020 = Baud rate
p2022 = PZD number
p2023 = PKW number



Communication with a higher-level control via CANopen

Macro 22	Fieldbus CANopen

p8622 = Baud rate



Typical commissioning scenarios

4

Adapting the converter to the drive application

The converter must match the motor and the drive application to be able to optimally operate and protect the motor.

Although the converter can be parameterized for very specific applications, many standard applications function satisfactorily with just a few adaptations.

Use the factory settings ... where possible

In basic applications, the drive already functions with its factory settings. To do this, you must check whether the motor and application match the factory settings of the converter.

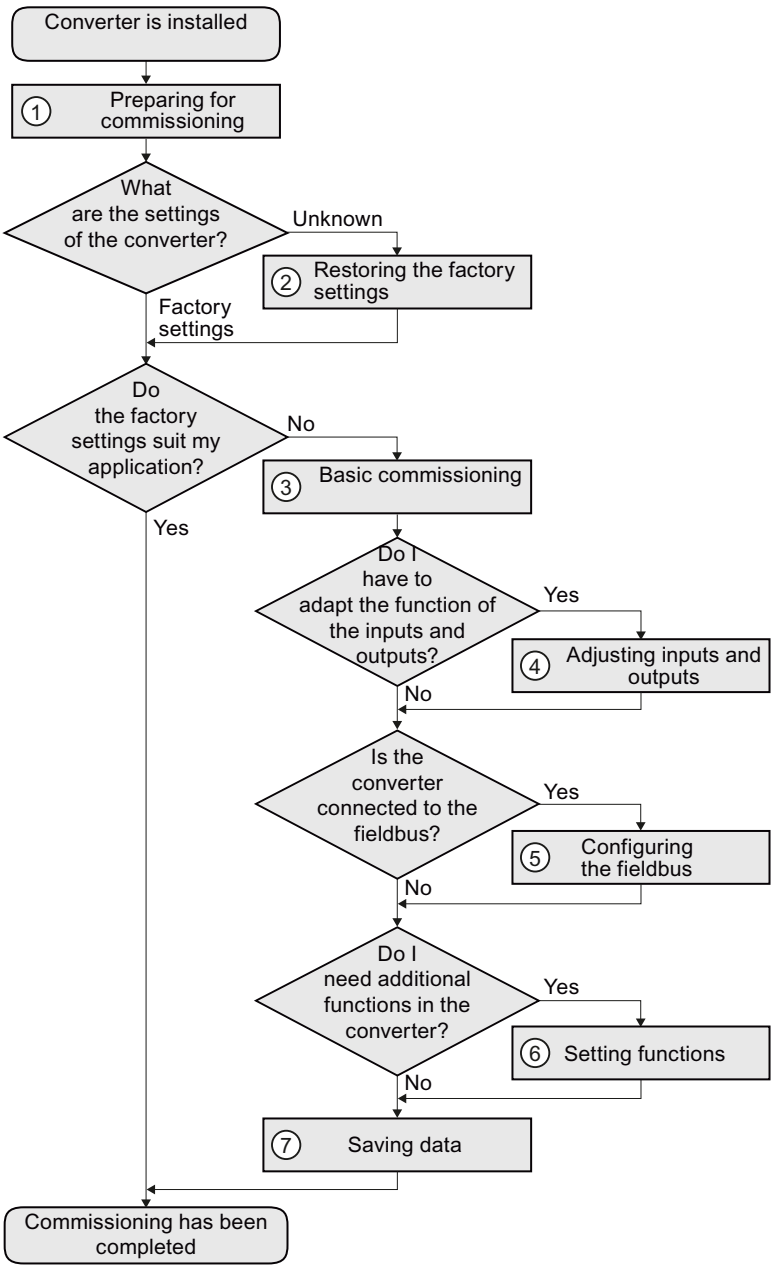
If, when making this check, you identify that you must adapt the factory settings, then you must commission the converter.

Only the basic commissioning is required ... for basic, standard applications

Most standard applications function after just a few adaptations made during the basic commissioning.

Commissioning guidelines

We recommend the following procedure for the commissioning of your converter:



① See (Page 55)

② See (Page 62)

③ Basic commissioning with STARTER (Page 68) or Operator Panel (Page 63)

④ See (Page 79)

⑤ See (Page 91)

⑥ See (Page 179)

⑦ See (Page 285)

Basic commissioning

5

5.1 Preparing for the basic commissioning

Prerequisites: before you start

Before starting commissioning, you must answer the following questions:

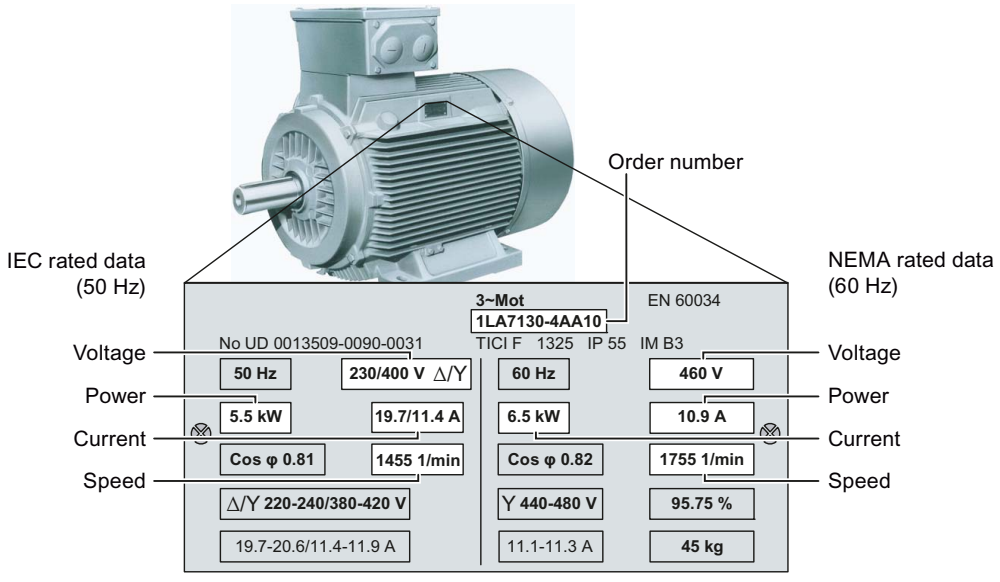
- What data does my converter have?
- What is the data for the connected motor?
- What technological requirements must the drive fulfill?
- Via which converter interfaces does the higher-level control operate the drive?

In which region of the world is the motor used?

- Europe IEC: 50 Hz [kW]
- North America NEMA: 60 Hz [hp] or 60 Hz [kW]

Motor data of the rating plate

If you use the STARTER commissioning tool and a SIEMENS motor, then you only have to specify the order number of the motor - otherwise you must use the data from the motor rating plate.



NOTICE
Installation note The rating plate data that you enter must correspond to the connection type of the motor (star connection [Y]/delta connection [Δ]), i.e. for a delta motor connection, the delta rating plate data must be entered.

What is the prevailing temperature where the motor is operated?

- Motor ambient temperature if it differs from the factory setting = 20° C.

5.1.1 Does the motor match the converter?

The converter is preset on a motor at the factory as shown in the figure below.

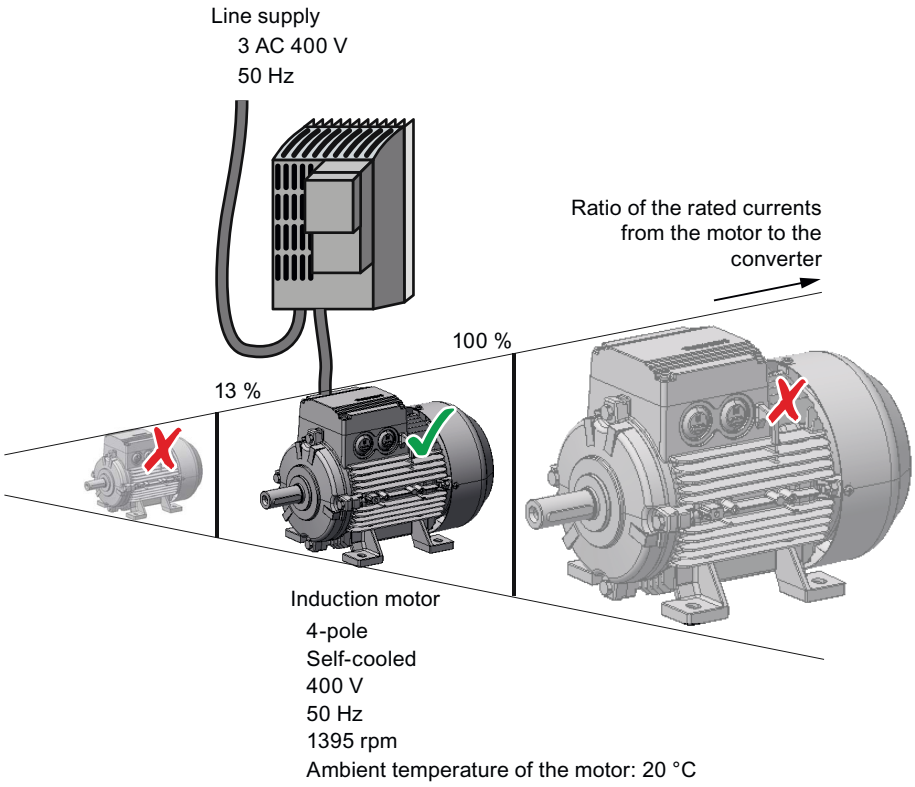


Figure 5-1 Motor data factory settings

The rated current of the motor must be in the range 13% to 100% of the rated converter current.
Example: With a converter with the rated current 10.2 A, you may operate induction motors whose rated currents are in the range 1.3 A to 10.2 A.

5.1.2 Wiring examples for the factory settings

Many applications function using the factory settings

The following wiring can be used for Control Units which receive their commands and setpoints via control terminals (CU230P-2 HVAC and CU230P-2 CAN) to use the factory setting.

Pre-assignment of control terminals in the factory for CU230P-2 HVAC and CU230P-2 CAN

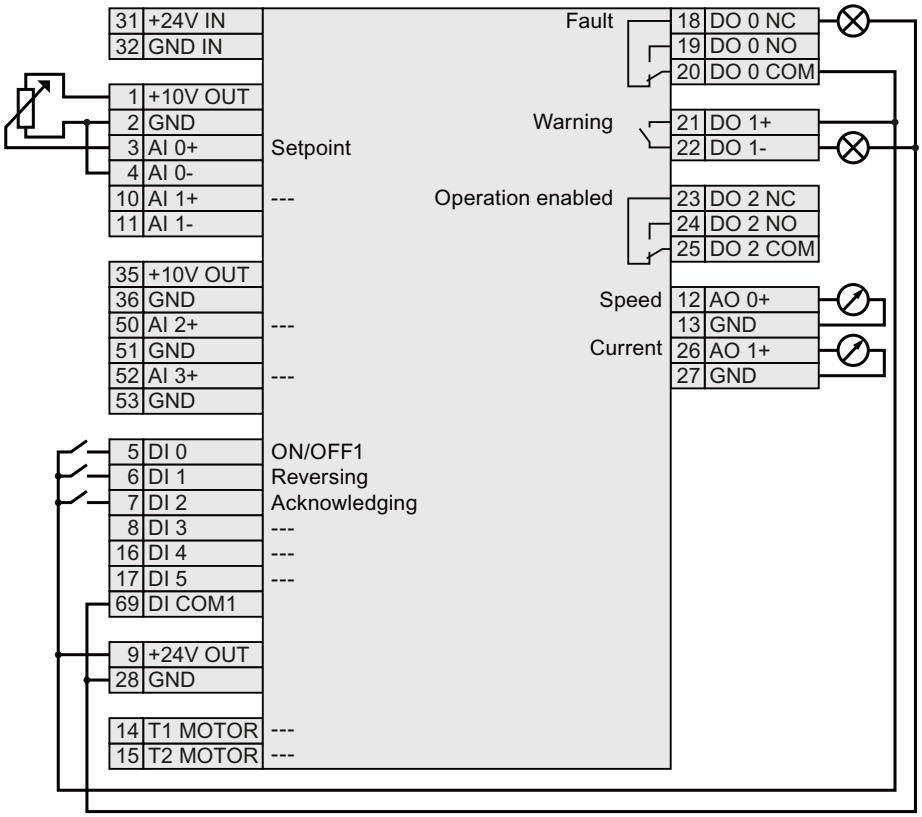


Figure 5-2 Wiring a CU230P-2 HVAC or CU230P-2 CAN to use the factory settings

Note

In the NPN mode, a ground fault between the customer contact and digital input may undesirably control the drive input.

Pre-assignment of control terminals in the factory for CU230P-2 DP

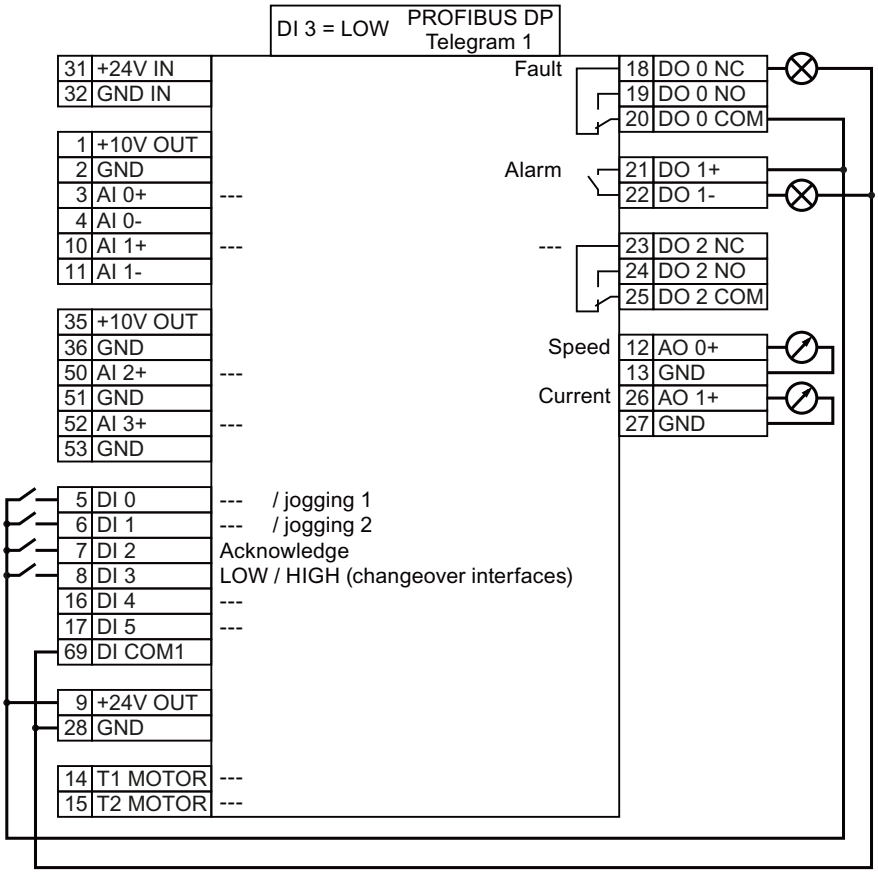


Figure 5-3 Wiring a CU230P-2 DP to use the factory settings

5.1.3 Factory setting of the converter control

Switching the motor on and off

The converters are set in the factory so that after it has been switched on, the motor accelerates in 10 seconds up to its speed setpoint (referred to 1500 rpm). After it has been switched off, the motor brakes with a ramp-down time that is also 10 seconds.

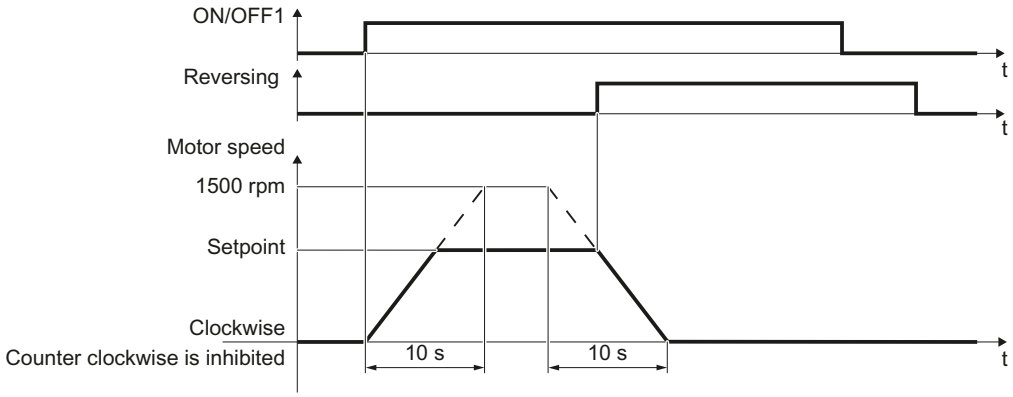


Figure 5-4 Switching on, switching off and reversing the motor in the factory setting

Switch on and switch off the motor in the jog mode

For converters with PROFIBUS interface, operation can be switched over using digital input DI 3. The motor is either switched on and off via PROFIBUS – or via its digital inputs in the jog mode.

For a control command at the respective digital input, the motor rotates with ±150 rpm. The ramp-up and ramp-down times are also 10 seconds, referred to 1500 rpm.

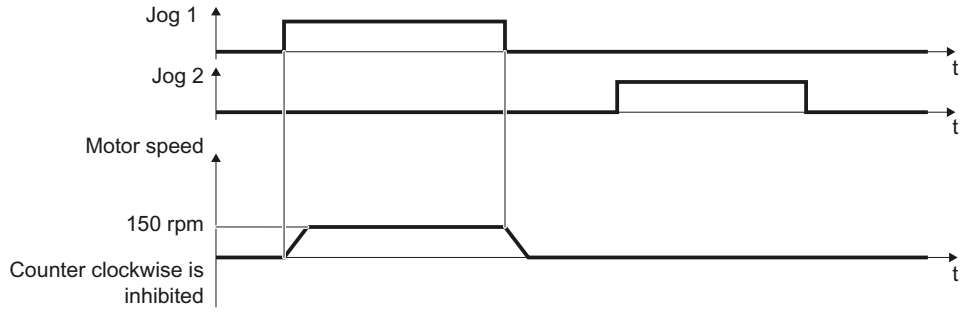


Figure 5-5 Jogging the motor in the factory setting

5.1.4 U/f control or speed control?

For induction motors, there are two different open-loop control or closed-loop control techniques:

- U/f control (calculation of the motor voltage using a characteristic curve)
- Closed-loop speed control (also: field-oriented control or vector control)

Criteria for selecting either U/f control or speed control

U/f control is suitable for most applications in which the speed of induction motors is to be changed. Examples of typical applications for U/f control include:

- Pumps
- Fan
- Compressors
- Horizontal conveyors

When compared to U/f control, vector control offers the following advantages:

- The speed is more stable for motor load changes.
- Shorter accelerating times when the setpoint changes.
- Acceleration and braking are possible with an adjustable maximum torque.
- Improved protection of the motor and the driven machine as a result of the adjustable torque limiting.
- The full torque is possible at standstill.
- Torque control is only possible with vector control.

Examples of typical applications in which speed control is used:

- Hoisting gear and vertical conveyors
- Winders
- Extruders

It is not permissible to use speed control in the following cases:

- If the motor is too small in comparison to the inverter (the rated motor power may not be less than one quarter of the rated inverter power)
- If several motors are connected to one inverter
- If a power contactor is used between the inverter and motor and is opened while the motor is powered up
- If the maximum motor speed exceeds the following values:

Inverter pulse frequency	2 kHz			4 kHz and higher		
Pole number of the motor	2-pole	4-pole	6-pole	2-pole	4-pole	6-pole
Maximum motor speed [rpm]	9960	4980	3320	14400	7200	4800

5.1.5 Defining additional requirements for the application

What speed limits should be set? (Minimum and maximum speed)

- Minimum speed - factory setting 0 [rpm]
  The minimum speed is the lowest speed of the motor independent of the speed setpoint. A minimum speed > 0 makes sense in applications, where the motor should be operated with a speed = 0 after it has been switched on. Examples include fans or pumps.
- Maximum speed - factory setting 1500 [rpm]
  The converter limits the motor speed to this value.

What motor ramp-up time and ramp-down time are needed for the application?

The ramp-up and ramp-down time define the maximum motor acceleration when the speed setpoint changes. The ramp-up and ramp-down time is the time between motor standstill and the maximum speed, or between the maximum speed and motor standstill.

- Ramp-up time - factory setting 10 s
- Ramp-down time - factory setting 10 s

5.2 Restoring the factory setting

There are cases where something goes wrong when commissioning a drive system e.g.:

- The line voltage was interrupted during commissioning and you were not able to complete commissioning.
- You got confused when setting the parameters and you can no longer understand the individual settings that you made.
- You don't know whether the inverter was already operational

In cases such as these, reset the inverter to the factory settings.

Restoring the factory setting with STARTER or BOP-2

This function resets the settings in the inverter to the factory settings.

Note

The communication settings and the settings of the motor standard (IEC/NEMA) are retained even after restoring the factory setting.

Table 5- 1 Procedure

STARTER	BOP-2
1. Go online with STARTER 2. In STARTER, click on the button  .	1. In the "Options" menu, select the "DRVRESET" entry 2. Confirm the reset using the OK key

5.3 Using the factory settings

You only have to do the following, if the factory settings of the converter match your motor and your application.

1. Connect the converter in accordance with the wiring example. See Section: Wiring examples for the factory settings (Page 57)
2. If you operate the drive on a fieldbus, you have to do the following:
   - Configure your central controller according to the settings of the converter.
   - If required by the fieldbus, set the bus address on the converter. See also Section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46)

5.4 Basic commissioning with the BOP-2

Operator control and display elements of the BOP-2

The "Basic Operator Panel-2" (BOP-2) is an operation and display instrument of the converter. For commissioning, it is directly plugged onto the converter Control Unit.

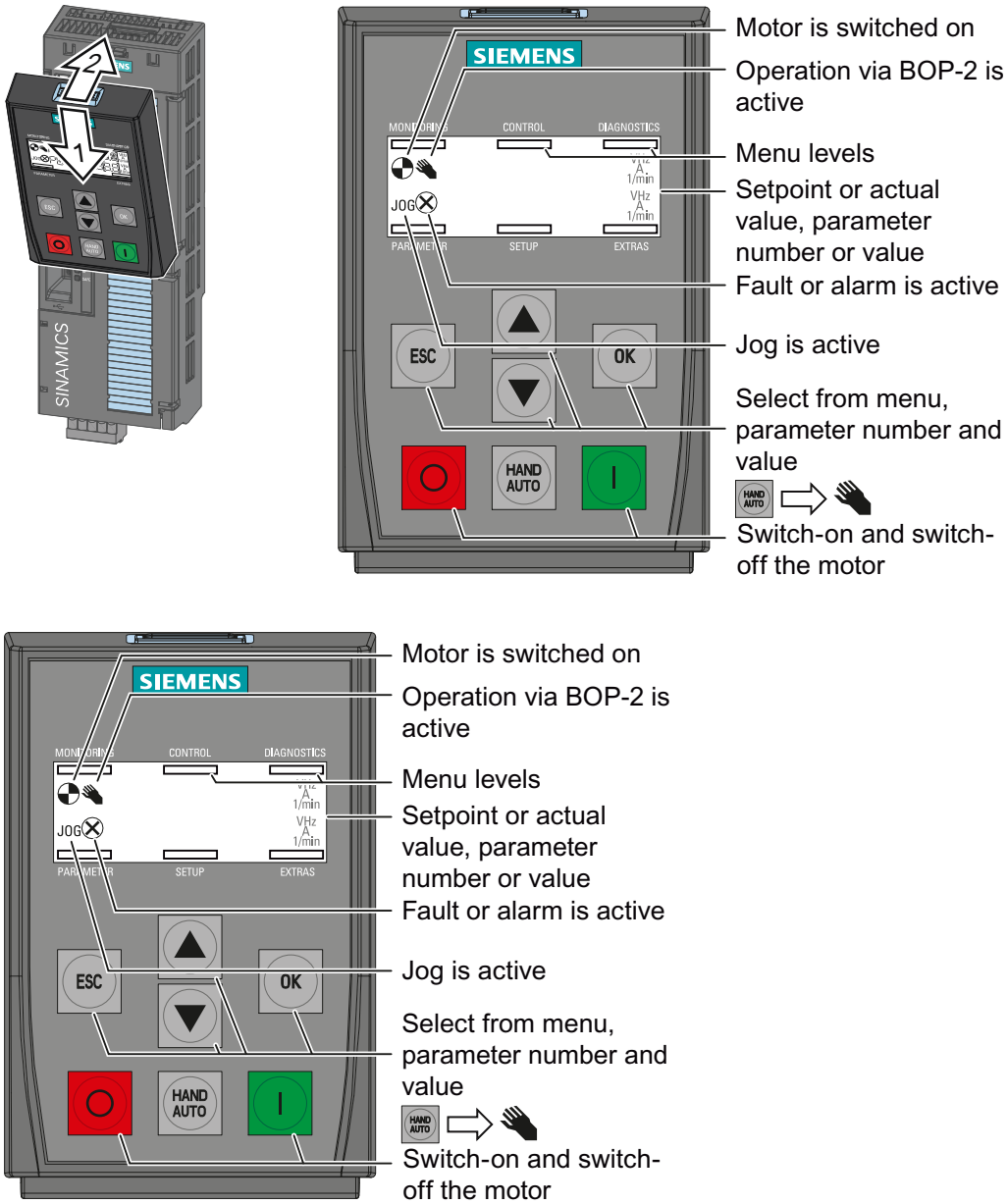


Figure 5-6 Operator control and display elements of the BOP-2

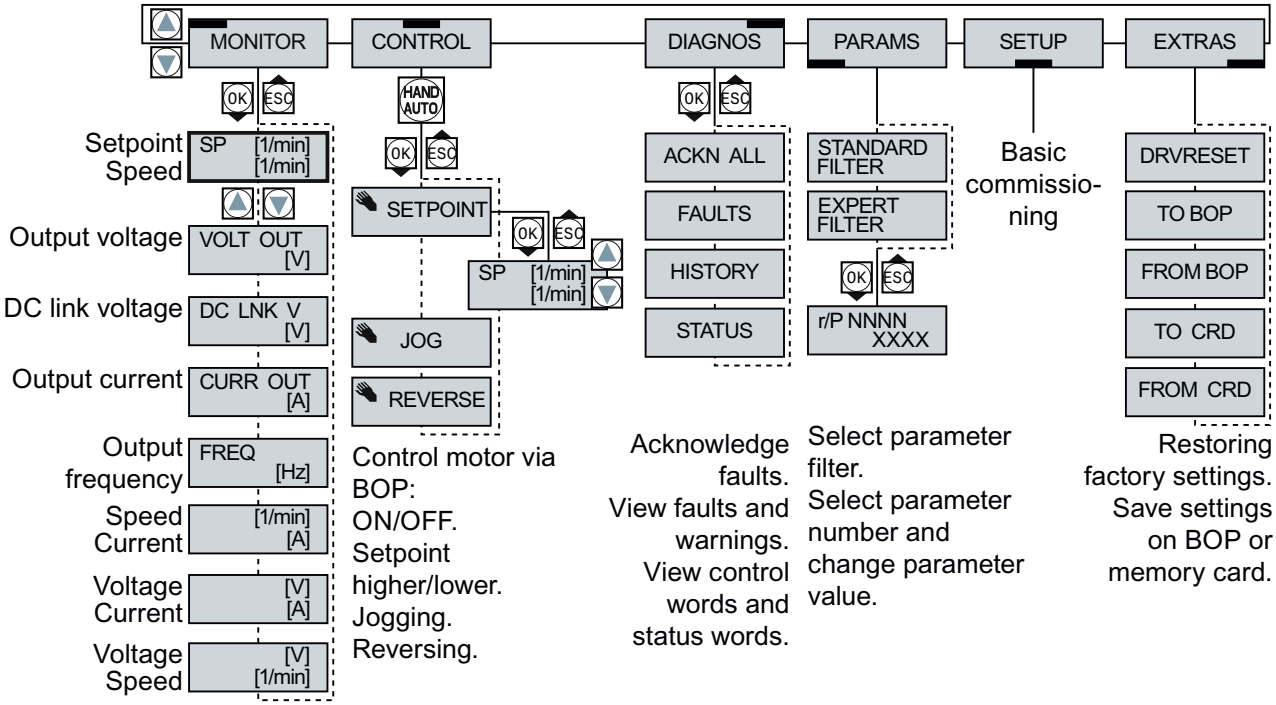


Figure 5-7 Menu of the BOP-2

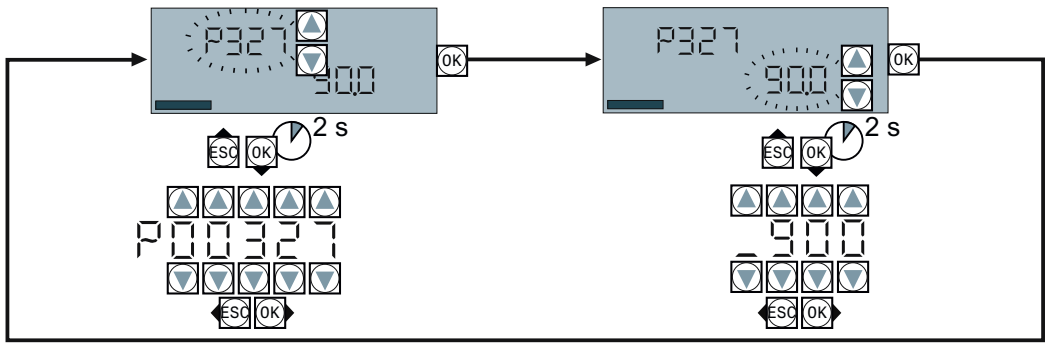
5.4.1 Changing settings using BOP-2

Changing settings using BOP-2

Using BOP2 you may change your converter settings by selecting a parameter number and changing the parameter value.

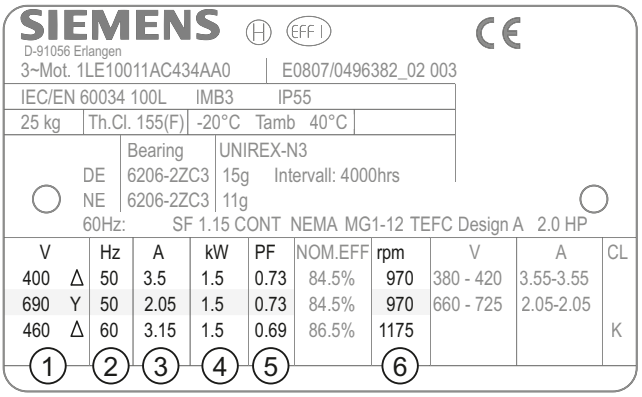
The converter immediately saves all settings which you made using the BOP-2 so that they are protected against power failure.

Procedure

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Select the parameter number</th><th colspan="2">Changing a parameter value</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">If the parameter number flashes in the display, you have two options for changing the number:</td><td colspan="2">If the parameter value flashes in the display, you have two options of changing the value:</td></tr>
<tr><td>1. option:</td><td>2. option:</td><td>1. option:</td><td>2. option:</td></tr>
<tr><td>• Increase or decrease the parameter number using the arrow keys until the number you want is displayed.</td><td>• Press and hold the OK key for more than two seconds and change the required parameter number digit by digit.</td><td>• Increase or decrease the parameter value using the arrow keys until the value you want is displayed.</td><td>• Press and hold the OK key for more than two seconds and enter the required value digit by digit.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">• Confirm the parameter number using the OK key.</td><td colspan="2">• Confirm the parameter value using the OK key.</td></tr>
</table>

5.4.2 Basic commissioning

Menu	Remark
SETUP (OK)	Set all of the parameters of the menu "SETUP". In the BOP-2, select the menu "SETUP".
RESET (OK)	Select reset if you wish to reset all parameters to the factory setting before the basic commissioning. nO → YES → OK
CTRL MOD P1300 (OK)	Select the motor control mode. The most important control modes are: VF LIN: V/f control with linear characteristic VF QUAD: V/f control with square law characteristic SPD N EN: Closed-loop speed control (sensorless vector control) TRQ N EN: Closed-loop torque control
EUR/USA P100 (OK)	② Standard: IEC or NEMA
MOT VOLT P304 (OK)	① Voltage
MOT CURR P305 (OK)	③ Current
MOT POW P307 (OK)	④ Power IEC standard (kW) ⑤ Power NEMA standard (HP)
MOT RPM P311 (OK)	⑥ Rated speed
MOT ID P1900 (OK)	We recommend the setting STIL ROT (identify motor data at standstill and with the motor rotating). If one of the following cases applies, select the setting STILL (identify motor data at standstill): • You have selected the "Speed control" control mode, but the motor cannot rotate freely, e.g. for mechanically limited traversing sections. • You have set "V/f control" as control mode.
MAc PAr P15 (OK)	Select the configuration for the inputs and outputs, as well as the correct fieldbus for your application. The predefined configurations can be found in the section titled Selecting the interface assignments (Page 48).
MIN RPM P1080 (OK)	Minimum motor speed.
RAMP UP P1120 (OK)	Motor ramp-up time.
RAMP DWN P1121 (OK)	Motor ramp-down time.
FINISH (OK)	Confirm that the basic commissioning has been completed (Parameter p3900): nO → YES → OK



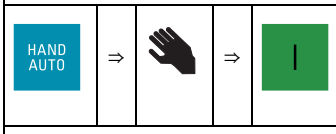
Motor data on the rating plate

Motor data identification and self-optimization

If you select the MOT ID (p1900) during basic commissioning, an alarm will be issued once the basic commissioning has been completed.

For the motor data identification, the motor must be cold. A motor in a warm operational condition supplies unusable measurement results.

⚠ CAUTION
Motor data identification for dangerous loads Secure dangerous plant and system parts before starting the motor data identification, e.g. by fencing off the dangerous location or lowering a suspended load to the floor.

Menu / Button	Procedure
	The converter issues alarm A07991.
	• Switch over from AUTO to HAND. The BOP-2 displays the HAND icon. • Switch on the motor to enable the converter to identify the data of the connected motor.
	The converter identifies the motor data during standstill. This procedure takes several seconds. The converter switches off the motor after the motor data identification has been completed.
	If, in addition to the motor data identification, you have also selected a rotating measurement, the converter issues again alarm A07991.
	• Switch on again the motor to enable the converter to identify the data of the connected motor.
	The converter turns the motor and optimizes the speed controller. This procedure can take up to one minute. The converter switches off the motor after optimization has been completed.
	• Switch over from HAND to AUTO.

5.4.3 Additional settings

The Section Typical commissioning scenarios (Page 53) shows you what still has to be set after the basic commissioning in order to adapt the inverter to your application.

5.5 Basic commissioning with STARTER

Preconditions

You require the following to commission the converter using STARTER:

- A pre-installed drive (motor and converter)
- A computer with Windows XP, Vista or Windows 7, on which STARTER V4.3 or higher is installed.

  You can find updates for STARTER in the Internet under: Update or download path for STARTER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804985/133100)

Note

The STARTER screens that are depicted show general examples. You may therefore find that a screen contains more or fewer setting options than are shown in these instructions. A commissioning step may also be shown using a converter other than the one you are using.

Going online via USB or fieldbus.

In the following, commissioning is described when the PC and converter are connected with one another via a USB cable.

With STARTER, you can access most converters not only via USB, but also via a fieldbus.

You must proceed as follows when you wish to commission the converter using STARTER via a fieldbus:

1. Configure the communication between the converter and PC.
   An example is provided in the section: Configuring PROFINET communication in STEP 7 (Page 368).
2. Go online with STARTER via the fieldbus.
3. Start commissioning with the section: Generating a STARTER project (Page 72).

5.5.1 Adapting interfaces

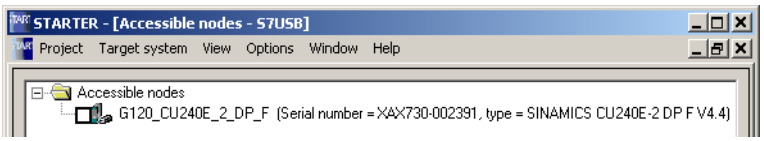
5.5.1.1 Adapting the USB interface

Procedure

- Switch on the converter power supply and connect the converter to the PC via USB.
- You must install the USB driver if you are connecting the converter and PC together for the first time. Windows 7 automatically installs the driver; for older Windows versions, you must confirm the automatic installation.
- Start the STARTER commissioning software.
- If you are using STARTER for the first time, you must check whether the USB interface is correctly set. To do this, click in STARTER on  ("Accessible participants").

Case 1: USB interface OK - no setting is required

If the interface is correctly set, the following screen form shows the converter, which is directly connected to your computer via the USB interface.

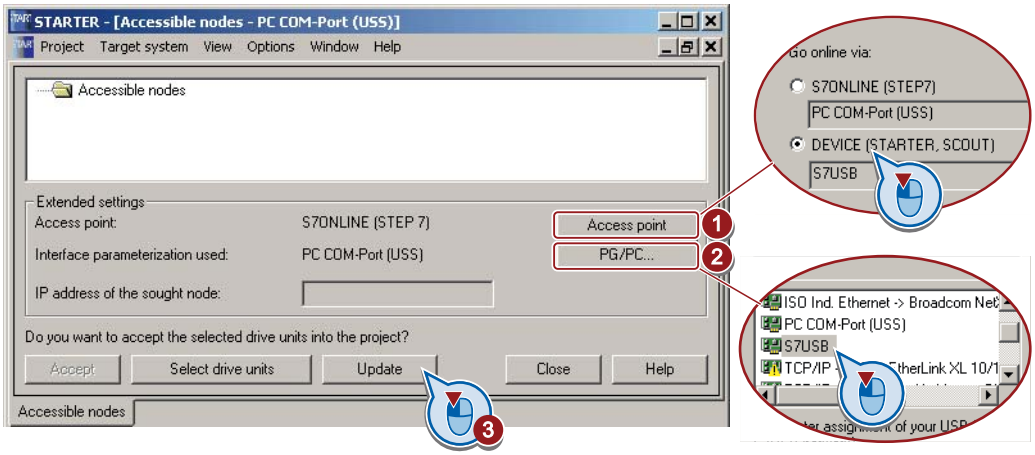


- Close this screen form, without selecting the converter(s) that has/have been found.
- Create your STARTER project.

Case 2: USB interface must be set

In this case, the message box "no other nodes found" is displayed.

- Set the following in the "Accessible participants" screen form:
  - ① Under "Access point activate "DEVICE (STARTER, Scout)"
  - ② Under " PG/PC" select "S7USB"
  - ③ Then click on "Update"



- Close this screen form, without selecting the converter(s) that has/have been found.
- Create your STARTER project.

5.5.1.2 Accessing the converter via PROFINET

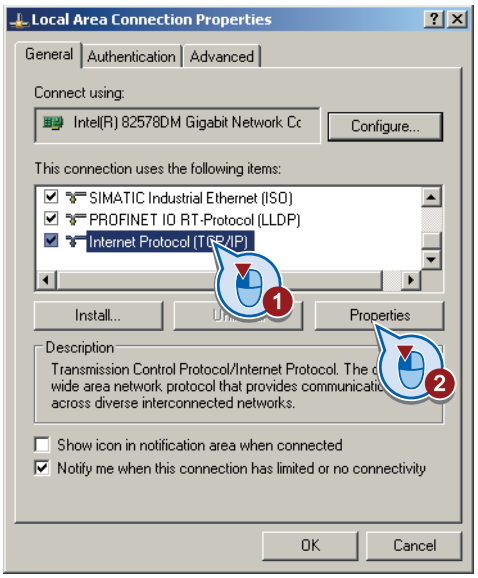
Addressing the supervisor

If you wish to access the converter using STARTER via PROFINET, then you must integrate the computer on which STARTER is installed, as supervisor in your network.

Once you have established the bus connection (see Section Communication via PROFINET (Page 91)), using the control port, you must assign an IP address and the address of the subnet mask of the network to your computer.

Go to "Start/Settings/Control Panel". There, select "Network Connections". Right-click to open the properties window of the LAN connection.

In this window, select "Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)" (①) and click on "Properties" (②). There, set 192.168.0.100 as the IP address of the supervisor and 255.255.255.0 as subnet mask.



Note

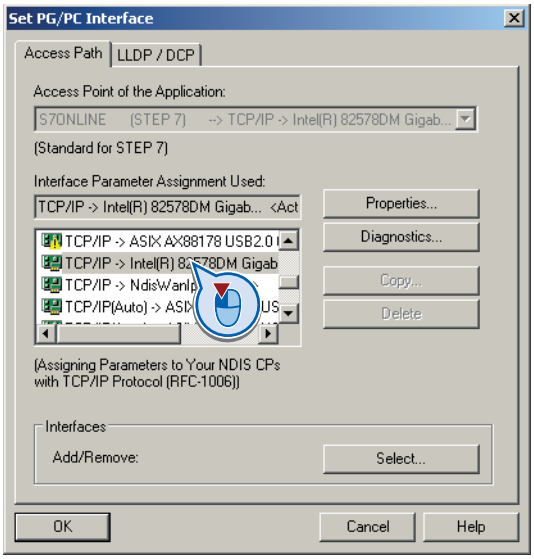
Addresses in company networks

If you are working in a company network, other settings may be required. In this case, ask your administrator about the IP address and the subnet mask.

Addressing the controller and devices

Open the SIMATIC Manager and assign the TCP/P interface to "Intel(R) PRO/100 VE Network Connection" via "Tools/PG/PC interface".

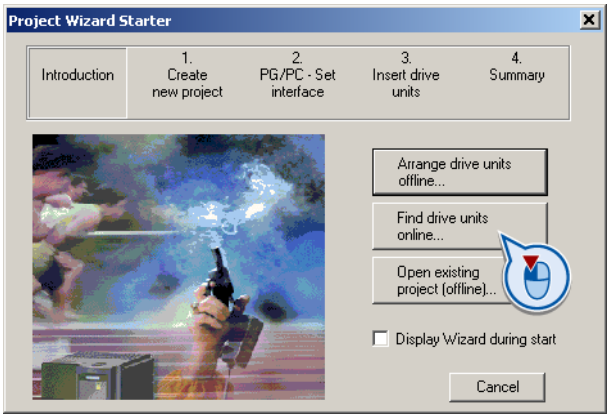
In the next step, create a new project, e.g. Profinet_G120_001.



5.5.2 Generating a STARTER project

Creating a STARTER project using project wizards

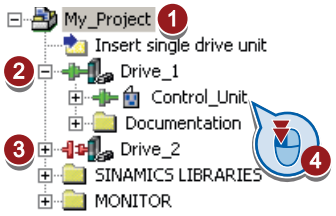
- Using "Project / New with wizard" create a new project.
- To start the wizard, click on "Search online for drive units ...".
- The wizard guides you through all of the settings that you need for your project.



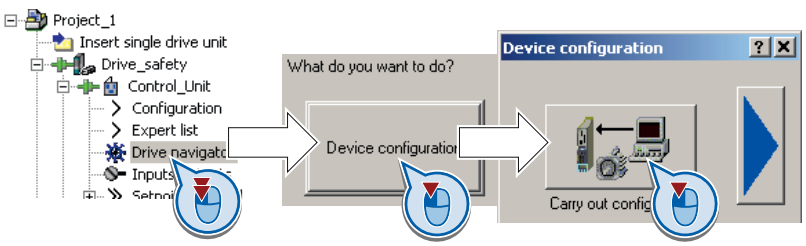
5.5.3 Go online and start wizard for basic commissioning

Procedure

- ① Select your project and go online: .
- In the next screen form, select the device or devices with which you wish to go online.
- In the next screen form, download the hardware configuration that you found online into your project (PG or PC).



- STARTER shows you which converter it is accessing online and which offline:
  ② The converter is online
  ③ The converter is offline
- ④ When you are online, open the screen form of the control unit.
- Start the wizard for basic commissioning.



Control structure

In the first step of the Wizard select the control mode.
See also section: U/f control or speed control? (Page 60).

Defaults of the setpoin

Select the default setting the interfaces of the converter.
See also section: Selecting the interface assignments (Page 48).

Drive setting

Select the application for the converter:
Low overload for applications that only require a low dynamic performance, e.g.: Pumps or fans.
High overload for applications requiring a high dynamic performance, e.g. conveyor systems.

Motor

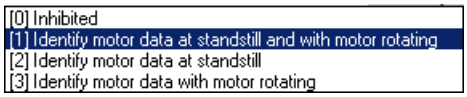
Select your motor.

Motor data

Enter the motor data according to the rating plate of your motor.
If you have selected a motor based on its order number, the data is already entered.

Drive functions

If you have set the "Speed control" control mode, then we recommend setting "[1] Identify motor data at standstill and with motor rotating".



With this setting, the converter optimizes its speed controller.

In one of the following cases is applicable, select the setting "[2] Identify motor data at standstill":

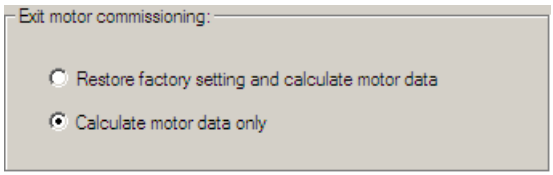
- You have selected "Speed control" as control mode, however the motor cannot freely rotate, e.g. for mechanically limited traversing sections.
- You have set "U/f control" as control mode.

Important parameters

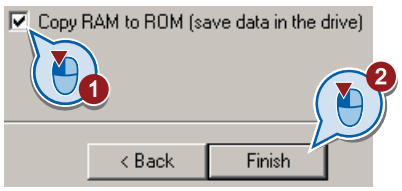
Set the most important parameters to suit your application.

Calculation of the motc

We recommend the setting "Calculate motor data only".



① Set the checkmark for "RAM to ROM (save data in the drive)" to save your data in the converter so that it is not lost when the power fails.



② Close basic commissioning.

5.5.4 Switch on the motor via the control panel

After basic commissioning, the converter shows the warning A07791. You must now switch on the motor to start motor data identification.

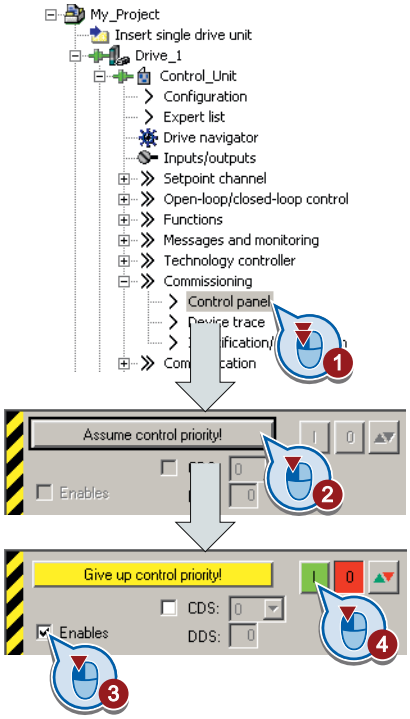
For the motor data identification, the motor must be cold. A motor in the warm operating state provides unusable measurement results.

Procedure

> **⚠ CAUTION**
>
> **Motor data identification for dangerous loads**
>
> Secure dangerous plant and system parts before starting the motor data identification, e.g. by fencing off the dangerous location or lowering a suspended load to the floor.

- ① Open by double-clicking on the control panel in STARTER.
- ② Fetch the master control for the converter.
- ③ Set the "Enable signals"
- ④ Switch on the motor.

  The converter now starts to identify the motor data. This measurement can take several minutes. After the measurement, the converter switches off the motor.
- Relinquish the master control after the motor data identification.



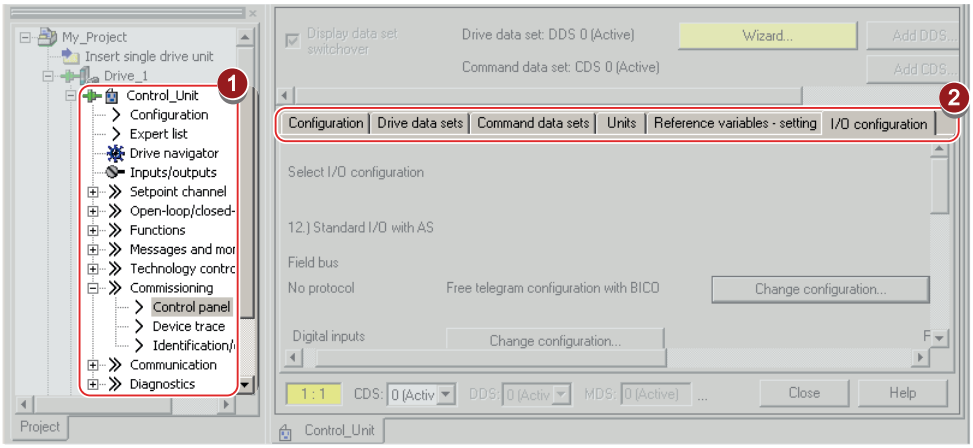
If, in addition to the motor data identification, you have also selected a rotating measurement with self-optimization of the speed control, then you must switch on the converter again as described above and wait for the optimization run to be completed.

5.5.5 Making additional settings

After the basic commissioning, you can adapt the inverter to your application as described in the Typical commissioning scenarios (Page 53).

STARTER offers two options:

1. Change the settings using the appropriate screen forms - **our recommendation**.
   ① Navigation bar: For each inverter function, select the corresponding screen form.
   ② tabs: Switch between screen forms.
   If you change the settings using screen forms you do not need to know the parameter numbers.



2. You change the settings using the parameters in the expert list.
   If you wish to change the settings using the expert list, you need to know the corresponding parameter number and its significance.

Saving settings so that they are not lost when the power fails

All of the changes that you make are temporarily saved in the inverter and are lost the next time the power supply is switched off. For your changes to be permanently saved in the inverter, you must save the changes using the button (RAM to ROM). Before you press the button, you need to mark the appropriate drive in the project navigator.

Go offline

You can now exit the online connection after the data backup (RAM to ROM) with "Disconnect from target system".

5.5.6 Trace function for optimizing the drive

Description

The trace function is used for converter diagnostics and helps to optimize the behavior of the drive. Start the function in the navigation bar using "... Control_Unit/Commissioning/Device trace".

In two settings that are independent of one another, using ... you can interconnect eight signals each. Each signal that you interconnect is active as standard

You can start a measurement as often as required; the results are temporarily stored (until you exit STARTER) under the "Measurements" tab, together with the date and time. When terminating STARTER or under the "Measurements" tab, you can save the measurement results in the *.trc format.

If you require more than two settings for your measurements, you can either save the individual traces in the project or export them in the *.clg format – and if necessary, load or import.

Recording

Recording is performed in a CU-dependent basic clock cycle. The maximum recording duration depends on the number of recorded signals and the trace clock cycle.

You can extend the recording duration by increasing the trace clock cycle by multiplying with an integer factor and then accepting the displayed maximum duration by ←. Alternatively, you can also specify the measurement period and then you can calculate the trace clock cycle of STARTER using ↑.

Recording individual bits for bit parameters

You can record individual bits of a parameter (e.g. r0722) by allocating the relevant bit using "bit track" ( ).

Mathematical function

Using the mathematical function ( ) you can define a curve, for example the difference between the speed setpoint and the speed actual value.

Note

If you use the "record individual bits" or "mathematical functions" option, then this is displayed under signal No. 9.

Trigger

You can create your own start condition (trigger) for the trace. With the factory setting (default setting) the trace starts as soon as you press the ▶ button (Start Trace). Using the button ▾, you can define another trigger to start the measurement.

Using pretrigger, set the time for the recording before the trigger is set. As a consequence, the trigger condition traces itself.

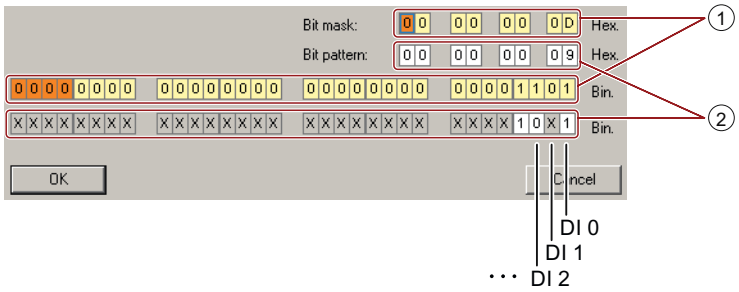
Example of a bit pattern as trigger:

You must define the pattern and value of a bit parameter for the trigger. To do so, proceed as follows:

Using ▾, select "Trigger to variable - bit pattern"

Using ..., select the bit parameter

Using bin..., open the screen form in which you set the bits and their values for the start condition



① Select the bits for the trace trigger, upper line hex format, lower row binary format

② Define the bits for the trace trigger, upper line hex format, lower row binary format

Figure 5-8 Bit pattern

In the example, the trace starts if DI0 and DI3 are high and DI2 is low. The state of the other digital inputs is not relevant for the start of the trace.

Further, you can either set an alarm or fault as start condition.

Display options

In this area, you can set how the measurement results are displayed.

- Repeat measurement:
  This means that you place the measurements, which you wish to perform at different times, one above one another
- Arrange curves in tracks
  This means that you define as to whether all measured values are to be displayed with a common zero line – or whether each measured value is displayed with its own zero line.
- Measuring cursor on:
  This allows you to analyze the measuring intervals in detail

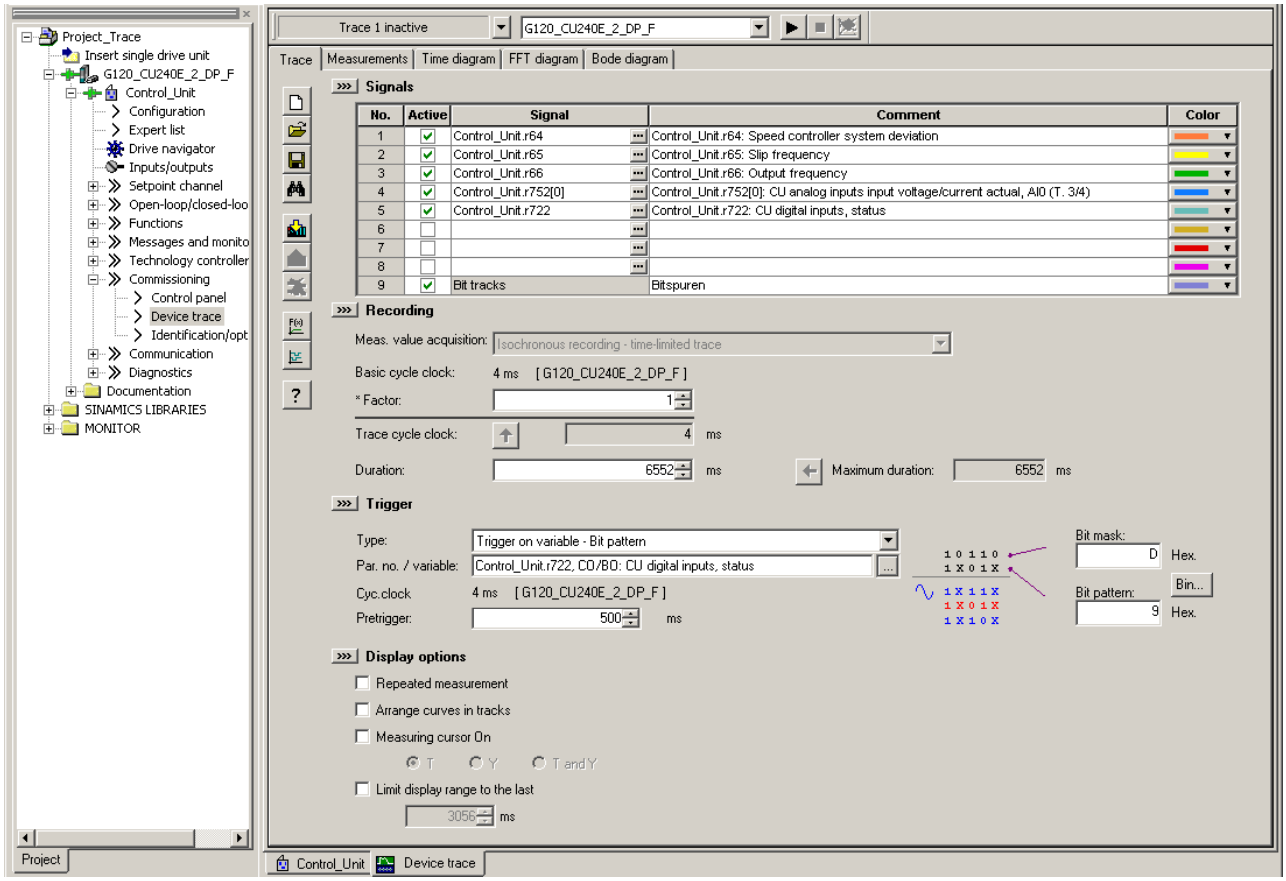


Figure 5-9 Trace dialog box

Adapting the terminal strip

6

6.1 Preconditions

Before you adapt the inputs and outputs of the inverter, you should have completed the basic commissioning, see Chapter Basic commissioning (Page 55) .

In the basic commissioning, select an assignment of the inverter interfaces from several predefined configurations, see Section Preparing for the basic commissioning (Page 55).

If none of the predefined configurations completely matches your application, then you must adapt the assignment of the individual inputs and outputs. You do this by changing the internal interconnection of an input or output using BICO technology (Page 360).

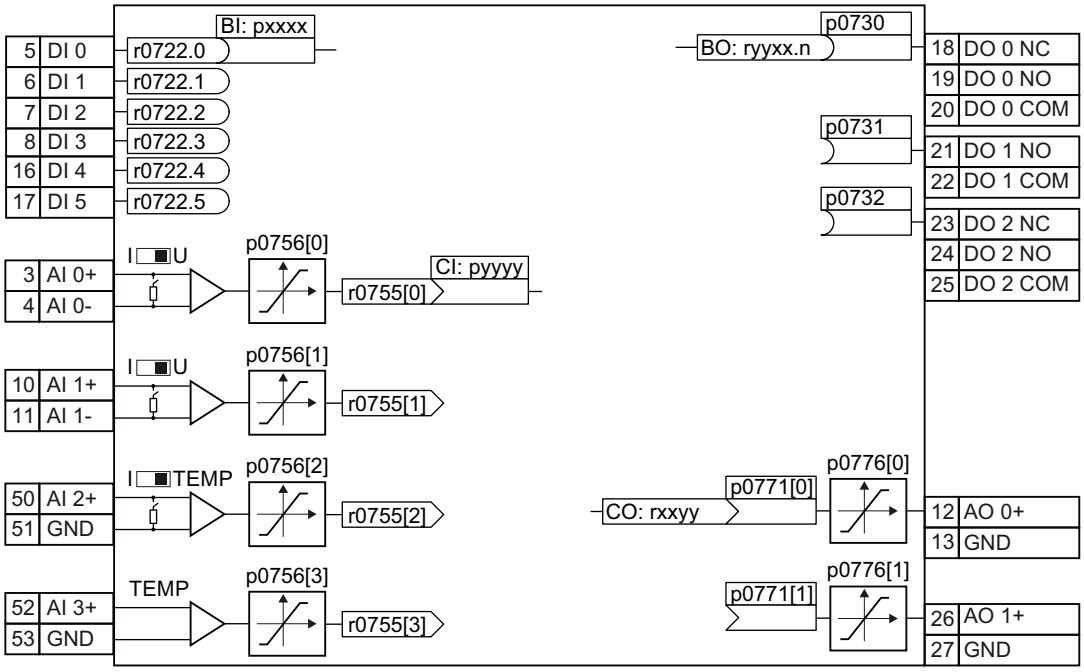


Figure 6-1 Internal interconnection of the inputs and outputs

6.2 Digital inputs

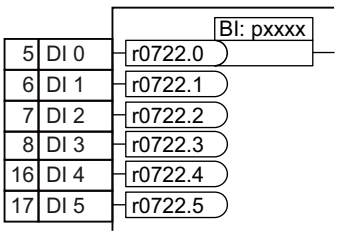
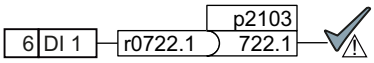
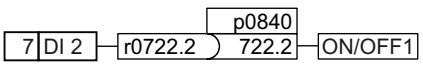
Digital input terminals	Changing the function of the digital input
	Interconnect the status parameter of the digital input with a binector input of your choice. Binector inputs are designated with "BI" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Table 6- 1 Binector inputs (BI) of the converter (selection)

BI	Significance	BI	Significance
p0810	Command data set selection CDS bit 0	p1036	Motorized potentiometer, setpoint, lower
p0840	ON/OFF1	p1055	Jog bit 0
p0844	OFF2	p1056	Jog bit 1
p0848	OFF3	p1113	Setpoint inversion
p0852	Enable operation	p1201	Flying restart enable signal source
p0855	Unconditionally release holding brake	p2103	1. Acknowledge faults
p0856	Enable speed controller	p2106	External fault 1
p0858	Unconditionally close holding brake	p2112	External alarm 1
p1020	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0	p2200	Technology controller enable
p1021	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1	p3330	Two-wire/three-wire control, control command 1
p1022	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 2	p3331	Two-wire/three-wire control, control command 2
p1023	Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 3	p3332	Two-wire/three-wire control, control command 3
p1035	Motorized potentiometer, setpoint, raise		

A complete list of the binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Table 6- 2 Examples:

	With Operator Panel	In STARTER
Acknowledge fault with digital input 1: 	Set p2103 = 722.1	Go online with STARTER and select "inputs/outputs". Change the input function via the corresponding screen form.
Switch-on motor with digital input 2: 	Set p0840 = 722.2	

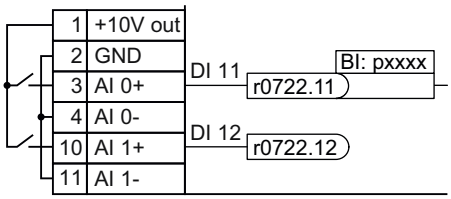
Advanced settings

You can debounce the digital input signal using parameter p0724.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2220 f of the List Manual.

Analog inputs as digital inputs

When required, you can use the analog inputs as additional digital inputs.

Terminals of the additional digital inputs	Changing the function of the digital input
	If you use an analog input as digital input then interconnect the status parameter of the digital input with a binector input of your choice.

6.3 Digital outputs

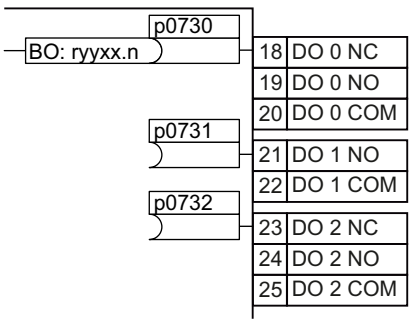
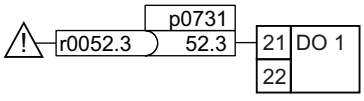
Digital output terminals	Changing the function of the digital output
	Interconnect the digital output with a binector output of your choice. Binector outputs are designated with "BO" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Table 6- 3 Binector outputs of the converter (selection)

0	Deactivating digital output	r0052.9	Process data control
r0052.0	Drive ready	r0052.10	f_actual >= p1082 (f_max)
r0052.1	Drive ready for operation	r0052.11	Alarm: Motor current/torque limit
r0052.2	Drive running	r0052.12	Brake active
r0052.3	Drive fault active	r0052.13	Motor overload
r0052.4	OFF2 active	r0052.14	Motor CW rotation
r0052.5	OFF3 active	r0052.15	Inverter overload
r0052.6	Closing lockout active	r0053.0	DC braking active
r0052.7	Drive alarm active	r0053.2	f_actual > p1080 (f_min)
r0052.8	Setpoint/actual value discrepancy	r0053.6	f_actual ≥ setpoint (f_setpoint)

A complete list of the binector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Table 6- 4 Example:

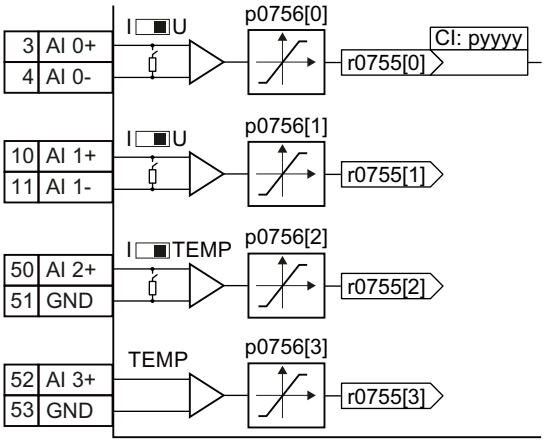
	With Operator Panel	In STARTER
Signal fault via digital output 1. 	Set p0731 = 52.3	Go online with STARTER and select "inputs/outputs". Change the output function via the corresponding screen form.

Advanced settings

You can invert the signal of the digital output using parameter p0748.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 2230 f of the List Manual.

6.4 Analog inputs

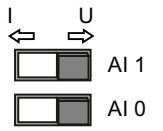
Analog input terminals	Changing the function of the analog input
	1. Define the analog input type using parameter p0756 and the switch on the inverter (e.g. voltage input -10 V … 10 V or current input 4 mA … 20 mA). 2. Interconnect parameter p0755 with a connector input of your choice (e.g. as speed setpoint). Connector inputs are designated with "CI" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Define the analog input type

The inverter offers a series of default settings, which you can select using parameter p0756:

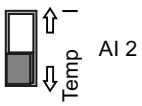
AI 0	Unipolar voltage input	0 V … +10 V	p0756[0] =	0
	Unipolar voltage input monitored:	+2 V … +10 V		1
	Unipolar current input	0 mA … +20 mA		2
	Unipolar current input monitored	+4 mA … +20 mA		3
	Bipolar voltage input (factory setting)	-10 V … +10 V		4
AI 1	Unipolar voltage input	0 V … +10 V	p0756[1] =	0
	Unipolar voltage input monitored:	+2 V … +10 V		1
	Unipolar current input	0 mA … +20 mA		2
	Unipolar current input monitored	+4 mA … +20 mA		3
	Bipolar voltage input (factory setting)	-10 V … +10 V		4
AI 2	Unipolar current input (factory setting)	0 mA … +20 mA	p0756[2] =	2
	Unipolar current input monitored	+4 mA … +20 mA		3
	Temperature sensor Ni1000			6
	Temperature sensor PT1000			7
	No sensor connected			8
AI 3	Temperature sensor Ni1000		p0756[3] =	6
	Temperature sensor PT1000			7
	No sensor connected (factory setting)			8

In addition, you must also set the switch belonging to the analog input. You will find



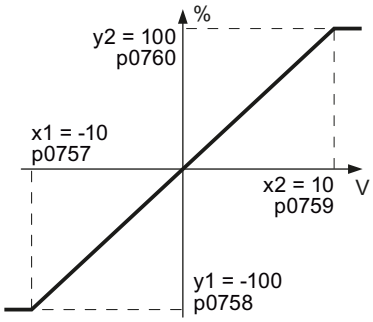
- the DIP switch for AI0 and AI1 (current / voltage) on the Control Unit behind the lower front door.

- the DIP switch for AI2 (temperature / current) on the Control Unit behind the upper front door.



If you change the analog input type using p0756, then the inverter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog input. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0757, p0758) and (p0759, p0760). Parameters p0757 … p0760 are assigned to an analog input via their index, e.g. parameters p0757[0] … p0760[0] belong to analog input 0.

p0756 = 4
Voltage input, - 10 V ... 10 V



p0756 = 3
Current input, 4 mA ... 20 mA

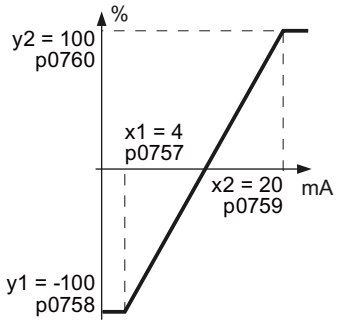


Figure 6-2 Examples for scaling characteristics

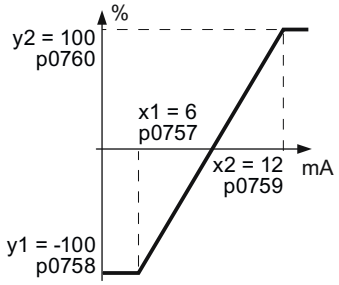
Table 6- 5 Parameters for the scaling characteristic and wire break monitoring

Parameter	Description
p0757	**x-coordinate of 1st characteristic point [V or mA]**
p0758	**y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of p200x]** p200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. p2000 is the reference speed.
p0759	**x-coordinate of 2nd characteristic point [V or mA]**
p0760	**y-coordinate of 2nd characteristic point [% of p200x]**
p0761	**Wire breakage monitoring response threshold**

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

Example

The inverter should convert a 6 mA … 12 mA signal into the value range -100 % … 100 % via analog input 0. The wire break monitoring of the inverter should respond when 6 mA is fallen below.

<table>
<tr><th>Parameter</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>p0756[0] = 3</td><td>Analog input type
Define analog input 0 as current input with wire break monitoring.</td><td>Set DIP switch for AI 0 to current input ("I"):</td><td> 
</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">After changing p0756 to the value 3, the inverter sets the scaling characteristic parameters to the following values:
p0757[0] = 4,0; p0758[0] = 0,0; p0759[0] = 20; p0760[0] = 100
Adapt the characteristic:</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0761[0] = 6.0</td><td colspan="2">Analog inputs wire break monitoring, response threshold</td><td rowspan="5">Current input, 6 mA ... 12 mA
 
</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0757[0] = 6.0</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Analog inputs, characteristic (x_1, y_1)
6 mA corresponds to -100 %</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0758[0] = -100.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0759[0] = 12.0</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Analog inputs, characteristic (x_2, y_2)
12 mA corresponds to 100 %</td></tr>
<tr><td>p0760[0] = 100.0</td></tr>
</table>

Defining the analog input function

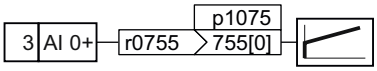
You define the analog input function by interconnecting a connector input of your choice with parameter p0755 . Parameter p0755 is assigned to the particular analog input via its index, e.g. parameter p0755[0] is assigned to analog input 0.

Table 6- 6 Connector inputs (CI) of the converter (selection)

CI	Significance	CI	Significance
p1070	Main setpoint	p1522	Torque limit, upper
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	p2253	Technology controller setpoint 1
p1503	Torque setpoint	p2264	Technology controller actual value
p1511	Supplementary torque 1		

A complete list of the connector inputs is provided in the List Manual.

Table 6- 7 Example:

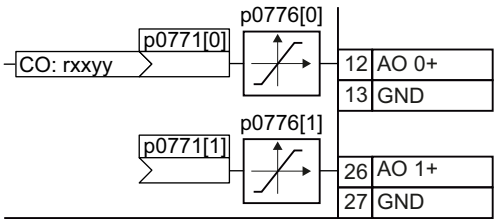
	With Operator Panel	In STARTER
Analog input 0 is the source for the additional setpoint. 	Set p1075 = 755[0]	Go online with STARTER and select "inputs/outputs". Change the input function via the corresponding screen form.

Advanced settings

When required, you can smooth the signal, which you read-in via an analog input, using parameter p0753.

For more information, see the parameter list and in the function block diagrams 9566 ff of the List Manual.

6.5 Analog outputs

Analog output terminals	Changing the function of the analog output
	1. Define the analog output type using parameter p0776 (e.g. voltage output -10 V … 10 V or current output 4 mA … 20 mA). 2. Interconnect parameter p0771 with a connector output of your choice (e.g. the actual speed). Connector outputs are designated with "CO" in the parameter list of the List Manual.

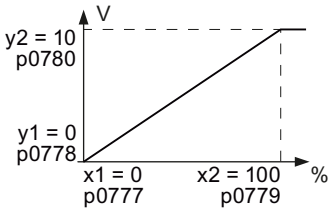
Defining the analog output type

The inverter offers a series of default settings, which you can select using parameter p0776:

AO 0	Current output (factory setting)	0 mA … +20 mA	p0776[0] =	0
	Voltage output	0 V … +10 V		1
	Current output	+4 mA … +20 mA		2
AO 1	Current output (factory setting)	0 mA … +20 mA	p0776[1] =	0
	Voltage output	0 V … +10 V		1
	Current output	+4 mA … +20 mA		2

If you change the analog output type, then the converter automatically selects the appropriate scaling of the analog output. The linear scaling characteristic is defined using two points (p0777, p0778) and (p0779, p0780).

p0776 = 1
Voltage output, 0 V ... 10 V



p0776 = 2
Current output, 4 mA ... 20 mA

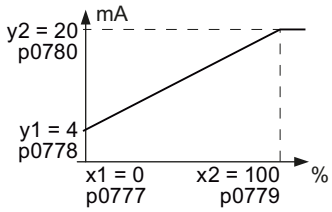


Figure 6-3 Examples for scaling characteristics

Parameters p0777 … p0780 are assigned to an analog output via their index, e.g. parameters p0777[0] … p0770[0] belong to analog output 0.

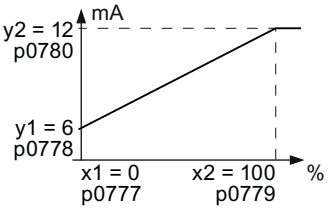
Table 6- 8 Parameters for the scaling characteristic

Parameter	Description
p0777	**X coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [% of P200x]** P200x are the parameters of the reference variables, e.g. P2000 is the reference speed.
p0778	**Y coordinate of the 1st characteristic point [V or mA]**
p0779	**X coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [% of P200x]**
p0780	**Y coordinate of the 2nd characteristic point [V or mA]**

You must define your own characteristic if none of the default types match your particular application.

Example:

The converter should convert a signal in the value range -100 % … 100 % into a 6 mA … 12 mA output signal via analog output 0.

Parameter	Description	
p0776[0] = 2	**Analog output, type** Define analog output 0 as current output.	
After changing p0776 to the value 2, the converter sets the scaling characteristic parameters to the following values: p0777[0] = 0.0; p0778[0] = 4.0; p0779[0] = 100.0; p0780[0] = 20.0 Adapt the characteristic:		
p0777[0] = 0.0	**Analog output, characteristic (x_1, y_1)**	Current output, 6 mA ... 12 mA 
p0778[0] = 6.0	0.0 % corresponds to 6 mA	
p0779[0] = 100.0	**Analog output, characteristic (x_2, y_2)**	
p0780[0] = 12.0	100 % corresponds to 12 mA	

Defining the analog output function

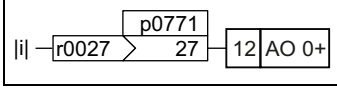
You define the analog output function by interconnecting parameter p0771 with a connector output of your choice. Parameter p0771 is assigned to the particular analog input via its index, e.g. parameter p0771[0] is assigned to analog output 0.

Table 6- 9 Connector outputs (CO) of the converter (selection)

CO	Significance	CO	Significance
r0021	Actual frequency	r0026	Actual DC link voltage
r0024	Output actual frequency	r0027	Output current
r0025	Output actual frequency		

A complete list of the connector outputs is provided in the List Manual.

Table 6- 10 Example:

	With Operator Panel	In STARTER
Output the converter output current via analog output 0. 	Set p0771 = 27	Go online with STARTER and select "inputs/outputs". Change the output function via the corresponding screen form.

For more information, please see the parameter list and the function block diagrams 9572 f of the List Manual.

Advanced settings

You can manipulate the signal that you output via an analog output, as follows:

- Absolute-value generation of the signal (p0775)
- Signal inversion (p0782)

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Configuring the fieldbus 7

Fieldbus interfaces of the Control Units

The Control Units are available in different versions for communication with higher-level controls with the subsequently listed fieldbus interfaces:

Fieldbus	Profile	Control Unit	Interface
PROFIBUS DP (Page 95)	PROFIdrive	CU230P-2 DP	SUB D socket
PROFINET (Page 91)	PROFIdrive	CU230P-2 PN	2 RJ45 connectors
USS (Page 118)	-	CU230P-2 HVAC	RS485 connector
Modbus RTU (Page 129)	-	CU230P-2 HVAC	RS485 connector
BACnet MS/TP (Page 139)	-	CU230P-2 HVAC	RS485 connector
P1 (Page 147)	-	CU230P-2 HVAC	RS485 connector
CANopen (Page 151)	-	CU230P-2 CAN	SUB-D connector

7.1 Communication via PROFINET

The Control Unit provides the following functions

- IRT without isochronous mode
- MRP — Media redundancy, not bumpless with 200 ms
  Precondition: Ring topology
- MRPD — Media redundancy, bumpless
  Precondition: IRT and the ring topology created in the control
- Diagnostic alarms — According to error classes specified in the PROFIdrive profile. See Activating diagnostics via the control (Page 94).
- Device replacement without removable data storage medium — Requirement: Topology created in the control
- Shared Device — Only for Control Units with fail-safe functions (see Safety Function Manual)

The Control Units have two RJ45 sockets, which you can use to implement a line topology. You can implement all topologies by using switches.

Additional information on PROFINET in the Internet

General information about PROFINET can be found at Industrial Communication (http://www.automation.siemens.com/mcms/automation/en/industrial-communications/profinet/Pages/Default.aspx).

The configuration of the functions is described in the PROFINET system description (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127) manual.

7.1.1 What do you need for communication via PROFINET?

Check the communication settings using the following table. If you answer "Yes" to the questions, you have correctly set the communication settings and can control the converter via the fieldbus.

Table 7- 1 Checklist for communication via PROFINET

Questions	Answer/description	Example
Is the converter correctly connected to the PROFINET?	See: Connect the converter to PROFINET (Page 93)	
Do the IP address and device name in the converter and control system match?	See Configuring communication to the control (Page 93)	See Configuring the system in HW Config (Page 368)
Is the same telegram set in the converter as in the higher-level control system?	Set the telegram in the converter, see: Select telegram (Page 94)	See: Configuring the system in HW Config (Page 368)
Are the signals that the converter and the controller exchange via PROFINET correctly interconnected?	PROFIdrive-compliant interconnection in the converter, see: PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET (Page 99)	See: STEP 7 program examples (Page 373)

7.1.2 Connect the converter to PROFINET

Connecting up

Connect the converter (IO device) and your PG/PC (IO supervisor) via PROFINET cables with the control.

See also Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).

Recommended PROFINET connectors and pin assignment

We recommend the following connector with order number: 6GK1901-1BB10-2Ax0 for connecting the PROFINET cable.

Instructions for assembling the SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RF45 Plug 180 can be found on the Internet under product information " "Assembly instructions for SIMATIC NET Industrial Ethernet FastConnect RJ45 Plug (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/37217116/133300)".

Laying and shielding the PROFINET cable

Information can be found on the Internet: PROFIBUS user organization installation guidelines (http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/).

7.1.3 Configuring communication to the control

In order to establish communication between the converter and control system via PROFINET, you must load the device file of the converter "GSDML" into your control. You can then configure the communication.

Procedure

- Import the GSDML of the converter into thePROFINET-Controller, i.e. into your control system.
  You can obtain the GSDML of your converter in two ways:
  - You can find the GSDML of the SINAMICS converter on the Internet (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133100).
  - The GSDML is saved in the converter. If you insert the memory card in the converter and set p0804 = 12 , the GSDML will be written to the /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG folder on the memory card.
- Configure the communication between the control and the converter in your control.

7.1.4 Select telegram

During basic commissioning, you have defined a telegram for communication. In order to set a different telegram, you may need also adapt the assignment of the interfaces.

Procedure

Carry out the basic commissioning again

- Adapt the interface assignment
- Select the telegram.

Table 7- 2 Parameters for the interface assignment and the telegram selection

Parameter	Description	
p0015	**Macro drive unit** Configure the interface in basic commissioning, and select a telegram. See also the section: Basic commissioning with the BOP-2 (Page 63).	
p0922	**PROFIdrive Telegram selection** (factory setting for converters with PROFIBUS- or PROFINETinterface: Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2) Set the send and receive telegram, see Cyclic communication (Page 99)	
	1: 20: 350: 352 353: 354: 999:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 SIEMENS telegram 350, PZD-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6 SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 106)

7.1.5 Activating diagnostics via the control

The converter provides the functionality to transmit fault and alarm messages (diagnostic messages) to the control according to the PROFIdrive error classes.

The functionality must be selected in the control (see example ofHotspot-Text (Page 372) STEP 7) and activated by a ramp-up.

You can output the messages directly on an HMI panel via the control.

7.2 Communication via PROFIBUS

7.2.1 What do you need for communication via PROFIBUS?

Check the communication settings using the following table. If you answer "Yes" to the questions, you have correctly set the communication settings and can control the converter via the fieldbus.

Table 7- 3 Checklist for communication via PROFIBUS

Questions	Description	Examples
Is the converter correctly connected to the PROFIBUS?	See section: Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS (Page 95).	---
Have you configured the communication between the converter and the higher-level control system?	See section: Configuring communication to the control (Page 96)	See also the section: Configuring PROFIBUS communication in STEP 7 (Page 364).
Do the bus addresses in the converter and the higher-level controller match?	See section: Setting the address (Page 97).	
Is the same telegram set in the higher-level controller and in the converter?	Adapt the telegram in the converter. See section: Select telegram (Page 98).	
Are the signals that the converter and the control system exchange via PROFIBUS correctly interconnected?	Adapt the interconnection of the signals in the control system to the converter. For the PROFIdrive-compliant interconnection in the converter, refer to Section: PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET (Page 99).	See also the section: STEP 7 program examples (Page 373).

7.2.2 Connect the frequency inverter to PROFIBUS

Permissible cable lengths, routing and shielding the PROFIBUS cable

Information can be found on the Internet:

1. Product support (http://www.automation.siemens.com/net/html_76/support/printkatalog.htm)
2. PROFIBUS user organization installation guidelines (http://www.profibus.com/downloads/installation-guide/)

Recommended PROFIBUS connectors

We recommend connectors with the following order numbers for connecting the PROFIBUS cable:

- 6GK1500-0FC00
- 6GK1500-0EA02

Pin assignment at the converter

For the pin assignment at the converter refer to Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).

Note

Communication with the controller, even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You will have to supply the Control Unit with 24 VDC on terminals 31 and 32 if you require communication to take place with the controller even when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of short interruptions of the 24V voltage supply, the converter may report the fault F without communications with the controller being interrupted.

7.2.3 Configuring communication to the control

To be able to configure communication between the converter and control, you require the description file GSD of the converter.

Procedure

- Import the GSD of the converter into the PROFIBUS master, i.e. into your control system. You have two options for obtaining the GSD of your converter:
  - You can find the GSD of the SINAMICS converter on the Internet (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133100).
  - The GSD is saved in the converter. If you insert the memory card in the converter and set p0804 = 12 , the GSD will be written to the /SIEMENS/SINAMICS/DATA/CFG folder on the memory card.
- Configure the communication between the control and the converter in your control.

7.2.4 Setting the address

You can set the converter's PROFIBUS address via the address switch on the CU via p0918 or in STARTER under "Control Unit/Communications/PROFIBUS".

Valid address range: 1 … 125

Procedure

Method	Description
Address switch	If you have specified a valid address using the address switches, this address will always be the one that takes effect and parameter p0918 cannot be changed. Position and settings of the address switches are described in section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).
P0918 / STARTER	**PROFIBUS address** (factory setting: 126) Setting in p0918 or via STARTER is effective only if you set all address switches to "OFF" (0) or "ON" (1).

CAUTION
For a modified bus address to be effective, you have to switch on and off the converter and - if need be - any external 24 V supply.

7.2.5 Select telegram

During basic commissioning, you have defined a telegram for communication. In order to set a different telegram, you may need also adapt the assignment of the interfaces.

Procedure

Carry out the basic commissioning again

- Adapt the interface assignment
- Select the telegram.

Table 7- 4 Parameters for the interface assignment and the telegram selection

Parameter	Description	
p0015	**Macro drive unit** Configure the interface in basic commissioning, and select a telegram. See also the section: Basic commissioning with the BOP-2 (Page 63).	
p0922	**PROFIdrive Telegram selection** (factory setting for converters with PROFIBUS- or PROFINETinterface: Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2) Set the send and receive telegram, see Cyclic communication (Page 99)	
	1: 20: 350: 352 353: 354: 999:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 SIEMENS telegram 350, PZD-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6 SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection (Page 106)

7.3 PROFIdrive profile for PROFIBUS and PROFINET

7.3.1 Cyclic communication

Send and receive telegrams of the converter for the cyclic communication are structured as follows:

PZD01	PZD02	PZD03	PZD04	PZD05	PZD06	PZD07	PZD08	PZD09	PZD10	PZD11	PZD12

Telegram 1, speed control each with two PZDs in the receive and transmit directions (PZD 2/2)

STW1	NSOLL_A
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT

Telegram 20, speed control VIK/NAMUR; each with two PZDs in the receive and six in the transmit direction (PZD 2/6)

STW1	NSOLL_A				
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	MIST_GLATT	PIST_GLATT	MELD_NAMUR

Telegram 350, speed control each with four PZDs in the receive and transmit directions (PZD 4/4)

STW1	NSOLL_A	M_LIM	STW3
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	ZSW3

Telegram 352, speed control for PCS7; each with six PZDs in the receive and transmit directions (PZD 6/6)

STW1	NSOLL_A	Process data for PCS7			
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	MIST_GLATT	WARN_CODE	FAULT_CODE

Telegram 353, speed control each with two PZDs in the receive and transmit directions (PZD 2/2) and four words each to read and write parameters (PIV 4/4)

STW1	NSOLL_A
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT

Telegram 354, speed control for PCS7; each with six PZDs in the receive and transmit directions (PZD 6/6) and four words each to read and write parameters (PIV 4/4)

STW1	NSOLL_A	Process data for PCS7			
ZSW1	NIST_A_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	MIST_GLATT	WARN_CODE	FAULT_CODE

Telegram 999, free interconnection via BiCo; PZD n/m (n/m = 1 ... 12)

STW1	Configurable telegram length for the receive data
ZSW1	Configurable telegram length for the transmit data

Figure 7-1 Telegrams for cyclic communication

Table 7- 5 Explanation of the abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning	Abbreviation	Meaning
STW1	Control word 1	MIST_GLATT	Current torque
ZSW1	status word 1	PIST_GLATT	Current active power
STW3	control word 3	M_LIM	Torque limit value
ZSW3	status word 3	FAULT_CODE	Fault number
NSOLL_A	speed setpoint	WARN_CODE	Alarm number
NIST_A_GLATT	smoothed actual speed value	MELD_NAMUR	Fault word according to VIK-NAMUR definition
IAIST_GLATT	smoothed actual current value		

Interconnection of the process data

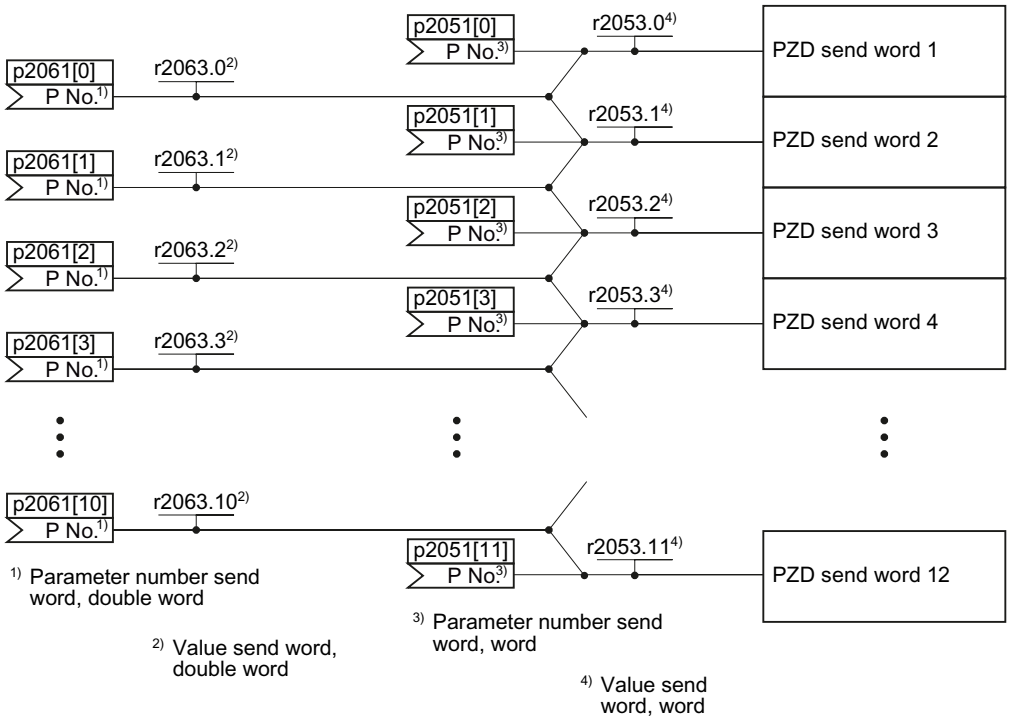


Figure 7-2 Interconnection of the send words

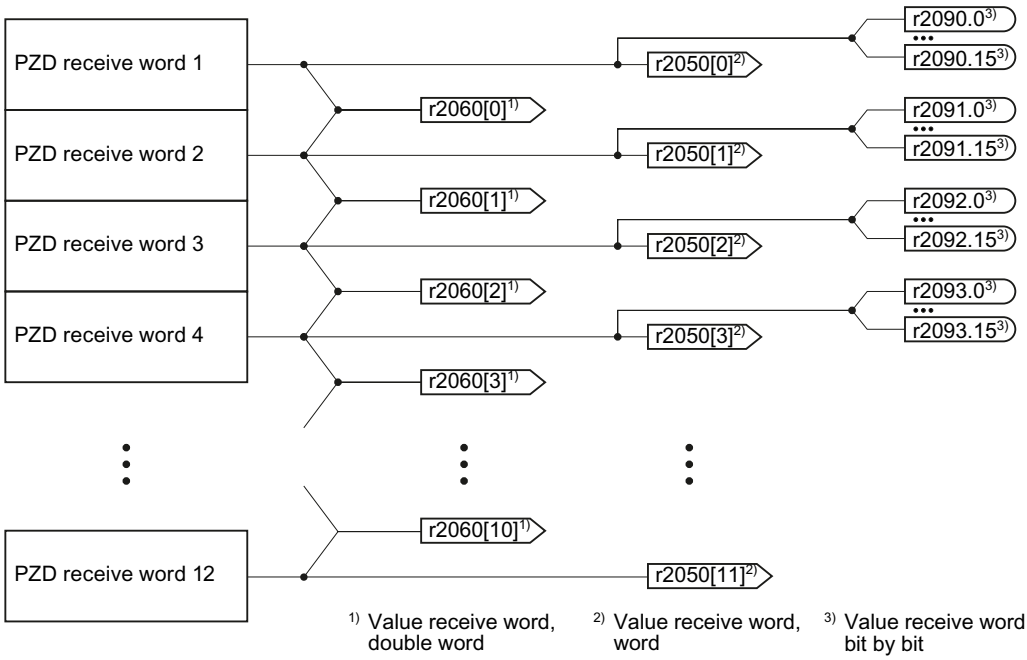


Figure 7-3 Interconnection of the receive words

Using telegrams - with the exception of telegram 999 (free interconnection via BICO) - the word by word transfer of send and receive data (r2050/p2051).

If you require for your application an individual telegram (e.g. for transferring double words), you can adjust one of the predefined telegrams via parameters p0922 and p2079. For details, please refer to the List Manual in the function diagrams 2420 and 2472.

7.3.1.1 Control and status word 1

The control and status words fulfill the specifications of PROFIdrive profile version 4.1 for the "closed-loop speed controlled" mode.

Control word 1 (STW1)

Control word 1 (bits 0 … 10 in accordance with PROFIdrive profile and VIK/NAMUR, bits 11 … 15 specific to the converter).

Table 7- 6 Control word 1 and interconnection in the converter

Bit	Meaning		Explanation	Signal interconnection in the converter
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		
0	0 = OFF1		The motor brakes with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator. The converter switches off the motor at standstill.	p0840[0] = r2090.0
	0 → 1 = ON		The converter goes into the "ready" state. If, in addition bit 3 = 1, then the converter switches on the motor.	
1	0 = OFF2		Switch off the motor immediately, the motor then coasts down to a standstill.	p0844[0] = r2090.1
	1 = No OFF2		The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
2	0 = Quick stop (OFF3)		Quick stop: The motor brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time p1135 down to standstill.	p0848[0] = r2090.2
	1 = No quick stop (OFF3)		The motor can be switched on (ON command).	
3	0 = Inhibit operation		Immediately switch-off motor (cancel pulses).	p0852[0] = r2090.3
	1 = Enable operation		Switch-on motor (pulses can be enabled).	
4	0 = Disable RFG		The converter immediately sets its ramp-function generator output to 0.	p1140[0] = r2090.4
	1 = Do not disable RFG		The ramp-function generator can be enabled.	
5	0 = Stop RFG		The output of the ramp-function generator stops at the actual value.	p1141[0] = r2090.5
	1 = Enable RFG		The output of the ramp-function generator follows the setpoint.	
6	0 = Inhibit setpoint		The converter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time p1121 of the ramp-function generator.	p1142[0] = r2090.6
	1 = Enable setpoint		Motor accelerates with the ramp-up time p1120 to the setpoint.	
7	0 → 1 = Acknowledge faults		Acknowledge the fault. If the ON command is still active, the converter switches to"closing lockout" state.	p2103[0] = r2090.7
8, 9	Reserved			
10	0 = No control via PLC		Converter ignores the process data from the fieldbus.	p0854[0] = r2090.10
	1 = Control from PLC		Control via fieldbus, converter accepts the process data from the fieldbus.	
11	---[1)]	0 = Direction reversal	Invert setpoint in the converter.	p1113[0] = r2090.11
12	Not used			
13	---[1)]	1 = MOP up	Increase the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1035[0] = r2090.13
14	---[1)]	1 = MOP down	Reduce the setpoint saved in the motorized potentiometer.	p1036[0] = r2090.14
15	CDS bit 0	Reserved	Changes over between settings for different operation interfaces (command data sets).	p0810 = r2090.15

1) If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

Status word 1 (ZSW1)

Status word 1 (bits 0 … 10 in accordance with PROFIdrive profile and VIK/NAMUR, bits 11 … 15 specific to the converter).

Table 7- 7 Status word 1 and interconnection with parameters in the converter

Bit	Meaning		Comments	Signal interconnection in the converter
	Telegram 20	All other telegrams		
0	1 = Ready to start		Power supply switched on; electronics initialized; pulses locked.	p2080[0] = r0899.0
1	1 = Ready		Motor is switched on (ON command = 1), no fault is active. With the command "Enable operation" (STW1.3), the converter switches on the motor.	p2080[1] = r0899.1
2	1 = Operation enabled		Motor follows setpoint. See control word 1, bit 3.	p2080[2] = r0899.2
3	1 = Fault active		The converter has a fault. Acknowledge fault using STW1.7.	p2080[3] = r2139.3
4	1 = OFF2 inactive		Coast down to standstill is not active.	p2080[4] = r0899.4
5	1 = OFF3 inactive		Quick stop is not active.	p2080[5] = r0899.5
6	1 = Closing lockout active		It is only possible to switch on the motor after an OFF1 command and a new ON command.	p2080[6] = r0899.6
7	1 = Alarm active		Motor remains switched on; no acknowledgment is necessary.	p2080[7] = r2139.7
8	1 = Speed deviation within the tolerance range		Setpoint/actual value deviation within tolerance range.	p2080[8] = r2197.7
9	1 = Master control requested		The automation system is requested to accept the converter control.	p2080[9] = r0899.9
10	1 = Comparison speed reached or exceeded		Speed is greater than or equal to the corresponding maximum speed.	p2080[10] = r2199.1
11	0 = I, M or P limit reached		Comparison value for current, torque or power has been reached or exceeded.	p2080[11] = r1407.7
12	---[1)]	1 = Holding brake open	Signal to open and close a motor holding brake.	p2080[12] = r0899.12
13	0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature		--	p2080[13] = r2135.14
14	1 = Motor rotates clockwise		Internal converter actual value > 0	p2080[14] = r2197.3
	0 = Motor rotates counterclockwise		Internal converter actual value < 0	
15	1 = CDS display	0 = Alarm, converter thermal overload		p2080[15] = r0836.0 / r2135.15

[1)] If you change over from another telegram to telegram 20, then the assignment of the previous telegram is kept.

7.3.1.2 Control and status word 3

The control and status words fulfill the specifications of PROFIdrive profile version 4.1 for the "closed-loop speed controlled" mode.

Control word 3 (STW3)

Control word 3 has the following default assignment. You can change the assignment with BICO technology.

Table 7- 8 Control word 3 and interconnection with parameters in the converter

Bit	Value	Significance Telegram 350	Explanation	Signal interconnection in the converter [1]
0	1	Fixed setpoint, bit 0	Selects up to 16 different fixed setpoints.	p1020[0] = r2093.0
1	1	Fixed setpoint, bit 1		p1021[0] = r2093.1
2	1	Fixed setpoint, bit 2		p1022[0] = r2093.2
3	1	Fixed setpoint, bit 3		p1023[0] = r2093.3
4	1	DDS selection, bit 0	Changes over between settings for different motors (drive data sets).	p0820 = r2093.4
5	1	DDS selection, bit 1		p0821 = r2093.5
6	–	Not used		
7	–	Not used		
8	1	Technology controller enable	--	p2200[0] = r2093.8
9	1	DC braking enable	--	p1230[0] = r2093.9
10	–	Not used		
11	1	1 = Enable droop	Enable or inhibit speed controller droop.	p1492[0] = r2093.11
12	1	Torque control active	Changes over the control mode for vector control.	p1501[0] = r2093.12
	0	Speed control active		
13	1	No external fault	--	p2106[0] = r2093.13
	0	External fault is active (F07860)		
14	–	Not used		
15	1	CDS bit 1	Changes over between settings for different operation interfaces (command data sets).	p0811[0] = r2093.15

[1] If you switch from telegram 350 to a different one, then the converter sets all interconnections p1020, … to "0". Exception: p2106 = 1.

Status word 3 (ZSW3)

Status word 3 has the following standard assignment. You can change the assignment with BICO technology.

Table 7- 9 Status word 3 and interconnection with parameters in the converter

Bit	Value	Significance	Description	Signal interconnection in the converter
0	1	DC braking active	--	p2051[3] = r0053
1	1	|n_act| > p1226	Absolute current speed > stationary state detection	
2	1	|n_act| > p1080	Absolute actual speed > minimum speed	
3	1	i_act ≧ p2170	Actual current ≥ current threshold value	
4	1	|n_act| > p2155	Absolute actual speed > speed threshold value 2	
5	1	|n_act| ≦ p2155	Absolute actual speed < speed threshold value 2	
6	1	|n_act| ≧ r1119	Speed setpoint reached	
7	1	DC link voltage ≦ p2172	Actual DC link voltage ≦ threshold value	
8	1	DC link voltage > p2172	Actual DC link voltage > threshold value	
9	1	Ramping completed	Ramp-function generator is not active.	
10	1	Technology controller output at lower limit	Technology controller output ≦ p2292	
11	1	Technology controller output at upper limit	Technology controller output > p2291	
12		Not used		
13		Not used		
14		Not used		
15		Not used		

7.3.1.3 Extend telegrams and change signal interconnection

Following selection of a telegram, the converter interconnects the corresponding signals with the fieldbus interface. The converter protects this interconnection against changes.

Extend telegram

If you want to extend a telegram, you have to do the following:

Table 7- 10 Procedure

Parameter	Description	
p0922 = 999	**PROFIdrive telegram selection**	
	999:	Free telegram configuration with BICO
p2079	**PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended** Set the suitable telegram:	
	1: 20: 350: 352: 353: 354:	Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2 Standard telegram 20, PZD-2/6 SIEMENS telegram 350, PZD-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6 SIEMENS telegram 353, PZD-2/2, PKW-4/4 SIEMENS telegram 354, PZD-6/6, PKW-4/4
Now you can extend the telegram by interconnecting the PZD send words and PZD receive words with signals of your choice.		

For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

Change the signal interconnection of the telegram

If you want to change the signal interconnection or extend telegrams, you have to do the following:

Table 7- 11 Procedure

Parameter	Description	
p0922 = 999	**PROFIdrive telegram selection**	
	999:	Free telegram configuration with BICO
p2079 = 999	**PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection extended**	
	999:	Free telegram configuration with BICO
Now you can freely interconnect all signals of the fieldbus interface.		

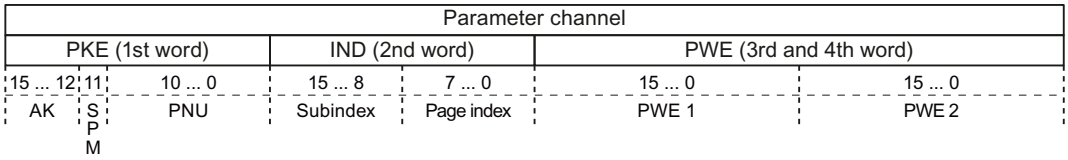
For further information refer to the function block diagrams 2468 and 2470 of the List Manual.

7.3.1.4 Data structure of the parameter channel

Structure of the parameter channel

The parameter channel consists of four words. The parameter number and index as well as the type of job (read or write) are transferred in the 1st and 2nd word. The 3rd and 4th word contains the parameter contents. The parameter contents can be 16-bit values (such as baud rate) or 32-bit values (e.g. CO parameters).

Bit 11 in the 1st word is reserved and is always assigned 0.



You can find examples of telegrams at the end of this section.

Request and response IDs

Request and response IDs are written in bits 12 to 15 of the first word of the parameter channel. The possible identifiers and further explanations can be found in the following tables.

Overview of the request identifiers control → converter

Table 7- 12 Request identifiers control → converter

Request identifier	Description	Response identifier	
		positive	negative
0	No request	0	7 / 8
1	Request parameter value	1 / 2	7 / 8
2	Change parameter value (word)	1	7 / 8
3	Change parameter value (double word)	2	7 / 8
4	Request descriptive element [1]	3	7 / 8
6[2]	Request parameter value (field) [1]	4 / 5	7 / 8
7[2]	Change parameter value (field, word) [1]	4	7 / 8
8[2]	Change parameter value (field, double word) [1]	5	7 / 8
9	Request number of field elements	6	7 / 8

[1] The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

[2] The following request IDs are identical: 1 ≡ 6, 2 ≡ 7 3 ≡ 8.
We recommend that you use identifiers 6, 7, and 8.

Overview of the response identifiers converter → control

The response identifier depends on the request identifier.

Table 7- 13 Response identifiers converter → control

Response identifier	Description
0	No response
1	Transfer parameter value (word)
2	Transfer parameter value (double word)
3	Transfer descriptive element 1)
4	Transfer parameter value (field, word) 2)
5	Transfer parameter value (field, double word) 2)
6	Transfer number of field elements
7	Request cannot be processed, task cannot be executed (with error number)
8	No master controller status / no authorization to change parameters of the parameter channel interface

1) The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

2) The required element of the indexed parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

Overview of the error numbers in response identifier 7 (request cannot be processed)

For response identifier 7, the converter sends one of the following error numbers in the highest word of the parameter channel to the control.

Table 7- 14 Error numbers for the response "Request cannot be processed"

No.	Description
00 hex	**Illegal parameter number** (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	**Parameter value cannot be changed** (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	**Lower or upper value limit exceeded** (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	**Incorrect subindex** (access to a subindex that does not exist. Additional diagnosis in error value 2)
04 hex	**No array** (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	**Incorrect data type** (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	**Setting not permitted, only resetting** (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	**Descriptive element cannot be changed** (change request to a descriptive element that cannot be changed. Additional diagnosis in error value 2)
0B hex	**No master control** (change request but with no master control, see also p0927.)
0C hex	**Keyword missing**
11 hex	**Request cannot be executed due to the operating state** (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	**Inadmissible value** (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)

No.	Description
65 hex	**Parameter number is currently deactivated** (depending on the mode of the converter)
66 hex	**Channel width is insufficient** (communication channel is too small for response)
68 hex	**Illegal parameter value** (parameter can only assume certain values)
6A hex	**Request not included / task is not supported.** (The valid request identifications can be found in table "Request identifications control → converter")
6B hex	**No change access for a controller that is enabled**. (Operating status of the converter prevents a parameter change)
86 hex	**Write access only for commissioning (p0010 = 15)** (operating status of the converter prevents a parameter change.)
87 hex	**Know-how protection active, access locked**
C8 hex	**Change request below the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	**Change request above the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however above the currently valid upper limit, e.g. specified as a result of the converter power rating)
CC hex	**Change request not permitted** (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

Parameter number

Parameter numbers < 2000	PNU = parameter number. Write the parameter number into the PNU (PKE bit 10 ... 0).
Parameter numbers ≥ 2000	PNU = parameter number - offset. Write the parameter number minus the offset into the PNU (PKE bit 10 … 0). Write the offset in the page index (IND bit 7 … 0).

Table 7- 15 Offset and page index of the parameter numbers

Parameter number	Offset	Page index								
		Hex	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0000 … 1999	0	0 hex	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2000 … 3999	2000	80 hex	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6000 … 7999	6000	90 hex	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8000 … 9999	8000	20 hex	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
10000 … 11999	10000	A0 hex	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
20000 … 21999	20000	50 hex	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
30000 … 31999	30000	F0 hex	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0

Indexed parameters

For indexed parameters, you must write the index number as hex value into the sub-index (IND bit 15 … 8).

Parameter contents

Parameter contents can be parameter values or connector parameters. For interconnecting connector parameters please see section: Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 360).

Enter the parameter value, right-justified, as follows in the 4th word of the parameter channel:

- 8-bit values: 4. Word, bit 0 … 7,
  bits 8 … 15 of the 4th word and the 3rd word are zero.
- 16-bit values: 4. Word, bits 0 … 15,
  The 3rd word is zero.
- 32-bit values: 3. and 4th word

Enter a connector parameter as follows:

- Number of the connector parameter: 3. Word
- Drive object of the connector parameter: 4. Word, bits 10 … 15
- The index or bit field number of the connector parameter: 4. Word, bits 0 … 9

Telegram examples

Read request: Read out serial number of the Power Module (p7841[2])

To obtain the value of the indexed parameter p7841, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel with the following data:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 6** (request parameter value (field))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 1841** (Parameter number without offset)
  Parameter number = PNU + offset (page index)
  (7841 = 1841 + 6000)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 2** (Index of the parameter)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 90 hex** (offset 6000 ≙ 90 hex)
- Because you want to read the parameter value, words 3 and 4 in the parameter channel for requesting the parameter value are irrelevant. They should be assigned a value of 0, for example.

Parameter channel							
PKE, 1st word			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word	
15 ... 12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 10	9 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Subindex	Page index	Parameter value	Drive object	Index
0 1 1 0	0	1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Figure 7-4 Telegram for a read request from p7841[2]

Write request: Change restart mode (p1210)

The restart mode is inhibited in the factory setting (p1210 = 0). In order to activate the automatic restart with "acknowledge all faults and restart for an ON command", p1210 must be set to 26:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7** (change parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 4BA hex** (1210 = 4BA hex, no offset, as 1210 < 1999)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 0 hex** (parameter is not indexed)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 corresponds to 0 hex)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15: = 0 hex**
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 15: = 1A hex** (26 = 1A hex)

<table>
<tr><td colspan="64">Parameter channel</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="16">PKE, 1st word</td><td colspan="16">IND, 2nd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE1 - high, 3rd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE2 - low, 4th word</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">15 ... 12</td><td>11</td><td colspan="11">10 ... 0</td><td colspan="8">15 ... 8</td><td colspan="8">7 ... 0</td><td colspan="16">15 ... 0</td><td colspan="16">15 ... 0</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">AK</td><td></td><td colspan="11">Parameter number</td><td colspan="8">Subindex</td><td colspan="8">Page index</td><td colspan="16">Parameter value (bit 16 ... 31)</td><td colspan="16">Parameter value (bit 0 ... 15)</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 7-5 Telegram, to activate the automatic restart with p1210 = 26

Write request: Assign digital input 2 with the function ON/OFF1 (p0840[1] = 722.2)

In order to link digital input 2 with OFF1/ON, you must assign parameter p0840[1] (source, ON/OFF1) the value 722.2 (DI 2). To do this, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel as follows:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7 hex** (change, parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 348 hex** (840 = 348 hex, no offset, as 840 < 1999)
- **IND bit 8 … 15 (subindex): = 1 hex** (CDS1 = index1)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 ≙ 0 hex)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15**: = **2D2 hex** (722 = 2D2 hex)
- **PWE2, bit 10 … 15: = 3f hex** (drive object - for SINAMICS G120, always 63 = 3f hex)
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 9: = 2 hex** (index of parameter (DI 2 = 2))

<table>
<tr><td colspan="64">Parameter channel</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="16">PKE, 1st word</td><td colspan="16">IND, 2nd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE1 - high, 3rd word</td><td colspan="16">PWE2 - low, 4th word</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">15 ... 12</td><td>11</td><td colspan="11">10 ... 0</td><td colspan="8">15 ... 8</td><td colspan="8">7 ... 0</td><td colspan="16">15 ... 0</td><td colspan="6">15 ... 10</td><td colspan="10">9 ... 0</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">AK</td><td></td><td colspan="11">Parameter number</td><td colspan="8">Subindex</td><td colspan="8">Page index</td><td colspan="16">Parameter value</td><td colspan="6">Drive Object</td><td colspan="10">Index</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 7-6 Telegram, to assign DI 2 with ON/OFF1

7.3.1.5 Slave-to-slave communication

With "Slave-slave communication" (also called "Data Exchange Broadcast") it is possible to quickly exchange data between converters (slaves) without the master being directly involved, for instance to use the actual value of one converter as setpoint for other converters.

Note

Slave-to-slave communication in the current firmware version is only possible for converters with PROFIBUS communication.

For slave-to-slave communication, in the control system you must define which converter acts as publisher (sender) or subscriber (receiver) - and which data or data areas (access points) you wish to use for slave-to-slave communication. In the converters that operate as subscriber, you must define how the data transferred using slave-to-slave communication is processed. Using parameter r2077, in the converter, you can read-out the PROFIBUS addresses of the converters for which the slave-to-slave communication function is configured.

- **Publisher** Slave, which sends the data for slave-to-slave communication.
- **Subscriber** Slave, which receives the data from slave-to-slave communication from the publisher.
- **Links and access points** define the data that are used for slave-to-slave communication.

You must observe the following restrictions for the slave-to-slave communication function:

- a maximum of 12 PZD are permissible for each drive
- To a publisher, a maximum of 4 links are possible

An example of how you configure slave-to-slave communication between two converters in STEP 7 is provided in Section: Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7 (Page 380).

7.3.2 Acyclic communication

As well as cyclic communication, the converter also offers the option of acyclic communication for PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET. You can parameterize and diagnose the converter via acyclic communication. Acyclic communication takes place in parallel with cyclic communication, but with a lower priority.

The converter supports the following types of acyclic communication:

- Reading and writing parameters via "data set 47" (up to 240 bytes per write or read request)
- Reading-out profile-specific parameters
- Data exchange with a SIMATIC HMI (**H**uman **M**achine **I**nterface)

You can find a STEP 7 program example for acyclic data transfer in Section STEP 7 program example for acyclic communication (Page 376).

7.3.2.1 Reading and changing parameters via data set 47

Reading parameter values

Table 7- 16 Request to read parameters

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** *01 hex ... FF hex*	**01 hex**: Read request	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters (m)** *01 hex ... 27 hex*	2
Address, parameter 1	**Attribute** *10 hex:* Parameter value *20 hex:* Parameter description	**Number of indices** *00 hex ... EA hex* (for parameters without index: 00 hex)	4
	Parameter number *0001 hex ... FFFF hex*		6
	Number of the 1st index *0000 hex ... FFFF hex* (for parameters without index: 0000 hex)		8
	…		…
Address, parameter 2	…		…
…	…		…
Address, parameter m	…		…

Table 7- 17 Converter response to a read request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** (identical to a read request)	**01 hex**: Converter has executed the read request. **81 hex**: Converter was not able to completely execute the read request.	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters (m)** (identical to the read request)	2
Values, parameter 1	**Format** 02 hex: Integer8 03 hex: Integer16 04 hex: Integer32 05 hex: Unsigned8 06 hex: Unsigned16 07 hex: Unsigned32 08 hex: FloatingPoint 10 hex OctetString 13 hex TimeDifference 41 hex: Byte 42 hex: Word 43 hex: Double word 44 hex: Error	**Number of index values** or - for a negative response - **number of error values**	4
	Value of the 1st index or - for a negative response - **error value 1** You can find the error values in a table at the end of this section.		6
	…		…
Values, parameter 2	…		
…	…		
Values, parameter m	…		

Changing parameter values

Table 7- 18 Request to change parameters

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** *01 hex ... FF hex*	**02 hex**: Change request	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters (m)** *01 hex ... 27 hex*	2
Address, parameter 1	**10 hex**: Parameter value	**Number of indices** *00 hex ... EA hex* (00 hex and 01 hex have the same significance)	4
	Parameter number *0001 hex ... FFFF hex*		6
	Number of the 1st index *0001 hex ... FFFF hex*		8
	…		…
Address, parameter 2	…		
…	…		…
Address, parameter m	…		
Values, parameter 1	**Format** *02 hex:* Integer 8 *03 hex:* Integer 16 *04 hex:* Integer 32 *05 hex:* Unsigned 8 *06 hex:* Unsigned 16 *07 hex:* Unsigned 32 *08 hex:* Floating Point *10 hex* Octet String *13 hex* Time Difference *41 hex:* Byte *42 hex:* Word *43 hex:* Double word	**Number of index values** *00 hex ... EA hex*	
	Value of the 1st index		
	…		
Values, parameter 2	…		
…	…		
Values, parameter m	…		

Table 7- 19 Response, if the converter has executed the change request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** (identical to a change request)	**02 hex**	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters** (identical to a change request)	2

Table 7- 20 Response, if the converter was not able to completely execute the change request

Data block	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** (identical to a change request)	**82 hex**	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters** (identical to a change request)	2
Values, parameter 1	**Format** 40 hex: Zero (change request for this data block executed) 44 hex: Error (change request for this data block not executed)	**Number of error values** 00 hex, 01 hex or 02 hex	4
	Only for "Error" - **error value 1** You can find the error values in the table at the end of this section.		6
	Only if "number of error values" = 02 hex: **Error value 2** Error value 1 defines whether the converter sends error value 2 and what it means.		8
Values, parameter 2	...		
...	…		…
Values, parameter m	...		

Diagnostics

Table 7- 21 Error value in the parameter response

Error value 1	Significance
00 hex	**Illegal parameter number** (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	**Parameter value cannot be changed** (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
02 hex	**Lower or upper value limit exceeded** (change request with a value outside the value limits. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
03 hex	**Incorrect subindex** (access to a subindex that does not exist. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
04 hex	**No array** (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	**Incorrect data type** (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	**Setting not permitted, only resetting** (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
07 hex	**Descriptive element cannot be changed** (change request to a descriptive element that cannot be changed. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
09 hex	**Description data not available** (access to a description that does not exist, parameter value is available)
0B hex	**No master control** (change request but with no master control)
0F hex	**Text array does not exist** (although the parameter value is available, the access is made to a text array that does not exist)
11 hex	**Request cannot be executed due to the operating state** (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	**Inadmissible value** (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values. Additional diagnostics in error value 2)
15 hex	**Response too long** (the length of the actual response exceeds the maximum transfer length)

Error value 1	Significance
16 hex	**Illegal parameter address** *(illegal or unsupported value for attribute, number of elements, parameter number, subindex or a combination of these)*
17 hex	**Illegal format** (change request for an illegal or unsupported format)
18 hex	**Number of values not consistent** *(number of values of the parameter data to not match the number of elements in the parameter address)*
19 hex	**Drive object does not exist** (access to a drive object that does not exist)
6B hex	**No change access for a controller that is enabled**.
6C hex	**Unknown unit**.
6E hex	**Change request is only possible when the motor is being commissioned (p0010 = 3).**
6F hex	**Change request is only possible when the power unit is being commissioned (p0010 = 2).**
70 hex	**Change request is only possible for quick commissioning (basic commissioning) (p0010 = 1).**
71 hex	**Change request is only possible if the converter is ready (p0010 = 0).**
72 hex	**Change request is only possible for a parameter reset (restore to factory setting) (p0010 = 30).**
73 hex	**Change request possible only during commissioning of the safety functions (p0010 = 95).**
74 hex	**Change request is only possible when a technological application/unit is being commissioned (p0010 = 5).**
75 hex	**Change request is only possible in a commissioning state (p0010 ≠ 0).**
76 hex	**Change request is not possible for internal reasons (p0010 = 29).**
77 hex	**Change request is not possible at download.**
81 hex	**Change request is not possible at download.**
82 hex	**Transfer of the control authority (master) is inhibited by BI: p0806.**
83 hex	**Requested BICO interconnection is not possible** (BICO output does not supply a float value, however the BICO input requires a float value)
84 hex	**Converter does not accept a change request** (converter is busy with internal calculations, see r3996)
85 hex	**No access methods defined**.
86 hex	**Write access only during commissioning of the data records (p0010 = 15)** (operating status of the converter prevents a parameter change.)
87 hex	**Know-how protection active, access locked**
C8 hex	**Change request below the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	**Change request above the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however above the currently valid upper limit, e.g. specified as a result of the converter power rating)
CC hex	**Change request not permitted** (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

7.4 Communication via RS485

7.4.1 Integrating inverters into a bus system via the RS485 interface

Connecting to a network via RS485

Connect the inverter to your fieldbus via the RS485 interface. Position and assignment of the RS485 interface can be found in section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46). This connector has short-circuit proof, isolated pins.

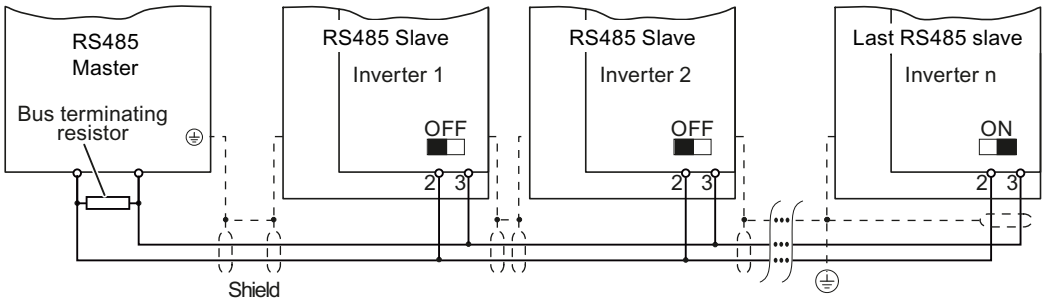


Figure 7-7 Communication network via RS485

You must switch-in the bus terminating resistor for the first and last participants. The position of the bus terminating resistor can be found in section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).

You can disconnect one or more slaves from the bus (by unplugging the bus connector) without interrupting the communication for the other stations, but not the first or last.

NOTICE
When the bus is operating, the first and last bus station must be continuously connected to the supply.

Note

Communication with the controller, even when the supply voltage on the Power Module is switched off

You will have to supply the Control Unit with 24 VDC on terminals 31 and 32 if you require communication to take place with the controller even when the line voltage is switched off.

In the case of short interruptions of the 24V voltage supply, the converter may report the fault F without communications with the controller being interrupted.

7.4.2 Communication via USS

Using the USS protocol (protocol of the universal serial interface), users can set up a serial data connection between a higher-level master system and several slave systems (RS 485 interface). Master systems include programmable logic controllers (e.g. SIMATIC S7-200) or PCs. The inverters are always slaves on the bus system.

Communication using the USS protocol takes place over the RS485 interface with a maximum of 31 slaves.

The maximum cable length is 1200 m (3300 ft)

Information about how to connect the inverter to the USS fieldbus is provided in Section: Integrating inverters into a bus system via the RS485 interface (Page 117).

7.4.2.1 Basic settings for communication

Setting the address

You can set the converter's USS address via the address switch on the CU via p2021 or in STARTER under "Control Unit/Communications/fieldbus".

Valid address range: 1 … 30

Procedure

Method	Description
Address switch	If you have specified a valid address using the address switch, this address will always be the one that takes effect and parameter p2021 cannot be changed. The positions and settings of the address switches are described in section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).
p2021 / STARTER	**Fieldbus address** (factory setting: 0) The setting in p2021 or via STARTER is only effective if the address, set using the address switch, is invalid (0 or >30).

CAUTION
For a modified bus address to be effective, you have to switch the converter and - if need be - any external 24 V supply off and on.

Additional settings

Parameter	Description
P0015 = 21	**Macro drive device** Select the I/O configuration
p2020	**Setting the baud rate** Value / Baud rate: 4 = 2400; 5 = 4800; 6 = 9600; 7 = 19200; 8 = 38400; 9 = 57600; 10 = 76800; 11 = 93750; 12 = 115200; 13 = 187500
p2022	**Fieldbus interface USS PZD number** Sets the number of 16-bit words in the PZD part of the USS telegram Setting range: 0… 8 (0 … 8 words)
p2023	**Fieldbus interface USS PIV number** Sets the number of 16-bit words in the PIV part of the USS telegram Setting range: • 0, 3, 4: 0, 3 or 4 words • 127: variable length
p2040	**Fieldbus interface monitoring time [ms]** Sets the monitoring time to monitor the process data received via the fieldbus. If no process data are received within this time, an appropriate message is output

7.4.2.2 Telegram structure

Overview

A USS telegram comprises a sequence of elements, which are sent in a defined sequence. Each element contains 11 bits.

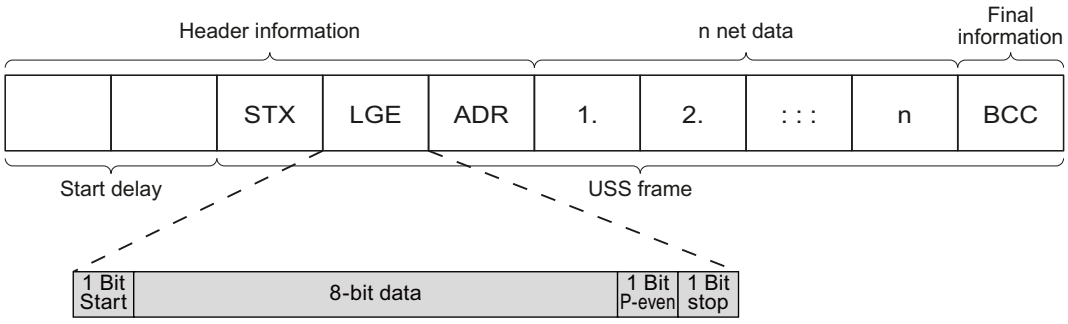
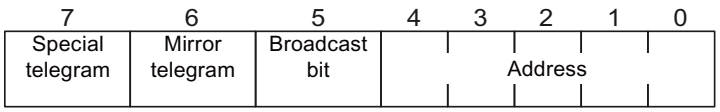


Figure 7-8 Structure of a USS telegram

Telegram part	Description
Start delay / response delay	There is always a start and/or response delay between two telegrams (see alsoTime-out and other errors (Page 127))
STX	An ASCII character (02 hex) indicates the beginning of the message.
LGE	The telegram length "LGE" is calculated as follows: LGE = user data (n bytes) + ADR (1 byte) + BCC (1 byte)
ADR	 • Bit 7 = 0: Normal data exchange. Bit 7 =1, to transfer telegrams that require a net data structure different from the device profile. • Bit 6 = 0: Normal data exchange. Bit 6 = 1: Testing the bus connection: The converter returns the telegram unchanged to the master. • Bit 5 = 0: Normal data exchange. (Bit 5 = 1: Not supported in the converter.) • Bits 0 ... 4: Address of the converter.
Net data	See section User data range of the USS telegram (Page 120).
BCC	Checksum (exclusive or) across all telegram bytes – with the exception of BCC.

7.4.2.3 User data range of the USS telegram

The user data area consists of the following elements:

- Parameter channel (PIV) for writing and reading parameter values
- Process data (PZD) for controlling the drive.

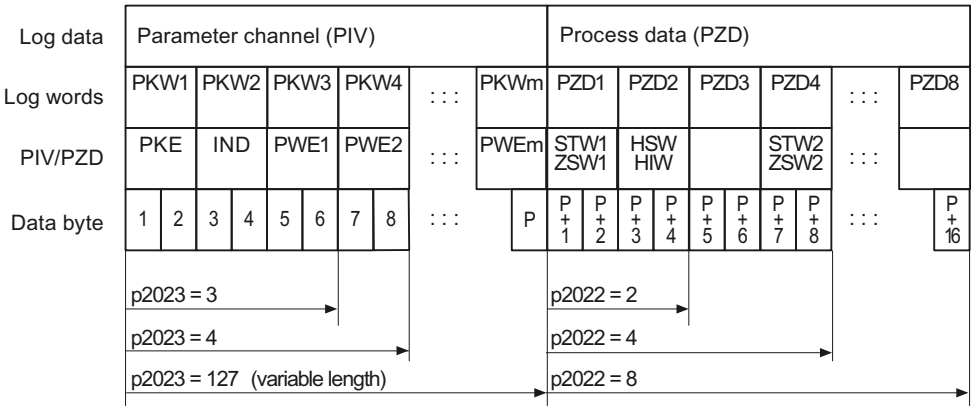


Figure 7-9 USS telegram - user data structure

Parameter channel

In parameter p2023 you specify the length of the parameter channel.

Parameter channel with fixed and variable length

- P2023 = 0
  With this setting, no parameter values are transferred.
- P2023 = 3
  You can select this setting if you only want to read or write 16-bit data or alarm signals.
- P2023 = 4:
  If you want to read or write 32-bit values (for example indexed parameters or bit parameter, e.g. r0722.2), then this setting is required. In this case, the send or receive telegram always contains 4 words, even if only 3 would be required. The values are enter right-justified in the 4th word.
- P2023 = 127:
  If you set p2023 = 27 (variable length), the send and response telegrams are as long as the task actually requires.

Process data

Parameter p2022 defines the length for the process data. You can transfer up to 8 process data in one telegram (p2022 = 0 … 8). For p2022 = 0, no process data is transferred.

7.4.2.4 USS parameter channel (PIV)

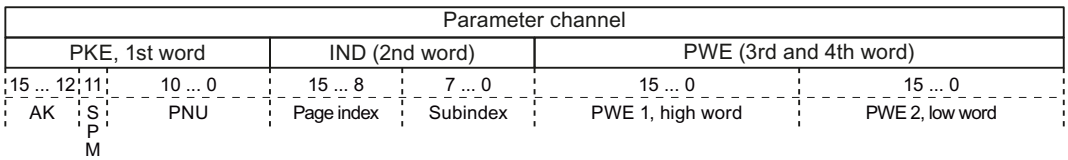
Structure of the parameter channel

Depending on the setting in p2023, the parameter channel has a fixed length of three or four words, or a variable length, depending on the length of the data to be transferred.

The parameter number and index as well as the type of job (read or write) are transferred in the 1st and 2nd word. The other words of the parameter channel contain parameter contents. The parameter contents can be 8-bit values, 16-bit values (such as baud rate) or 32-bit values (e.g. CO parameters). The parameter contents are entered right justified in the word with the highest number. Words that are not required are assigned 0.

Bit 11 in the 1st word is reserved and is always assigned 0.

The diagram shows a parameter channel that is four words long.



You can find examples of telegrams at the end of this section.

Request and response IDs

Request and response IDs are written in bits 12 to 15 of the first word of the parameter channel. The possible identifiers and further explanations can be found in the following tables.

Overview of the request identifiers control → converter

Table 7- 22 Request identifiers control → converter

Request identifier	Description	Response identifier	
		positive	negative
0	No request	0	7 / 8
1	Request parameter value	1 / 2	7 / 8
2	Change parameter value (word)	1	7 / 8
3	Change parameter value (double word)	2	7 / 8
4	Request descriptive element [1]	3	7 / 8
6[2]	Request parameter value (field) [1]	4 / 5	7 / 8
7[2]	Change parameter value (field, word) [1]	4	7 / 8
8[2]	Change parameter value (field, double word) [1]	5	7 / 8
9	Request number of field elements	6	7 / 8

[1] The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

[2] The following request IDs are identical: 1 ≡ 6, 2 ≡ 7 3 ≡ 8.
We recommend that you use identifiers 6, 7, and 8.

Overview of the response identifiers converter → control

The response identifier depends on the request identifier.

Table 7- 23 Response identifiers converter → control

Response identifier	Description
0	No response
1	Transfer parameter value (word)
2	Transfer parameter value (double word)
3	Transfer descriptive element [1]
4	Transfer parameter value (field, word) [2]
5	Transfer parameter value (field, double word) [2]
6	Transfer number of field elements
7	Request cannot be processed, task cannot be executed (with error number)
8	No master controller status / no authorization to change parameters of the parameter channel interface

1) The required element of the parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

2) The required element of the indexed parameter is specified in IND (2nd word).

Overview of the error numbers in response identifier 7 (request cannot be processed)

For response identifier 7, the converter sends one of the following error numbers in the highest word of the parameter channel to the control.

Table 7- 24 Error numbers for the response "Request cannot be processed"

No.	Description
00 hex	**Illegal parameter number** (access to a parameter that does not exist)
01 hex	**Parameter value cannot be changed** (change request for a parameter value that cannot be changed)
02 hex	**Lower or upper value limit exceeded** (change request with a value outside the value limits)
03 hex	**Incorrect subindex** (access to a subindex that does not exist. Additional diagnosis in error value 2)
04 hex	**No array** (access with a subindex to non-indexed parameters)
05 hex	**Incorrect data type** (change request with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter)
06 hex	**Setting not permitted, only resetting** (change request with a value not equal to 0 without permission)
07 hex	**Descriptive element cannot be changed** (change request to a descriptive element that cannot be changed. Additional diagnosis in error value 2)
0B hex	**No master control** (change request but with no master control, see also p0927.)
0C hex	**Keyword missing**
11 hex	**Request cannot be executed due to the operating state** (access is not possible for temporary reasons that are not specified)
14 hex	**Inadmissible value** (change request with a value that is within the limits but which is illegal for other permanent reasons, i.e. a parameter with defined individual values)
65 hex	**Parameter number is currently deactivated** (depending on the mode of the converter)
66 hex	**Channel width is insufficient** (communication channel is too small for response)
68 hex	**Illegal parameter value** (parameter can only assume certain values)
6A hex	**Request not included / task is not supported.** (The valid request identifications can be found in table "Request identifications control → converter")
6B hex	**No change access for a controller that is enabled**. (Operating status of the converter prevents a parameter change)
86 hex	**Write access only for commissioning (p0010 = 15)** (operating status of the converter prevents a parameter change.)
87 hex	**Know-how protection active, access locked**
C8 hex	**Change request below the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however below the currently valid lower limit)
C9 hex	**Change request above the currently valid limit** (change request to a value that lies within the "absolute" limits, but is however above the currently valid upper limit, e.g. specified as a result of the converter power rating)
CC hex	**Change request not permitted** (change is not permitted as the access code is not available)

Parameter number

Parameter numbers < 2000	PNU = parameter number. Write the parameter number into the PNU (PKE bit 10 ... 0).
Parameter numbers ≥ 2000	PNU = parameter number - offset. Write the parameter number minus the offset into the PNU (PKE bit 10 … 0). Write the offset in the page index (IND bit 15 … 8).

Table 7- 25 Offset and page index of the parameter numbers

Parameter number	Offset	Page index								
		Hex	Bit 15	Bit 14	Bit 13	Bit 12	Bit 11	Bit 10	Bit 9	Bit 8
0000 … 1999	0	0 hex	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2000 … 3999	2000	80 hex	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
6000 … 7999	6000	90 hex	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0
8000 … 9999	8000	20 hex	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
10000 … 11999	10000	A0 hex	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
20000 … 21999	20000	50 hex	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
30000 … 31999	30000	F0 hex	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0

Indexed parameters

For indexed parameters, you must write the index number as hex value into the sub-index (IND bit 7 … 0).

Parameter contents

Parameter contents can be parameter values or connector parameters. For connector parameters you need two words. For interconnecting connector parameters please see section: Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 360).

Enter the parameter value in the parameter channel right-justified as follows:

- 8-bit values: Low word, bit 0 ... 7,
  bits 8 … 15 are zero.
- 16-bit values: Low word, bits 0 … 15,
- 32-bit values: Low word and high word

Enter a connector parameter right-justified as follows:

- Number of the connector parameter: High word
- Drive object of the connector parameter: Low word, bits 10 … 15
- The index or bit field number of the connector parameter: Low word, bits 0 … 9

Telegram examples, length of the parameter channel = 4

Read request: Read out serial number of the Power Module (p7841[2])

To obtain the value of the indexed parameter p7841, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel with the following data:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 6** (request parameter value (field))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 1841** (Parameter number without offset)
  Parameter number = PNU + offset (page index)
  (7841 = 1841 + 6000)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (page index): = 90 hex** (offset 6000 ≙ 90 hex)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (subindex): = 2** (Index of the parameter)
- Because you want to read the parameter value, words 3 and 4 in the parameter channel for requesting the parameter value are irrelevant. They should be assigned a value of 0, for example.

Parameter channel							
PKE (1st word)			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word	
15 ... 12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 10	9 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Page index	Subindex	Parameter value	Drive Object	Index
0 1 1 0	0	1 1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 1	1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Figure 7-10 Telegram for a read request from p7841[2]

Write request: Change restart mode (p1210)

The restart mode is inhibited in the factory setting (p1210 = 0). In order to activate the automatic restart with "acknowledge all faults and restart for an ON command", p1210 must be set to 26:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7** (change parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 4BA hex** (1210 = 4BA hex, no offset, as 1210 < 1999)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 corresponds to 0 hex)
- **IND, bit 0 … 7 (subindex): = 0 hex** (parameter is not indexed)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15: = 0 hex**
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 15: = 1A hex** (26 = 1A hex)

Parameter channel						
PKE, 1st word			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word
15 ... 12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Page index	Subindex	Parameter value (bit 16 ... 31)	Parameter value (bit 0 ... 15)
0 1 1 1	0	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0

Figure 7-11 Telegram, to activate the automatic restart with p1210 = 26

Write request: Assign digital input 2 with the function ON/OFF1 (p0840[1] = 722.2)

In order to link digital input 2 with ON/OFF1, you must assign parameter p0840[1] (source, ON/OFF1) the value 722.2 (DI 2). To do this, you must fill the telegram of the parameter channel as follows:

- **PKE, bit 12 … 15 (AK): = 7 hex** (change, parameter value (field, word))
- **PKE, bit 0 … 10 (PNU): = 348 hex** (840 = 348 hex, no offset, as 840 < 1999)
- **IND, bit 8 … 15 (page index): = 0 hex** (offset 0 ≙ 0 hex)
- **IND bit 0 … 7 (subindex): = 1 hex** (command data set, CDS1 = index1)
- **PWE1, bit 0 … 15**: = **2D2 hex** (722 = 2D2 hex)
- **PWE2, bit 10 … 15: = 3f hex** (drive object - for SINAMICS G120, always 63 = 3f hex)
- **PWE2, bit 0 … 9: = 2 hex** (index or bit number of the parameter: DI 2 = r0722.2)

Parameter channel							
PKE, 1st word			IND, 2nd word		PWE1 - high, 3rd word	PWE2 - low, 4th word	
15 ... 12	11	10 ... 0	15 ... 8	7 ... 0	15 ... 0	15 ... 10	9 ... 0
AK		Parameter number	Page index	Subindex	Parameter value	Drive Object	Index
0 1 1 1	0	0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 1 0	1 1 1 1 1 1	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0

Figure 7-12 Telegram, to assign DI 2 with ON/OFF1

7.4.2.5 USS process data channel (PZD)

Description

The process data channel (PZD) contains the following data depending on the transmission direction:

- Control words and setpoints for the slave
- Status words and actual values for the master.

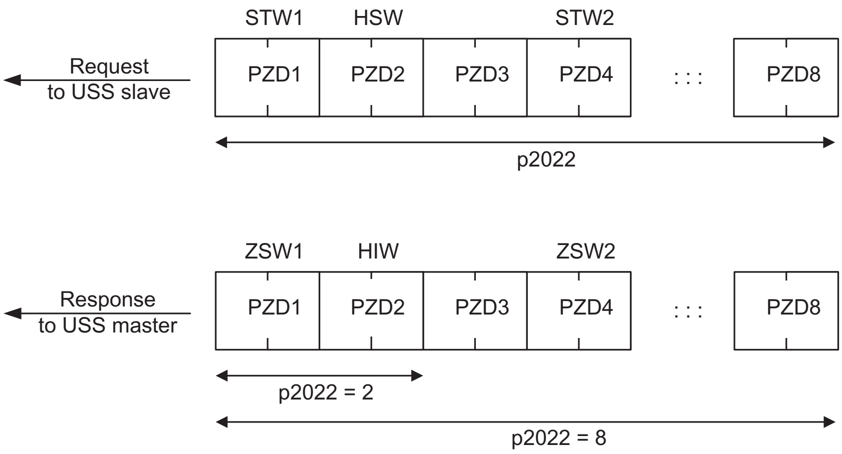


Figure 7-13 Process data channel

The first two words are:

- Control 1 (STW1) and main setpoint (HSW)
- Status word 1 (ZSW1) and main actual value (HIW)

If p2022 is greater than or equal to 4, the additional control word (STW2) is transferred.

You define the sources of the PZD using parameter p2051.

For further information, please refer to the Parameter Manual.

7.4.2.6 Time-out and other errors

You require the telegram runtimes in order to set the telegram monitoring. The character runtime is the basis of the telegram runtime:

Table 7- 26 Character runtime

Baud rate in bit/s	Transmission time per bit	Character run time (= 11 bits)
9600	104.170 µs	1.146 ms
19200	52.084 µs	0.573 ms
38400	26.042 µs	0.286 ms
115200	5.340 µs	0.059 ms

The telegram runtime is longer than just purely adding all of the character runtimes (=residual runtime). You must also take into consideration the character delay time between the individual characters of the telegram.

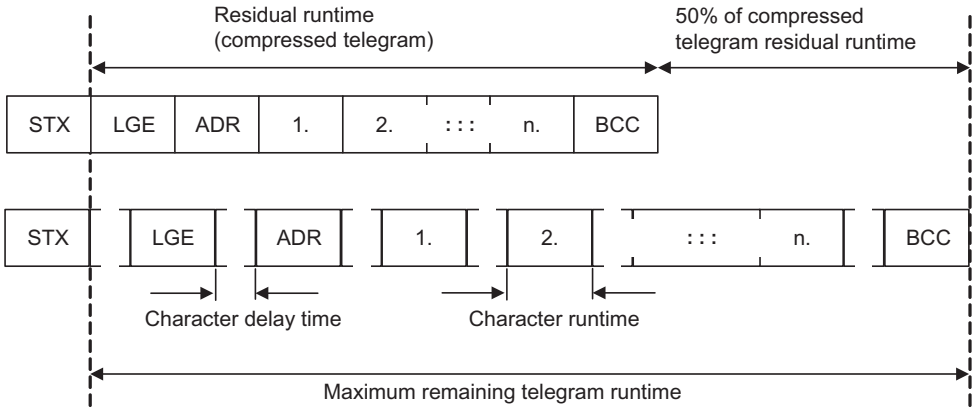


Figure 7-14 Telegram runtime as the sum of the residual runtime and character delay times

The total telegram runtime is always less than 150% of the pure residual runtime.

Before each request telegram, the master must maintain the start delay. The start delay must be > 2 × character runtime.

The slave only responds after the response delay has expired.

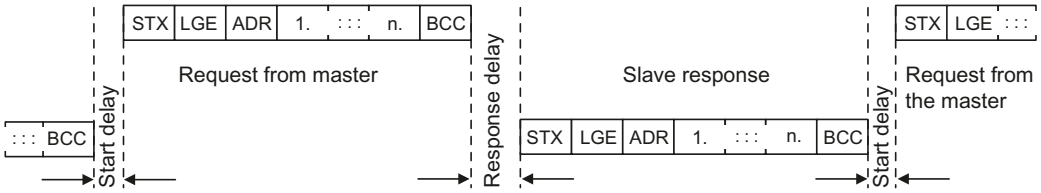


Figure 7-15 Start delay and response delay

The duration of the start delay must at least be as long as the time for two characters and depends on the baud rate.

Table 7- 27 Duration of the start delay

Baud rate in bit/s	Transmission time per character (= 11 bits)	Min. start delay
9600	1.146 ms	> 2.291 ms
19200	0.573 ms	> 1.146 ms
38400	0.286 ms	> 0.573 ms
57600	0.191 ms	> 0.382 ms
115200	0.059 ms	> 0.117 ms

Note: The character delay time must be shorter than the start delay.

Telegram monitoring of the master

With your USS master, we recommend that the following times are monitored:

- Response delay: Response time of the slave to a request from the master
  The response delay must be < 20 ms, but longer than the start delay
- Telegram runtime: Transmission time of the response telegram sent from the slave

Telegram monitoring of the converter

The converter monitors the time between two requests of the master. Parameter p2040 defines the permissible time in ms. If a time p2040 ≠ 0 is exceeded, then the converter interprets this as telegram failure and responds with fault F01910.

150% of the residual runtime is the guide value for the setting of p2040, i.e. the telegram runtime without taking into account the character delay times.

For communication via USS, the converter checks bit 10 of the received control word 1. If the bit is not set when the motor is switched on ("Operation"), then the converter responds with fault F07220.

7.4.3 Communication over Modbus RTU

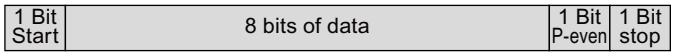
Overview of communication using Modbus

The Modbus protocol is a communication protocol with linear topology based on a master/slave architecture.

Modbus offers three transmission modes:

- **Modbus ASCII**
  Data is transferred in ASCII code. The data can therefore be read directly by humans, however, the data throughput is lower in comparison to RTU.
- **Modbus RTU**
  Modbus RTU (RTU: Remote Terminal Unit): Data is transferred in binary format and the data throughput is greater than in ASCII code.
- **Modbus TCP**
  This type of data transmission is very similar to RTU, except that TCP/IP packages are used to send the data. TCP port 502 is reserved for Modbus TCP. Modbus TCP is currently undergoing definition as a standard (IEC PAS 62030 (pre-standard)).

The Control Unit supports Modbus RTU as a slave with even parity.



Communication settings

- Communication using Modbus RTU takes place over the RS485 interface with a maximum of 247 slaves.
- The maximum cable length is 1200 m (3281 ft).
- Two 100 kΩ resistors are provided to polarize the receive and send cables.

⚠ CAUTION

It is not permitted to change over the units!

The "Unit changeover (Page 223)" function is not permissible with this bus system!

7.4.3.1 Basic settings for communication

Setting the address

You can set the converter's Modbus-RTU address via the address switches on the CU via p2021 or in STARTER under "Control Unit/Communications/fieldbus".

Valid address range: 1 … 247

Procedure

Method	Description
Address switch	If you have specified a valid address using the address switch, this address will always be the one that takes effect and parameter p2021 cannot be changed. The positions and settings of the address switches are described in section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).
p2021 / STARTER	**Fieldbus address** (factory setting: 1) The setting in p2021 or via STARTER is effective only if you set all address switches to "OFF" (0).

CAUTION
For a modified bus address to be effective, you have to switch the converter and - if need be - any external 24 V supply off and on.

Additional settings

Parameter	Description
P0015 = 21	**Macro drive unit** Selecting the I/O configuration
p2030 = 2	**Fieldbus protocol selection** 2: Modbus
p2020	**Fieldbus baud rate** Baud rates from 4800 bit/s to 187500 bit/s can be set for communication, factory setting = 19200 bit/s.
p2024	**Modbus timing** (see Section "Baud rates and mapping tables (Page 132)") • **Index 0: Maximum slave telegram processing time:** The time after which the slave must have sent a response to the master. • **Index 1: Character delay time:** Character delay time: Maximum permissible delay time between the individual characters in the Modbus frame. (Modbus standard processing time for 1.5 bytes). • **Index2: Inter-telegram delay:** Maximum permissible delay time between Modbus telegrams. (Modbus standard processing time for 3.5 bytes).

Parameter	Description
p2029	**Fieldbus fault statistics** Displays receive faults on the fieldbus interface
p2040	**Process data monitoring time** Determines the time after which an alarm is generated if no process data are transferred. **Note:** This time must be adapted depending on the number of slaves and the baud rate set for the bus (factory setting = 100 ms).

7.4.3.2 Modbus RTU telegram

Description

For Modbus, there is precisely one master and up to 247 slaves. Communication is always triggered by the master. The slaves can only transfer data at the request of the master. Slave-to-slave communication is not possible. The Control Unit always operates as slave.

The following figure shows the structure of a Modbus RTU telegram.

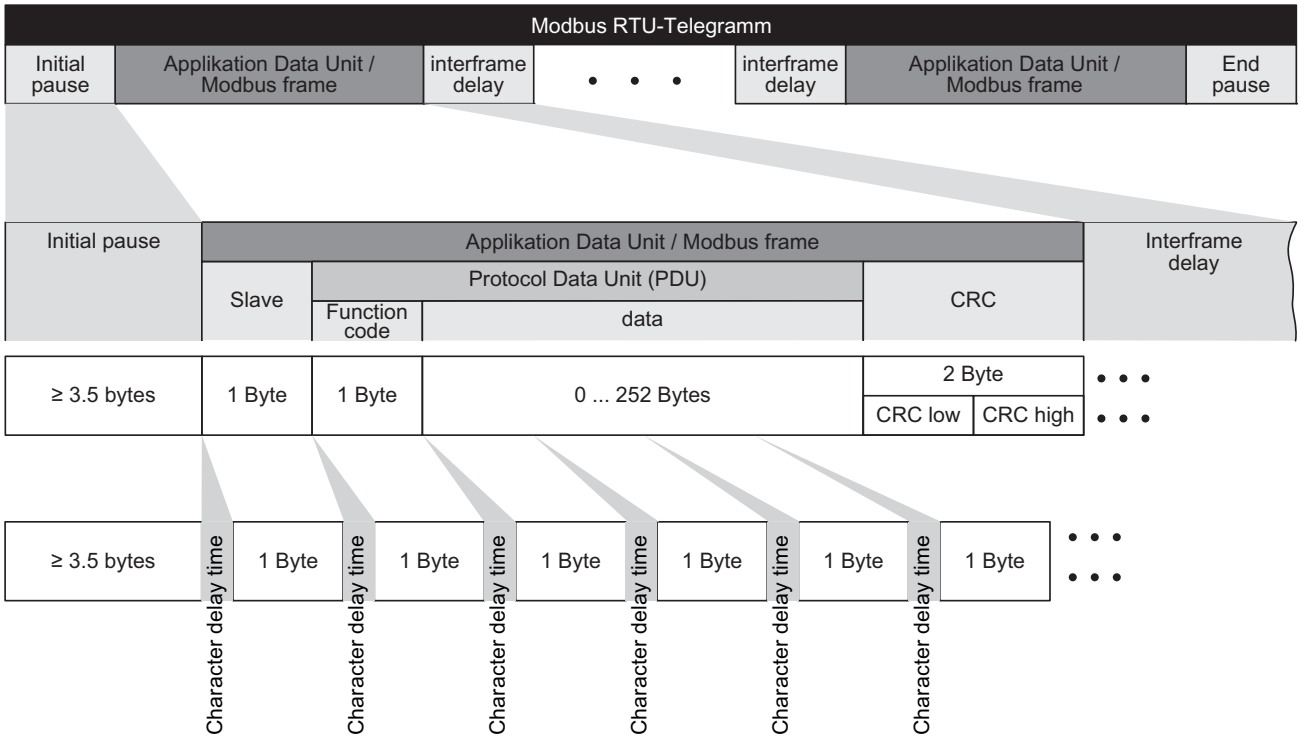


Figure 7-16 Modbus with delay times

The data area of the telegram is structured according to the mapping tables.

7.4.3.3 Baud rates and mapping tables

Permissible baud rates and telegram delay

The Modbus RTU telegram requires a pause for the following cases:

- Start detection
- Between the individual frames
- End detection

Minimum duration: Processing time for 3.5 bytes (can be set via p2024[2]).

A character delay time is also permitted between the individual bytes of a frame. Maximum duration: Processing time for 1.5 bytes (can be set via p2024[1]).

Table 7- 28 Baud rates, transmission times, and delays

Baud rate in bit/s (p2020)	Transmission time per character (11 bits)	Minimum pause between two telegrams (p2024[2])	Maximum pause between two bytes (p2024[1])
4800	2.292 ms	≥ 8.021 ms	≤ 3.438 ms
9600	1.146 ms	≥ 4.010 ms	≤ 1.719 ms
19200 (factory setting)	0.573 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.859 ms
38400	0.286 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.75 ms
57600	0.191 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.556 ms
76800	0.143 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.417 ms
93750	0.117 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.341 ms
115200	0.095 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.278 ms
187500	0.059 ms	≥ 1.75 ms	≤ 0.171 ms

Note

The factory setting for p2024[1] and p2024[2] is 0. The particular values are pre-assigned depending on the protocol selection (p2030) or the baud rate.

Modbus register and Control Unit parameters

Since the Modbus protocol can only handle register or bit numbers for addressing the memory, assignment to the appropriate control words, status words and parameters is performed on the slave side.

The converter supports the following addressing ranges:

Addressing range	Remark
40001 … 40065	Compatible with Micromaster MM436
40100 … 40522	

The valid holding register addressing range extends from 40001 to 40522. Access to other holding registers generates the fault "Exception Code".

The registers 40100 to 40111 are described as process data. A telegram monitoring time can be activated in p2040 for these registers.

Note

R"; "W"; "R/W" in the column Modbus access stands for read (with FC03); write (with FC06); read/write.

Table 7- 29 Assigning the Modbus register to the parameters of the Control Unit

Modbus Reg. No.	Description	Modbus access	Unit	Scaling factor	On/Off text or value range		Data / parameter
Process data							
Control data							
40100	Control word	R/W	--	1			Process data 1
40101	Main setpoint	R/W	--	1			Process data 2
Status data							
40110	Status word	R	--	1			Process data 1
40111	Main actual value	R	--	1			Process data 2
Parameter data							
Digital outputs							
40200	DO 0	R/W	--	1	HIGH	LOW	p0730, r747.0, p748.0
40201	DO 1	R/W	--	1	HIGH	LOW	p0731, r747.1, p748.1
40202	DO 2	R/W	--	1	HIGH	LOW	p0732, r747.2, p748.2
Analog outputs							
40220	AO 0	R	%	100	-100.0 … 100.0		r0774.0
40221	AO 1	R	%	100	-100.0 … 100.0		r0774.1
Digital inputs							
40240	DI 0	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.0
40241	DI 1	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.1
40242	DI 2	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.2
40243	DI 3	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.3
40244	DI 4	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.4
40245	DI 5	R	--	1	HIGH	LOW	r0722.5
Analog inputs							
40260	AI 0	R	%	100	-300.0 … 300.0		r0755 [0]
40261	AI 1	R	%	100	-300.0 … 300.0		r0755 [1]
40262	AI 2	R	%	100	-300.0 … 300.0		r0755 [2]
40263	AI 3	R	%	100	-300.0 … 300.0		r0755 [3]
Converter identification							
40300	Powerstack number	R	--	1	0 … 32767		r0200
40301	Converter firmware	R	--	0.0001	0.00 … 327.67		r0018

Modbus Reg. No.	Description	Modbus access	Unit	Scaling factor	On/Off text or value range	Data / parameter
Converter data						
40320	Rated power of the power unit	R	kW	100	0 … 327.67	r0206
40321	Current Limit	R/W	%	10	10.0 … 400.0	p0640
40322	Rampup time	R/W	s	100	0.00 … 650.0	p1120
40323	Ramp-down time	R/W	s	100	0.00 … 650.0	p1121
40324	Reference speed	R/W	RPM	1	6.000 … 32767	p2000
Converter diagnostics						
40340	Speed setpoint	R	RPM	1	-16250 … 16250	r0020
40341	Speed actual value	R	RPM	1	-16250 … 16250	r0022
40342	Output frequency	R	Hz	100	- 327.68 … 327.67	r0024
40343	Output voltage	R	V	1	0 … 32767	r0025
40344	DC link voltage	R	V	1	0 … 32767	r0026
40345	Actual value of current	R	A	100	0 … 163.83	r0027
40346	Actual torque value	R	Nm	100	- 325.00 … 325.00	r0031
40347	Actual active power	R	kW	100	0 … 327.67	r0032
40348	Energy consumption	R	kWh	1	0 … 32767	r0039
40349	Control priority	R	--	1	HAND / AUTO	r0807
Fault diagnostics						
40400	Fault number, Index 0	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [0]
40401	Fault number, Index 1	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [1]
40402	Fault number, Index 2	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [2]
40403	Fault number, Index 2	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [3]
40404	Fault number, Index 3	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [4]
40405	Fault number, Index 4	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [5]
40406	Fault number, Index 5	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [6]
40407	Fault number, Index 6	R	--	1	0 … 32767	r0947 [7]
40408	Alarm number	R	--	1	0 …32767	r2110 [0]
40499	PRM ERROR code	R	--	1	0 …99	--
Technology controller						
40500	Technology controller enable	R/W	--	1	0 … 1	p2200, r2349.0
40501	Technology controller MOP	R/W	%	100	-200.0 … 200.0	p2240
Technology controller adjustment						
40510	Time constant for actual value filter of the technology controller	R/W	--	100	0.00 … 60.0	p2265
40511	Scaling factor for actual value of the technology controller	R/W	%	100	0.00 … 500.00	p2269
40512	Proportional amplification of the technology controller	R/W	--	1000	0.000 … 65.000	p2280
40513	Integral time of the technology controller	R/W	s	1	0 … 60	p2285
40514	Time constant D-component of the technology controller	R/W	--	1	0 … 60	p2274

Modbus Reg. No.	Description	Modbus access	Unit	Scaling factor	On/Off text or value range	Data / parameter
40515	Max. limit of technology controller	R/W	%	100	-200.0 … 200.0	p2291
40516	Min. limit technology controller	R/W	%	100	-200.0 … 200.0	p2292
PID diagnostics						
40520	Effective setpoint acc. to internal technology controller MOP ramp-function generator	R	%	100	-100.0 … 100.0	r2250
40521	Actual value of technology controller after filter	R	%	100	-100.0 … 100.0	r2266
40522	Output signal technology controller	R	%	100	-100.0 … 100.0	r2294

7.4.3.4 Write and read access via FC 3 and FC 6

Function codes used

For data exchange between the master and slave, predefined function codes are used for communication via Modbus.

The Control Unit uses the Modbus function code 03, FC 03, (read holding registers) for reading and the Modbus function code 06, FC 06, (preset single register) for writing.

Structure of a read request via Modbus function code 03 (FC 03)

All valid register addresses are permitted as a start address. If a register address is invalid, exception code 02 (invalid data address) is returned. An attempt to read a write-only register or a reserved register is replied to with a normal telegram in which all values are set to 0.

Using FC 03, it is possible to address more than 1 register with one request. The number of addressed registers is contained in bytes 4 and 5 of the read request.

Number of registers

If more than 125 registers are addressed, exception code 03 (Illegal data value) is returned. If the start address plus the number of registers for an address are outside of a defined register block, exception code 02 (invalid data address) is returned.

Table 7- 30 Structure of a read request for slave number 17

Example		
	Byte	Description
11 h	0	Slave address
03 h	1	Function code
00 h	2	Register start address "High" (register 40110)
6D h	3	Register start address "Low"
00 h	4	No. of registers "High" (2 registers: 40110; 40111)
02 h	5	Number of registers "Low"
xx h	6	CRC "Low"
xx h	7	CRC "High"

The response returns the corresponding data set:

Table 7- 31 Slave response to the read request

Example		
	Byte	**Description**
11 h	0	Slave address
03 h	1	Function code
04 h	2	No. of bytes (4 bytes are returned)
11 h	3	Data of first register "High"
22 h	4	Data of first register "Low"
33 h	5	Data of second register "High"
44 h	6	Data of second register "Low"
xx h	7	CRC "Low"
xx h	8	CRC "High"

Structure of a write request via Modbus function code 06 (FC 06)

The start address is the holding register address. If an incorrect address is entered (a holding register address does not exist), exception code 02 (invalid data address) is returned. An attempt to write to a "read-only" register or a reserved register is replied to with a Modbus error telegram (Exception Code 4 - device failure). In this instance, the detailed internal error code that occurred on the last parameter access via the holding registers can be read out via holding register 40499.

Using FC 06, precisely one register can always be addressed with one request. The value which is to be written to the addressed register is contained in bytes 4 and 5 of the write request.

Table 7- 32 Structure of a write request for slave number 17

Example		
	Byte	**Description**
11 h	0	Slave address
06 h	1	Function code
00 h	2	Register start address "High" (write register 40100)
63 h	3	Register start address "Low"
55 h	4	Register data "High"
66 h	5	Register data "Low"
xx h	6	CRC "Low"
xx h	7	CRC "High"

The response returns the register address (bytes 2 and 3) and the value (bytes 4 and 5) that was written to the register.

Table 7- 33 Slave response to the write request

Example		
	Byte	**Description**
11 h	0	Slave address
06 h	1	Function code
00 h	2	Register start address "High"
63 h	3	Register start address "Low"
55 h	4	Register data "High"
66 h	5	Register data "Low"
xx h	6	CRC "Low"
xx h	7	CRC "High"

7.4.3.5 Communication procedure

Procedure for communication in a normal case

Normally, the master sends a telegram to a slave (address range 1 ... 247). The slave sends a response telegram to the master. This response telegram mirrors the function code, and the slave enters its own address in the telegram, which enables the master to assign the slave.

The slave only processes orders and telegrams which are directly addressed to it.

Communication errors

If the slave detects a communication error on receipt (parity, CRC), it does not send a response to the master (this can lead to "setpoint timeout").

Logical error

If the slave detects a logical error within a request, it responds to the master with an "exception response". In the response, the highest bit in the function code is set to 1. If the slave receives, for example, an unsupported function code from the master, the slave responds with an "exception response" with code 01 (Illegal function code).

Table 7- 34 Overview of exception codes

Exception code	Modbus name	Remark
01	Illegal function code	An unknown (not supported) function code was sent to the slave.
02	Illegal Data Address	An invalid address was requested.
03	Illegal data value	An invalid data value was detected.
04	Server failure	Slave has terminated during processing.

Maximum processing time, p2024[0]

For error-free communication, the slave response time (time within which the Modbus master expects a response to a request) must have the same value in the master and the slave (p2024[0] in the converter).

Process data monitoring time (setpoint timeout), p2040

The alarm "Setpoint timeout" (F1910) is issued by the Modbus if p2040 is set to a value > 0 ms and no process data are requested within this time period.

The alarm "Setpoint timeout" only applies for access to process data (40100, 40101, 40110, 40111). The alarm "Setpoint timeout" is not generated for parameter data (40200 … 40522).

Note

This time must be adapted depending on the number of slaves and the baud rate set for the bus (factory setting = 100 ms).

7.4.4 Communication via BACnet MS/TP

BACnet properties

In BACnet, components and systems are considered to be black boxes which contain a number of objects. BACnet objects only define behavior outside the device, internal functions are not determined by BACnet.

Each component is represented by a series of object types and their instances.

Each BACnet device has precisely one BACnet device object. A BACnet device is clearly identified by an NSAP (Network Service Access Point - comprising network number and MAC address; MAC: **M**edium **A**ccess **C**ontrol). This address is BACnet-specific and must not be confused with the Ethernet MAC address.

Data exchange with the client

The inverter receives control commands and setpoints via service instructions from the control and transmits its status back to the control. The inverter can also send telegrams automatically itself, respectively execute services, e.g. I-Am.

Communication settings

- The Control Unit supports BACnet via RS485 (BACnet MS/TP)
- The maximum cable length is 1200 m (3281 ft).

Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement

You will find the Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) in the Internet under the following link: BACnet files (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/38439094)

⚠ CAUTION

It is not permitted to change over the units!

The "Unit changeover (Page 223)" function is not permissible with this bus system!

7.4.4.1 Basic settings for communication

Setting the address

You can set the converter's MAC ID using the address switch on the CU via p2021 or in STARTER under "Control Unit/Communications/fieldbus".

Valid address range: 0 ... 127 (with address 0, the converter responds to a broadcast)

Procedure

Method	Description
Address switch	If you have specified a valid address using the address switch, this address will always be the one that takes effect and parameter p2021 cannot be changed. The positions and settings of the address switches are described in section: Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).
p2021 / STARTER	**Fieldbus address** (factory setting: 1) The setting in p2021 or via STARTER is effective only if you set all address switches to "OFF" (0).

CAUTION
For a modified bus address to be effective, you have to switch the converter and - if need be - any external 24V supply off and on.

Additional settings

P no.	Parameter name
P0015 = 21	**Macro drive unit** Selecting the I/O configuration
p2030 = 5	**Fieldbus telegram selection** 5: BACnet
p2020	**Baud rate** 6: 9600 (factory setting) 7: 19200 8: 38400 10: 76800
p2024[0 … 2]	**Processing times** P2024 [0]: 0ms … 10000ms, maximum processing time (APDU timeout), factory setting = 1000ms, P2024 [1 … 2]: No significance for BACnet

P no.	Parameter name
p2025[0…3]	**BACnet communication parameter** • p2025 [0]: 0 … 4194303, Device object instance number, Factory setting = 1 • p2025 [1]: 1 … 10, Maximum Info Frames, factory setting = 1 • p2025 [2]: 0 … 99, Number of APDU Retries (repeated attempts after fault telegrams), factory setting = 3 • p2025 [3]: 1 … 127, maximum Master address, factory setting = 127
p2026	**Setting of the COV_Increment** (COV = Change of values) 0 … 4194303.000, factory setting = 1000 COV_Increment: Value change of the "Present Value" of an object instance where an UnConfirmedCOV_Notification or ConfirmedCOV_Notification should be transferred from the server. • p2026 [0]: COV_Increment of object instance "Analog Input 0" • p2026 [1]: COV_Increment of object instance "Analog Input 1" • p2026 [2]: COV_Increment of object instance "Analog Input 10" • p2026 [3]: COV_Increment of object instance "Analog Input 11" You can use these parameters to set for which value changes an UnConfirmedCOV_Notification or ConfirmedCOV_Notification result is sent. This means that works setting 1000 sends an UnConfirmedCOV_Notification or ConfirmedCOV_Notification if the value considered (e.g. in the setting range between 0 … 10V) changes by a value of ≥ 0.1. Of course, this only applies if previously a SubscribeCOV_Service was activated for the particular object instance. You can also set the COV_Increment using the object property "COV_Increment" of the particular analog input.
p2040	**Fieldbus monitoring time** 0ms … 1999999ms, factory setting = 100ms **Note:** The factory setting for communication with BACnet is possibly too low and must be increased. Please adapt the value to the requirements and properties of your particular plant or system. The reason for the factory setting of 100ms is that the communication protocols for USS and Modbus RTU should also be executed via the RS485 interface.

7.4.4.2 Supported services and objects

BIBBs used by the converter

The BIBBs are a collection of one or several BACnet services The BACnet services are sub-divided into A and B devices. An A device operates as client and B device as server.

The converter is a server and therefore operates as B device, as "BACnet Application Specific Controller" (B-ASC).

The CU230P-2 HVAC uses the BIBBs listed below:

Table 7- 35 Overview of the BIBB used by CU230P-2 HVAC and associated services

Short designation	BIBB	Service
DS-RP-B	Data Sharing-ReadProperty-B	ReadProperty
DS-WP-B	Data Sharing-WriteProperty-B	WriteProperty
DM-DDB-B	Device Management-Dynamic Device Binding-B	• Who-Is • I-Am
DM-DOB-B	Device Management-Dynamic Object Binding-B	• Who-Has • I-Have
DM-DCC-B	Device Management-DeviceCommunicationControl-B	DeviceCommunicationControl
DS-COV-B	Data Sharing-COV-B	• SubscribeCOV, • ConfirmedCOVNotification, • UnConfirmedCOVNotification

The converter can simultaneously process up to 32 SubscribeCOV services. These can all refer to the same object instances - or different object instances.

SubscribeCOV is supported for binary value objects (BVxx) and for analog input objects (AIxx).

Note

SubscribeCOV services are not retentive, i.e. when switching off, COVs, which have not been executed, are lost and must be re-initiated when the CU restarts.

Table 7- 36 Code numbers of the object types supported in BACnet

Object type	Code number for BACnet object type
Device	8
Digital input	3
Digital output	4
Digital value	5
Analog input	0
Analog value	2

Table 7- 37 Object properties of the "Device" object type

• Object_Identifier	• Application_Software_Version	• APDU_Timeout
• Object_Name	• Protocol_Version	• Number_Of_APDU_Retries
• Object_Type	• Protocol_Revision	• Max Master
• System_Status	• Protocol_Services_Supported	• Max Info Frames
• Vendor_Name	• Protocol_Object_Types_Supported	• Device Address Binding
• Vendor_Identifier	• Object_List	• Database Revision

• Model_Name	• Max_APDU_Length_Accepted [1)]	
• Firmware_Revision	• Segmentation_Supported [2)]	

[1)] Maximum value = 480, [2)] is not supported

Table 7- 38 Object properties of other object types

Object property	Object type				
	Binary input	Binary output	Binary value	Analog input	Analog value
Object_Identifier	X	X	X	X	X
Object_Name	X	X	X	X	X
Object_Type	X	X	X	X	X
Present_Value	X	X	X	X	X
Status_Flags	X	X	X	X	X
Event_State	X	X	X	X	X
Out_Of_Service	X	X	X	X	X
Units				X	X
Priority_Array		X	X*		X*
Relinquish_Default		X	X*		X*
Polarity	X	X			
Active_Text	X	X	X		
Inactive_Text	X	X	X		
COV_Increment				X	

* for command values only (access type C)

Note

Access types are available in the following versions

- C: executable
- R: Readable
- W: Writable

Table 7- 39 Binary input objects

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Possible values	Text active / text inactive	Access type	Parameter
BI0	DI0 ACT	State of DI 0	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.0
BI1	DI1 ACT	State of DI 1	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.1
BI2	DI2 ACT	State of DI 2	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.2
BI3	DI3 ACT	State of DI 3	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.3
BI4	DI4 ACT	State of DI 4	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.4
BI5	DI5 ACT	State of DI 5	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.5

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Possible values	Text active / text inactive	Access type	Parameter
BI7	DI7 ACT	State of AI 1 - used as DI	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.11
BI8	DI8 ACT	State of AI 2 - used as DI	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	r0722.12
BI10	DO0 ACT	Controls DO 0 (relay 1)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	read r747.0
BI11	DO1 ACT	Controls DO 1 (relay 2)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	read r747.1
BI12	DO2 ACT	Status of DO2 (relay 3)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	R	read r747.2

Table 7- 40 Binary output objects

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Possible values	Text active / text inactive	Access type	Parameter
BO0	DO0 CMD	Controls DO 0 (relay 1)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	C	p0730
BO1	DO1 CMD	Controls DO 1 (relay 2)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	C	p0731
BO2	DO2 CMD	Controls DO 2 (relay 3)	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	C	p0732

Table 7- 41 Binary value objects

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Possible values	Text active	Text inactive	Access type	Para-meter
BV0	RUN/ STOP ACT	converter status regardless of command source	RUN/STOP	STOP	RUN	R	r0052.2
BV1	FWD/ REV	Direction of rotation regardless of command source	REV/ FWD	FWD	REV	R	r0052.14
BV2	FAULT ACT	Fault status of converter	FAULT/OK	FAULT	OK	R	r0052.3
BV3	WARN ACT	Warning status of converter	WARN/OK	WARN	OK	R	r0052.7
BV4	HAND/ AUTO ACT	Indicates the source of the hand/auto converter control	AUTO / MANUAL	AUTO	LOCAL	R	r0052.9
BV7	CTL OVERRIDE ACT	ACT indicates if the converter control has been transferred to BACnet override control via BV93. Note that the operator panel's "Manual" operating mode has a higher priority than the BACnet override control.	ON/OFF	0	1	R	r2032[10]
BV8	AT SET-POINT	Setpoint reached	YES/NO	YES	NO	R	r0052.8
BV9	AT MAX FREQ	Maximum speed reached	YES/NO	YES	NO	R	r0052.10
BV10	DRIVE READY	converter ready	YES/NO	YES	NO	R	r0052.1
BV15	RUN COM ACT	ACT indicates the status of the ON command, regardless of the source	YES/NO	0	1	R	r2032[0]
BV16	HIB MOD ACT	ACT means that the converter is operating in energy-saving mode.	ON/OFF	0	1	R	r2399[1]

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Possible values	Text active	Text inactive	Access type	Para-meter
BV17	ESM MOD	ACT means that the converter is operating in emergency mode.	ON/OFF	0	1	R	r3889[0]
BV20	RUN/ STOP CMD	ON command for the converter (when controlling via BACnet)	RUN/STOP	0	1	C	r0054.0
BV21	FWD/ REV CMD	Reverse direction of rotation (when controlling via BACnet)	REV/ FWD	0	1	C	r0054.11
BV22	FAULT RESET	Acknowledge fault (when controlling via BACnet)	RESET/NO	0	1	C	r0054.7
BV24	CDS	Local/Remote	Local/Remote	YES	NO	C	r0054.15
BV26	RUN ENA CMD	Enable converter operation		ENABLED	DISABLED	C	r0054.3
BV27	OFF2	OFF2 status	RUN/STOP	0	1	C	r0054.1
BV28	OFF3	OFF3 status Note: Bits r0054.4, r0054.5 and r0054.6 are also set or reset via BV28	RUN/STOP	0	1	C	r0054.2
BV50	ENABLE PID	Enable PID controller		ENABLED	DISABLED	C	p2200
BV90	LOCAL LOCK	Use HAND (operator panel) to lock converter control		LOCK	UNLOCK	C	p0806
BV93	CTL OVERRIDE CMD	converter control using BACnet override control	ON/OFF	0	1	C	r0054.10

Table 7- 42 Analog input objects

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Unit	Area	Access type	Parameter
AI0	ANALOG INPUT 0	AI0 input signal	V/mA	converter-dependent	R	r0752[0]
AI1	ANALOG INPUT 1	AI1 input signal	V/mA	converter-dependent	R	r0752[1]
AI10	ANALOG INPUT 0 SCALED	Standardized AI 0 input signal	%	converter-dependent	R	r0755[0]
AI11	ANALOG INPUT 1 SCALED	Standardized AI 1 input signal	%	converter-dependent	R	r0755[1]

Table 7- 43 Analog value objects

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Unit	Area	Access type	Parameter
AV0	OUTPUT FREQ_Hz	Output frequency (Hz)	Hz	converter-dependent	R	r0024
AV1	OUTPUT FREQ_PCT	Output frequency (%)	%	converter-dependent	R	HIW
AV2	OUTPUT SPEED	Motor speed	RPM	converter-dependent	R	r0022

Instance ID	Object name	Description	Unit	Area	Access type	Parameter
AV3	DC BUS VOLT	DC link voltage.	V	converter-dependent	R	r0026
AV4	OUTPUT VOLT	Output voltage	V	converter-dependent	R	r0025
AV5	CURRENT	Motor current	A	converter-dependent	R	r0027
AV6	TORQUE	Motor torque	Nm	converter-dependent	R	r0031
AV7	POWER	Motor power	kW	converter-dependent	R	r0032
AV8	DRIVE TEMP	Heat-sink temperature	°C	converter-dependent	R	r0037
AV9	MOTOR TEMP	Measured or calculated motor temperature	°C	converter-dependent	R	r0035
AV10	KWH (NR)	Cumulative converter energy consumption (cannot be reset!)	kWh	converter-dependent	R	r0039
AV12	INV RUN TIME (R)	Motor's operating hours (is reset by entering "0")	h	0 … 4294967295	W	p0650
AV13	INV Model	Code number of Power Module	---	converter-dependent	R	r0200
AV14	INV FW VER	Firmware version	---	converter-dependent	R	r0018
AV15	INV POWER	Rated power of the converter	kW	converter-dependent	R	r0206
AV16	RPM STPT 1	converter's reference speed	RPM	6.0 … 210000	W	p2000
AV17	FREQ STPT PCT	Setpoint 1 (when controlling via BACnet)	%	-199.99 … 199.99	C	HSW
AV18	ACT FAULT	Fault number of fault due to be dealt with	---	converter-dependent	R	r0947[0]
AV19	PREV FAULT 1	Fault number of last fault	---	converter-dependent	R	r0947[1]
AV20	PREV FAULT 2	Fault number of last but one fault	---	converter-dependent	R	r0947[2]
AV21	PREV FAULT 3	Fault number of the third from last fault	---	converter-dependent	R	r0947[3]
AV22	PREV FAULT 4	Fault number of the fourth from last fault	---	converter-dependent	R	r0947[4]
AV25	Select Setpoint Source	Command to select the setpoint source	---	0 … 32767	W	p1000
AV28	AO1 ACT	Signal from AO 1	mA	converter-dependent	R	r0774.0
AV29	AO2 ACT	Signal from AO 1	mA	converter-dependent	R	r0774.1
AV30	MIN SPEED	Minimum speed	RPM	0.000 – 19500.000	W	p1080
AV31	MAX FREQ	Maximum speed	RPM	0.000 … 210000.000	W	p1082
AV32	ACCEL TIME	Rampup time	s	0.00 … 999999.0	W	p1120
AV33	DECEL TIME	Ramp-down time	s	0.00 … 999999.0	W	P1121
AV34	CUR LIM	Current limit	A	converter-dependent	R	p0640
AV39	ACT WARN	Indication of pending alarm	---	converter-dependent	R	r2110[0]
AV40	PREV WARN 1	Indication of the last alarm	---	converter-dependent	R	r2110[1]
AV41	PREV WARN 2	Indication of the last but one alarm	---	converter-dependent	R	r2110[2]

7.4.5 Communication via P1

P1 is an asynchronous master-slave communication between what is known as a Field Cabinet (master) and the FLN devices (slaves). FLN stands for "Floor level network".

The master individually addresses the various slaves. A slave responds only if the master addresses it. Communication between the slaves is not possible.

A Field Cabinet can have several FLN ports. You can connect up to 32 FLN devices to each FLN port (slaves).

Settings in the control

In the Field Cabinet, for each slave you must install what is known as a "Logical controller (LCTR) point". In addition, in the Field Cabinet you must define the "Point numbers" for communication.

An overview of the "Point Numbers" is provided on the following pages.

Settings in the converter

After you have completed the basic commissioning, you must set the following P1-specific parameters in the converter.

Parameter	Description
p2030 = 8	**Communication protocol for P1.** With this setting, parameters p2020 and p2021 are set as follows: • p2020 = 5: Baud rate 4800 bit/s, alternative setting option for P1: p2020 = 6 (9600 bits/s) • P2021 = 1 … **99:** Slave address (factory setting = 99). If a valid address via the address switch is set, this address is always accepted. The address set via p2021 or STARTER becomes effective only if the address set via the address switch lies outside the valid range. In order that the settings for the baud rate and the bus address are accepted, you must carry out a power reset (converter OFF/ON).
p0840 = 2090.0	Wire **ON/OFF1** to control word 1 bit 0
p0852 = 2090.3	Wire the signal for "**Enable operation**" to control word 1 bit 3
p1070 = 2050.1	Connect the signal for the **main setpoint** to the communication interface
p2103.0 = 2090.7	Connect the first signal source for **fault acknowledgment** to the communication interface
p2051.0 = 52.0	Send status word via the communication interface
p2051.1 = 63.0	Send speed actual value via the communication interface
p0971 = 1	Permanently save the settings in the converter

Note

Address 99 (to all)

Telegrams with the address 99 are answered by all FLN devices irrespective of their address.

Overview

The subsequently listed "Point Numbers" for communication are defined using P1 in the converter. The values listed in the tables refer to SI units.

English terms are commonly used for communication via P1. This is the reason that these are not translated in this manual.

Point No.	Descriptor	Default/ factory	Units	Slope	Inter-cept	Subpt. Type	IO Type	On Text / Range	Off Text	CU Param / Word Type
1	CTLR ADDRESS	99	--	1	0	2	LAO_255	0 ... 255		p2021
2	APPLICATION	2722	--	1	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 32767		p8998[0]
3	FREQ OUTPUT	0	HZ	0.04	-650	1*)	LAI_32k	-650 ... 650		r0024
5	SPEED	0	RPM	1	-16250	1*)	LAI_32k	-16250 ... 16250		r0022
6	CURRENT	0	A	0.05	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 1638.4		r0027
7	TORQUE	0	NM	0.2	-3250	1*)	LAI_32k	-3250 ... 3250		r0031
8	ACTUAL PWR	0	KW	0.01	0	1	LAI_32k	0 ... 327.67		r0032
9	TOTAL KWH	0	KWH	1	0	1	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0039
13	DC BUS VOLTS	0	V	1	0		LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0026
14	REFERENCE	0	HZ	0.04	-650		LAI_32k	-650 ... 650		r0020
16	RATED PWR	0	KW	0.01	0		LAI_32k	0 ... 327.67		r0206
17	OUTPUT VOLTS	0	V	1	0		LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0025
20	OVRD TIME	1	HRS	1	0	2	LAO_255	0 ... 255		p8998[1]
21	AR MAX FREQ	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	MAX	NO	ZSW:10
22	CMD FWD REV	0	--	1	0	1	LDO	REV	FWD	STW:11
23	FWD REV	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	FWD	REV	ZSW:14
24	CMD START	0	--	1	0	1	LDO	START	STOP	STW:0
25	STOP RUN	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	RUN	STOP	ZSW:2
26	CONTROL MODE	1	--	1	0	1	LDI	SERIAL	LOCAL	ZSW:9
28	READY TO RUN	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	READY	OFF	ZSW:1
29	DAY NIGHT	0	--	1	0	1	LDO	NIGHT	DAY	p8998[2]
30	CURRENT LMT	0.0	PCT	0.1	10.0	2	LAO_4k	0 ... 400		p0640
31	ACCEL TIME 1	10.00	SEC	0.02	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 650.00		p1120
32	DECEL TIME 1	10.00	SEC	0.02	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 650.00		p1121
34	HAND AUTO	0	--	1	0	2	LDI	HAND	AUTO	r0807.0

Point No.	Descriptor	Default/ factory	Units	Slope	Inter-cept	Subpt. Type	IO Type	On Text	Off Text	CU Param / Word Type
								Range		
35	RUN ENABLE	1	--	1	0	1	LDO	ENABLE	OFF	STW:3
36	ENABLED	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	ZSW:0
40	DIGITAL OUT 1	0	--		0	2	LDO	ON	OFF	p0730 / r747.0
41	DIGITAL OUT 2	0	--	1	0	2	LDO	ON	OFF	p0731 / r747.1
42	DIGITAL OUT 3	0	--	1	0	2	LDO	ON	OFF	p0732 / r747.2
45	ANALOG IN 1	0	PCT	0.1	-300.0	1*)	LAI_32k	-300 ... 300		r0755[0]
46	ANALOG IN 2	0	PCT	0.1	-300.0	1*)	LAI_32k	-300 ... 300		r0755[1]
47	ANALOG OUT 1	0	PCT	0.1	-100.0	1	LAI_32k	-100 ... 100		r0774[0]
48	ANALOG OUT 2	0	PCT	0.1	-100.0	1	LAI_32k	-100 ... 100		r0774[1]
51	FREQ REF	0	PCT	0.0061035515	0	1*)	LAO_32k	0 ... 100		HSW
52	FREQ ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.012207031	-100.0	1*)	LAI_32k	-100.0 ... 100.0		HIW
53	FREQ MAX	3000.00	HZ	0.02	1.00	1	LAO_32k	0.10 ... 650.00		p2000 1/min à Hz
55	PID SP REF	0	PCT	0.024414063	-200.0	1	LAO_32k	-200.0 ... 200.0		p2240
56	PID SP OUT	0	PCT	0.012207031	-100.0	1	LAI_32k	-100.0 ... 100.0		r2250
57	PID UP LMT	100.0	PCT	0.024414063	-200.0	1	LAO_32k	-200.0 ... 200.0		p2291
58	PID LO LMT	0	PCT	0.024414063	-200.0	1	LAO_32k	-200.0 ... 200.0		p2292
59	PID OUTPUT	0	PCT	0.012207031	0	1	LAI_32k	-100.0 ... 100.0		r2294
60	PI FEEDBACK	0	PCT	0.012207031	-100.0	1*)	LAI_32k	-100.0 ... 100.0		r2266
61	P GAIN	1.000	--	0.01	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 100.00		p2280
62	I GAIN	0	SEC	0.002	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 60.00		p2285
63	D GAIN	0	--	0.002	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 60.00		p2274
64	ENABLE PID	0	--	1	0	2	LDO	ON	OFF	p2200
66	FEEDBK GAIN	100.0	PCT	0.02	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 500.00		p2269
68	LOW PASS	0	--	0.01	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 60.00		p2265
71	DIGITAL IN 0	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.0

Point No.	Descriptor	Default/ factory	Units	Slope	Inter-cept	Subpt. Type	IO Type	On Text	Off Text	CU Param / Word Type
								Range		
72	DIGITAL IN 1	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.1
73	DIGITAL IN 2	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.2
74	DIGITAL IN 3	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.3
75	DIGITAL IN 4	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.4
76	DIGITAL IN 5	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	ON	OFF	r0722.5
80	WDOG TIME	100	MS	10	0	2	LAO_8k	0 ... 65530		p2040
83	INVERTER VER	Apr 50	--	0.01	0	2	LAI_32k	00.00 ... 99.99		r0018
84	DRIVE MODEL	0	--	1	0	2	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0200
85	1st USER PARAMETER	0	--	1	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 32767		p0013[0]
86	2nd USER PARAMETER	0	--	1	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 32767		p0013[1]
87	3rd USER PARAMETER	0	--	1	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 32767		p0013[2]
88	4th USER PARAMETER	0	--	1	0	2	LAO_32k	0 ... 32767		p0013[3]
89	Finish of USER PARAMETER transfer	0	--	1	0	2	LDO	START	READY	p0016
90	ACTIVE FAULT	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0947[0]
91	1ST FAULT	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0947[1]
92	2ND FAULT	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0947[2]
93	3RD FAULT	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r0947[3]
94	FAULT	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	FAULT	OK	ZSW:3
95	FAULT ACK	0	--	1	0	1	LDO	ON	OFF	STW:7
96	WARNING	0	--	1	0	1	LDI	WARN	OK	ZSW:7
97	ACTIVE WARNING	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_32k	0 ... 32767		r2110[0]
98	RAM TO ROM	0	--	1	0	1	LDO	SAVE	DONE	p971/ p10=30
99	ERROR STATUS	0	--	1	0	1*)	LAI_255	0 ... 255		r947[0]

1*): For reasons of compatibility, these type 1 subpoints can save COV area information.
Point Number 98 RAM TO ROM was implemented in order to be able to save these in a non-volatile fashion.

7.5 Communication over CANopen

Connecting an inverter to a CAN bus

Connect the inverter to the fieldbus via the 9-pin SUB-D pin connector.

The connections of this pin connector are short-circuit proof and isolated. If the inverter forms the first or last slave in the CANopen network, then you must switch-in the bus terminating resistor.

For additional information on the SUB-D pin connector and on the bus terminating resistor, please refer to Section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).

Integrating the converter into CANopen

We recommend the following procedure to integrate the converter into CANopen:

1. Setting the node ID and baud rate
2. Monitoring the communication and response of the inverter (Page 154) set
3. Integrating the converter into CAN using the Predefined Connection Set
4. if required, make additional specific changes using the free PDO mapping.
5. Adapting the BiCo interconnection

Note

In the configuration example (Page 176) you can find a detailed description of how you integrate the converter into a CANopen system.

More information about how to configure the communication is provided in Sections Other CANopen functions (Page 166) and Object directories (Page 168).

General information on CAN

You can find general information on CAN in the CAN Internet pages (http://www.can-cia.org); you can obtain an explanation of CAN terminology in the CANdictionary under CAN downloads (http://www.can-cia.org/index.php?id=6).

The EDS file is the description file of the SINAMICS G120 converter for CANopen networks.

If you load the EDS file into your CAN controller, you can use the objects of the DSP 402 device profile.

1. You can find the EDS file of the converter inInternet (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/48351511).

In Section Configuration example (Page 176), you can find an example of how you can integrate the converter into a CAN controller using the EDS.

7.5.1 CANopen functionality of the converter

CANopen is a CAN-based communication protocol with linear topology that operates on the basis of communication objects (COB).

Communication between the converter and control can be established via Predefined connection set (Page 164) or via Free PDO mapping (Page 164)

Communication objects (COB)

The converter operates with communication objects from the following profiles:

- CANopen communication profile DS 301 version 4.0
- Device profile DSP 402 (drives and motion control) version 2.0
- Indicator profile DR303-3 version 1.0.

Specifically, these are:

- SDO
  Service data objects for reading and changing parameters
- PDO
  Process data objects to transfer process data, TPDO to send, RPDO to receive
- NMT
  Network management objects (NMT) for controlling CANopen communication and for monitoring the individual nodes on the basis of a master-slave relationship.
- SYNC
  Synchronization objects
- EMCY
  Time stamp and fault messages

COB ID

A communication object includes data – which is transferred – and an 11 bit COB-ID, which uniquely identifies it. The priority when executing the communication objects is controlled using the COB-ID. The communication object with the lowest COB-ID always has the highest priority.

COB ID for individual communication objects

You will find the specifications for the COB IDs of the individual communication objects below

- **COB ID_{NMT} = 0** cannot be changed
- **COB ID_{SYNC} = free** in most cases, this is preassigned with 80 hex
- **COB ID_{EMCY} = free** In most of the cases, COB ID_{SYNC} + node-ID = COB-ID_{EMCY}
- **COB-ID_{TPDO}= free** In the free PDO mapping *)
- **COB-ID_{RPDO}= free** In the free PDO mapping *)
- **COB ID_{TSDO}** = 580 + Node-ID
- **COB ID_{RSDO}** = 600 + Node-ID
- **COB $ID_{Node\ Guarding/Heartbeat}$**= 700 + Node-ID

*) COB-ID for RPDO and TPDO for the "Predefined Connection Set", seePage (Page 164).

7.5.2 Commissioning CANopen

7.5.2.1 Setting the node ID and baud rate

In the converter you must set the node ID and the baud rate to permit communication.

CAUTION
Changes made to the node ID or baud rate only become effective after switching off and on again. It is particularly important that any external 24 V supply is switched off. Note that before turning off, you must save the changes using RAM -> ROM (). The currently active Node ID is displayed in parameter r8621.

Setting the node ID

You can define the node ID either using the address switch on the CU via parameter p8620 or in STARTER in the screen form under "Control Unit/Communications/CAN" under the CAN interface tab.

Valid address range: 1 … 126

When a valid node ID has been set using the address switches, then this is always effective and p8620 cannot be changed.

If you set all address switches to "OFF" (0) or "ON" (1), specify the node ID via p8620 or STARTER.

The positions and settings of the address switches are described in section Interfaces, connectors, switches, control terminals, LEDs on the CU (Page 46).

Setting the data transmission rate

You can set the transmission rate in the range from 10 kbit/s … 1 Mbit/s using parameter p8622 or in the STARTER screen form "Control Unit/Communication/CAN" under the CAN interface tab.

7.5.2.2 Monitoring the communication and response of the inverter

The communication monitoring can be used via both node guarding and heartbeat protocol (heartbeat producer).

Node guarding

The master sends monitoring queries to the slaves via the node guarding protocol.

If the converter does not receive a Node Guarding protocol within the Life Time, then it outputs fault (F08700).

Life Time = Guard time (p8601.0) * Life Time Factor (p8604.1)

Heartbeat

The slave periodically sends heartbeat messages. Other slaves and the master can monitor this message. If a heartbeat goes missing, then appropriate responses can be set in the master.

The settings for the heartbeat protocol are made in parameter p8606.

Note

Note

Node guarding and heartbeat are mutually interlocked. This means that if the parameter for one of these functions is not equal to 0, then the other cannot be used.

Both functions are deactivated in the factory setting.

Converter response to a bus fault - CAN controller state "Bus off" (converter fault F8700, fault value 1)

If you acknowledge the bus fault using OFF/ON, the bus OFF state is also canceled and communication is restarted.

If you acknowledge the bus fault via DI 2 or directly via p3981, then the converter remains in the bus OFF state. To restart communication, in this case, you must set p8608 to 1.

⚠ WARNING

If you acknowledge the bus fault via DI 2 or directly via p3981 - and p8641 is set to 0 (for a bus fault, the converter does not go into a fault condition), then you must restart communication via p8608 = 1 before you can stop the motor via the control.

7.5.2.3 SDO services

You can access the object directory of the connected drive unit using the SDO services. An SDO connection is a peer-to-peer coupling between an SDO client and a server.

The drive unit with its object directory is an SDO server.

The identifiers for the SDO channel of a drive unit are defined according to CANopen as follows.

Receiving:	Server <= Client:	COB ID = 600 hex + node ID
Transmitting:	Server => Client:	COB ID = 580 hex + node ID

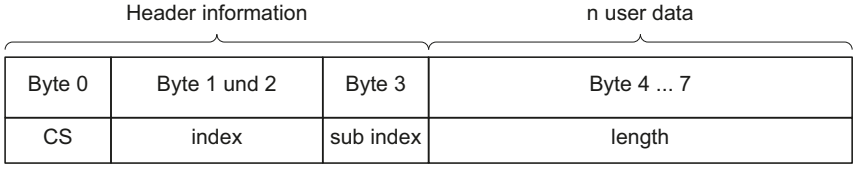
Properties

The SDOs have the following properties:

- SDO are transferred in the Preoperational and Operational states
- The transfer is confirmed
- Transfer is asynchronous (corresponds to acyclic data exchange for PROFIBUS DB)
- Transmission of values > 4 bytes (normal transfer)
- Transmission of values ≤ 4 bytes (expedited transfer)
- All drive unit parameters can be addressed via SDO.

Structure of the SDO protocols

The SDO services use the appropriate protocol depending on the task. The basic structure is shown below:



- The protocol type is contained in byte 0:
  - 2F hex: write 4 bytes
  - 2B hex: write 3 bytes
  - 27 hex: write 2 bytes
  - 23 hex: write 1 byte
  - 40 hex: read request
  - 4F hex: read 4 bytes
  - 4B hex: read 3 bytes
  - 47 hex: read 2 bytes
  - 43 hex: read 1 byte
  - 60 hex: write acknowledgment
  - 80 hex: error
- Bytes 1 and 2 contain the index (SINAMICS parameter number)
- Byte 3 contains the subindex (SINAMICS parameter index)
- Bytes 4 … 7 contain the data corresponding to the second position of byte 0. In the case of an error, these bytes contain the abort code

SDO abort codes

Table 7- 44 SDO abort codes

Abort code	Description
0503 0000h	Toggle bit not alternated. Toggle bit has not changed
0504 0000h	SDO protocol timed out. Timeout for SDO protocol
0504 0001h	Client/server command specifier not valid or unknown. Client/server command not valid or unknown
0504 0005h	Out of memory. Memory overflow
0601 0000h	Unsupported access to an object. Access to an object that is not supported

0601 0001h	Attempt to read a write only object. An attempt is made to read a "write-only object"
0601 0002h	Attempt to write a read only object. An attempt is made to write to a "read-only object"
0602 0000h	Object does not exist in the object dictionary. Object does not exist in an object dictionary
0604 0041h	Object cannot be mapped to the PDO. Object cannot be linked with the PDO
0604 0042h	The number and length of the objects to be mapped would exceed PDO length. The number and length of the objects that are to be linked exceeds the PDO length
0604 0043h	General parameter incompatibility reason. Basic parameter incompatibility
0604 0047h	General internal incompatibility in the device. Basic incompatibility in the device
0602 0000h	Object does not exist in the object dictionary. Object does not exist in an object dictionary
0604 0041h	Object cannot be mapped to the PDO. Object cannot be linked with the PDO
0604 0042h	The number and length of the objects to be mapped would exceed PDO length. The number and length of the objects that are to be linked exceeds the PDO length
0604 0043h	General parameter incompatibility reason. Basic parameter incompatibility
0604 0047h	General internal incompatibility in the device. Basic incompatibility in the device
0606 0000h	Access failed due to an hardware error. Access has failed due to a hardware fault
0607 0010h	Data type does not match, length of service parameter does not match. Data type and length of the service parameter do not match
0607 0012h	Data type does not match, length of service parameter too high. Data type is not correct, service parameter is too long
0607 0013h	Data type does not match, length of service parameter too low. Data type is not correct, service parameter is too short
0609 0011h	Subindex does not exist Subindex does not exist
0609 0030h	Value range of parameter exceeded (only for write access). Value range of the parameter exceeded (only for write access)
0609 0031h	Value of parameter written too high. Subindex does not exist
0609 0032h	Value of parameter written too low. Value of written parameter too low
0609 0036h	Maximum value is less than minimum value. Maximum value is less than the minimum value
0800 0000h	General error. General error

0800 0020h	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application. Data cannot be transferred or saved in the application
0800 0021h	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application because of local control. Data cannot be transferred or saved due to the local control
0800 0022h	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application because of the current device state. Data cannot be transferred or saved due to the device condition
0800 0023h	Object dictionary dynamic generation failed or no object dictionary is present (e.g. object dictionary is generated from file and generation fails because of a file error). Dynamic creation of the object dictionary failed - or an object dictionary does not exist (e.g. object directory was generated from a defective file)

7.5.2.4 Access to SINAMICS parameters via SDO

If you wish to change inverter parameters in CANopen using the control, then use the service data objects (SDO). SDO are transferred in the operational as well as in the pre-operational states.

You can also configure RPDO and TPDO telegrams via SDO. You can find the objects that are available to do this in Section Object directories (Page 168).

Adapting the parameter numbers

The inverter parameters can be addressed via the SDO parameter channel in the range from 2000 hex ... 470F hex of the CANopen object directory.

Not all of the parameters can be directly addressed via this range. This is the reason that in CAN, an inverter parameter always comprises two parameters from the inverter; these are the offset specified using parameter p8630[2] and the parameter itself.

- for all parameters < 9999 the following applies:
  - p8630[2] = 0,
  - Inverter parameters -> hex + 2000 hex

    Example: For parameter p0010, 200A hex follows as object number in the SDO job
- for all parameters 9999 < 19999 the following applies:
  - p8630[2] = 1,
  - (inverter parameters - 10000) -> hex + 2000 hex

    Example: For parameter p11000, 23E8 hex follows as object number in the SDO job

- for all parameters 19999 < 29999 the following applies:
  - p8630[2] = 2,
  - (inverter parameters - 20000) -> hex + 2000 hex

    Example: For parameter r20001, 2001 hex follows as object number in the SDO job
- for all parameters 29999 < 39999, the following applies:
  - p8630[2] = 3,
  - (inverter parameters - 30000) -> hex + 2000 hex

    Example: For parameter p31020, 23FC hex follows as object number in the SDO job

Selection, index range

Further, no more than 255 indices can be transferred in a CANopen object. This means that additional CANopen objects must be created for parameters that have more indices. This is realized using p8630[1]. It is possible to transfer a maximum of 1024 indices.

- P8630[1] = 0: 0 … 255
- P8630[1] = 1: 256 … 511
- P8630[1] = 2: 512 … 767
- P8630[1] = 3: 768 … 1023

Accessing CANopen objects and inverter parameters

- p8630[0] = 0: only accessing CANopen objects (SDO, PDO, ...)
- p8630[0] = 1: Access to virtual CANopen objects (inverter parameters)
- p8630[0] = 2: not relevant for G120 inverters

7.5.2.5 PDO and PDO services

Process data objects (PDO)

For CANopen, (real-time) transfer of process data is realized using "Process Data Objects" (PDO). There are send and receive PDO. With the G120 inverter, eight send PDO (TPDO) and eight receive PDO (RPDO) are transferred.

A PDO is defined by the PDO communication parameter and the PDO mapping parameter.

The PDO must be linked with the objects of the object dictionary which contain process data. You can use Free PDO mapping (Page 164) or the Predefined connection set (Page 164) to do this.

Note

Changing over between an interconnection via free PDO mapping and Predefined Connection Set

For changing over from free PDO mapping (factory setting) to mapping via the Predefined Connection Set you require parameters p8744 and p8741 from the expert list.

You can select the method of the interconnection using p8744 (p8744 = 0: Free PDO mapping, p8744 = 1: Predefined Connection Set), with p8741 =1 you confirm the transfer. After transfer, p8741 returns to 0.

Parameter area for PDO

- RPDO
  - In the inverter: p8700 … p8717
  - In CAN: 1400 hex ff
- TPDO
  - In the inverter: p8720 … p8737
  - In CAN: 1800 hex ff

Note

One channel in the CAN controller is assigned for each RPDO. TPDO always use two permanently set channels in the CAN controller

The structure of this communication and mapping parameter is listed in the following tables.

Table 7- 45 PDO communications parameter
RPDO: 1400h ff (p8700 … 8707), TPDO: 1800h ff (p8720 … p8727)

Subindex	Name	Data type	Parameter index (inverter)
00h	Highest subindex that is supported	UNSIGNED8	---
01h	COB ID	UNSIGNED32	0
02h	Transfer mode	UNSIGNED8	1
03h	Inhibit time (only for TPDO)	UNSIGNED16	2
04h	Reserved (only for TPDO)	UNSIGNED8	3
05h	Event timer (only for TPDO)	UNSIGNED16	4

Table 7- 46 PDO mapping parameter
RPDO: 1600h ff (p8710 … 8717), TPDO: 1A00h ff (p8730 … p8730)

Subindex	Name	Data type	Parameter index (inverter)
00h	Number of objects mapped to the PDO (max. 4)	UNSIGNED8	---
01h	First mapped object	UNSIGNED32	0
02h	Second mapped object	UNSIGNED32	1
03h	Third mapped object	UNSIGNED32	2
04h	Fourth mapped object	UNSIGNED32	3

For process data objects, the following transfer types are available, which you set in index 1 of the communication parameter (p8700 … p8707 / p8720 … p8727) in the inverter.

- Synchronous cyclic (index 1: n = 1 … 240) - for TPDO (Transmit PDO) and RPDO (Receive PDO):
  - TPDO is sent after each nth SYNC
  - RPDO is received after each nth SYNC
- Synchronous acyclic (index 1: 0) - for TPDO
  - TPDO is sent if a SYNC is received and a process data has changed in the telegram.
- asynchronous cyclic (index 1: 254, 255 + event time) - for TPDO
  - TPDO is sent if process data has changed in the telegram.
- asynchronous acyclic (index 1: 254, 255) - for TPDO and RPDO
  - TPDO is sent if process data has changed in the telegram.
  - RPDO is directly accepted when it is received.

Synchronous data transmission

In order for the devices on the CANopen bus to remain synchronized during transmission, a synchronization object (SYNC object) must be transmitted at periodic intervals.

Each PDO that is transferred as a synchronous object must be assigned a transmission type 1 ... n. The following is applicable:

- Transmission type 1: the PDO is transferred in every SYNC cycle.
- Transmission type n: the PDO is transferred in every nth SYNC cycle.

The following diagram shows the principle of synchronous and asynchronous transmission:

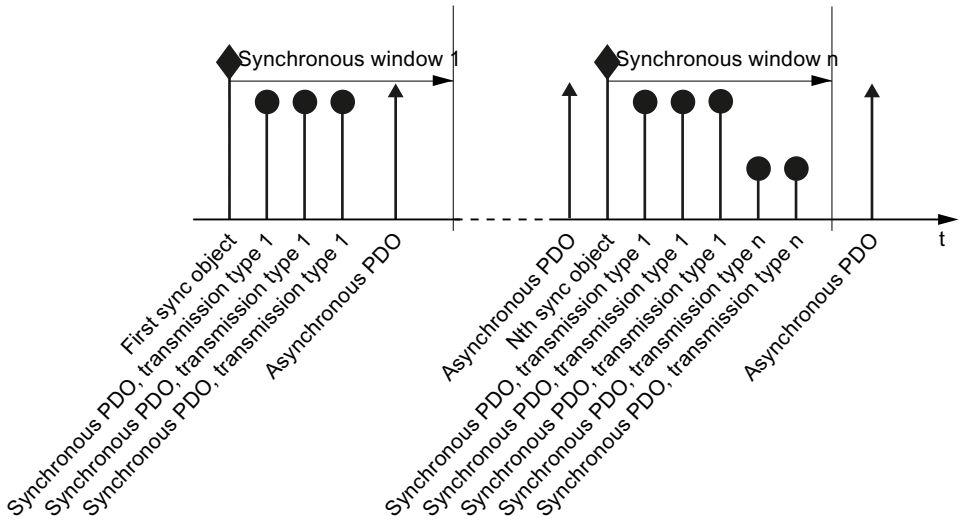


Figure 7-17 Principle of synchronous and asynchronous transmission

For synchronous TPDOs, the transmission mode also identifies the transmission rate as a factor of the SYNC object transmission intervals. Here, transmission type "1" means that the message will be transmitted in every SYNC object cycle. Transmission type "n" means that the message will be transmitted in every nth SYNC object cycle.

Data from synchronous RPDOs that are received after a SYNC signal is not transmitted to the application until after the next SYNC signal.

Note

The SYNC signal does not synchronize the applications in the SINAMICS drive, only the communication on the CANopen bus

Asynchronous data transmission

Asynchronous PDOs are transferred - cyclically or acyclically - without reference to the SYNC signal.

PDO services

The PDO services can be subdivided as follows:

- Write PDO
- Read PDO
- SYNC service

Write PDO

The "Write PDO" service is based on the "push" model. The PDO has exactly one producer. There can be no consumer, one consumer, or multiple consumers.

Via Write PDO, the producer of the PDO sends the data of the mapped application object to the individual consumer.

Read PDO

The "Read PDO" service is based on the "pull" model. The PDO has exactly one producer. There can be one consumer or multiple consumers.

Via Read PDO, the consumer of the PDO receives the data of the mapped application object from the producer.

SYNC service

The SYNC object is periodically sent from the SYNC producer. The SYNC signal represents the basic network cycle. The time interval between two SYNC signals is determined in the master by the standard parameter "Communication cycle time".

In order to ensure CANopen accesses in real-time, the SYNC object has a high priority, which is defined using the COB ID. This can be changed via p8602 (factory setting = 80hex). The service runs unconfirmed.

Note

The COB ID of the SYNC object must be set to the same value for all nodes of a bus that should respond to the SYNC telegram from the master

The COB ID of the SYNC object is defined in object 1005h (p8602).

7.5.2.6 Predefined connection set

When integrating the converter via the predefined connection set, the converter is interconnected so that the motor can be switched-on via the control and a setpoint can be entered without having to make any additional settings or requiring CANopen know-how. The converter returns the status word and the speed actual value to the control.

In the factory, the converter is set to free PDO mapping. Changeover to the Predefined Connection Set, see Section PDO and PDO services (Page 160).

Once you have made the settings for the predefined connection set, then in the screen form "Control Unit/Communication/CAN", select the Operational status under the Network-Management tab. You can then switch-on the motor from the control and enter a setpoint.

Data, which you transfer using the predefined connection set

- TPDO 1 with Control word 1
- RPDO 1 with Status word 1
- TPDO 2 with Control word 1 and speed setpoint
- RPDO 2 with Status word 1 and speed actual value

The COB IDs are calculated according to the following formula and entered into parameters p8700, p8701, p8720 and 8721.

COB-Id for TPDO and RPDO in the Predefined Connection Set

- **COB-ID**$_{TPDO}$ = 180 hex + Node-ID + ((TPDO-No. - 1) * 100 hex)

  Example: COB-ID of the TPDO 2, (Node ID = C hex)
  180 hex + C hex + ((2 - 1)*100 hex) = 18C hex + 100 hex = 28C hex is required
- **COB ID**$_{RPDO}$ = 200 hex + Node-ID + ((RPDO-No. - 1) * 100 hex)

  Example: COB-ID of the 3rd RPDO, (Node ID = C hex)
  200 hex + C hex + ((2 - 1) * 100 hex) = 20C hex + 100 hex = 30C hex is required

7.5.2.7 Free PDO mapping

Using the free PDO mapping, you can interconnect additional process data from the object directory corresponding to the requirements of your particular system for the PDO service.

In the factory, the converter is set to free PDO mapping. If your converter has been changed over to the Predefined Connection Set, you must change over to free PDO mapping, see Section PDO and PDO services (Page 160).

A PDO can transfer up to eight bytes of user data. With mapping, you define which user data are transferred in a PDO.

Example

The following diagram shows an example of PDO mapping (values are hexadecimal (e.g. object size 10 hex = 16 bits)):

For the control word and the setpoint speed

p08711[0] = 6040

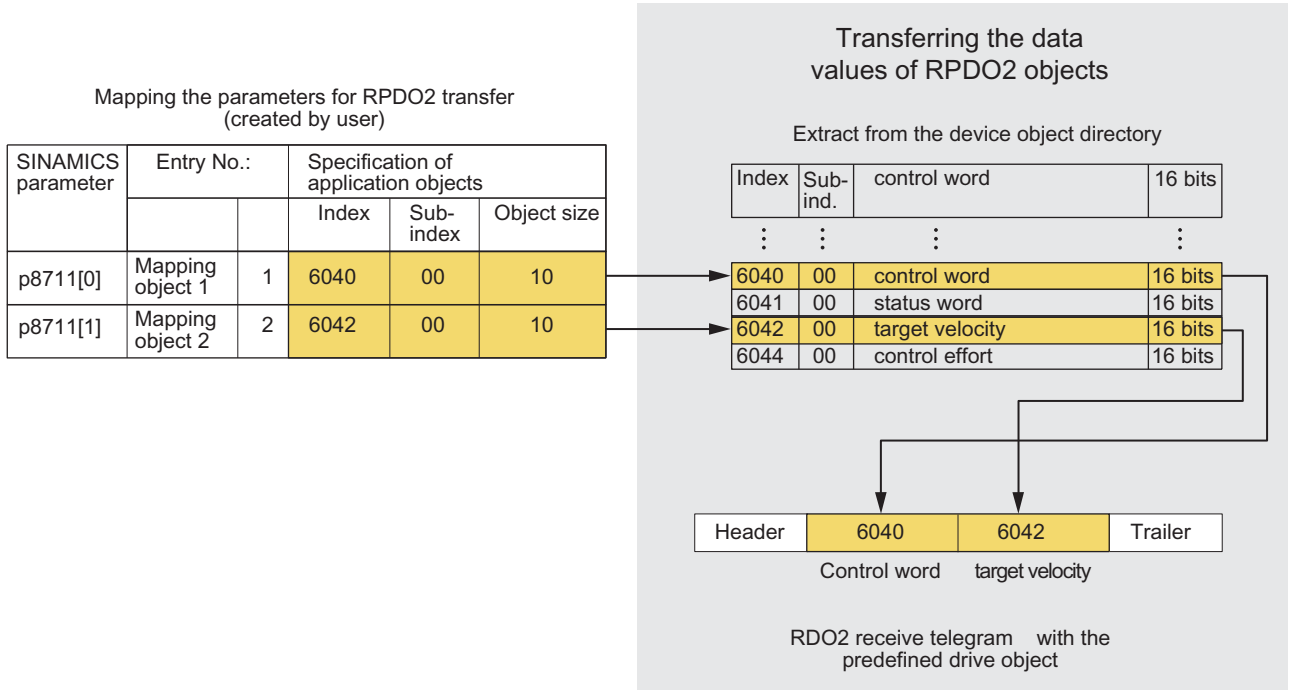


Figure 7-18 PDO mapping for control word and speed setpoint

7.5.3 Other CANopen functions

7.5.3.1 Network management (NMT service)

Network management (NMT) is node-oriented and has a master-slave topology.

The NMT services can be used to initialize, start, monitor, reset, or stop nodes. Two data bytes follow each NMT service. All NMT services have the COB ID = 0. This cannot be changed.

The SINAMICS converter is an NMT slave and can adopt the following states in CANopen:

- Initializing
  The converter passes through this state after Power On. In the factory setting, the converter then enters the "Pre-Operational" state, which also corresponds to the CANopen standard.
  Using p8684, you can set that after the bus has booted, the converter does not go into the "Pre-Operational" state, but instead, into the "Stopped" or "Operational" state.
- Pre-Operational
  In this state, the node cannot process any process data (PDO). It can, however, be parameterized or operated via SDOs, which means that you can also enter setpoints via SDO.
- Operational
  In this state, the node can process both SDO and PDO.
- Stopped
  In this state, the node cannot process either PDO or SDO. The Stopped mode is exited by specifying one of the following commands:
  - Enter Pre-Operational
  - Start Remote Node
  - Reset Node
  - Reset Communication

The NMT recognizes the following transitional states:

- Start Remote Node:
  command for switching from the "Pre-Operational" communication status to "Operational". The drive can only transmit and receive process data (PDO) in "Operational" status.
- Stop Remote Node
  command for switching from "Pre-Operational" or "Operational" to "Stopped". The node can only process NMT commands in the "Stopped" status.
- Enter Pre-Operational
  command for switching from "Operational" or "Stopped" to "Pre-Operational". In this state, the node cannot process any process data (PDO). It can, however, be parameterized or operated via SDOs, which means that you can also enter setpoints via SDO.

- Reset Node:
  command for switching from "Operational", "Pre-Operational", or "Stopped" to "Initialization". When the Reset Node command is issued, all the objects (1000 hex - 9FFF hex) are reset to the status that was present after "Power On".
- Reset Communication:
  command for switching from "Operational", "Pre-Operational", or "Stopped" to "Initialization". When the Reset Communication command is issued, all communication objects (1000 hex - 1FFF hex) are reset to the status that was present after "Power On".

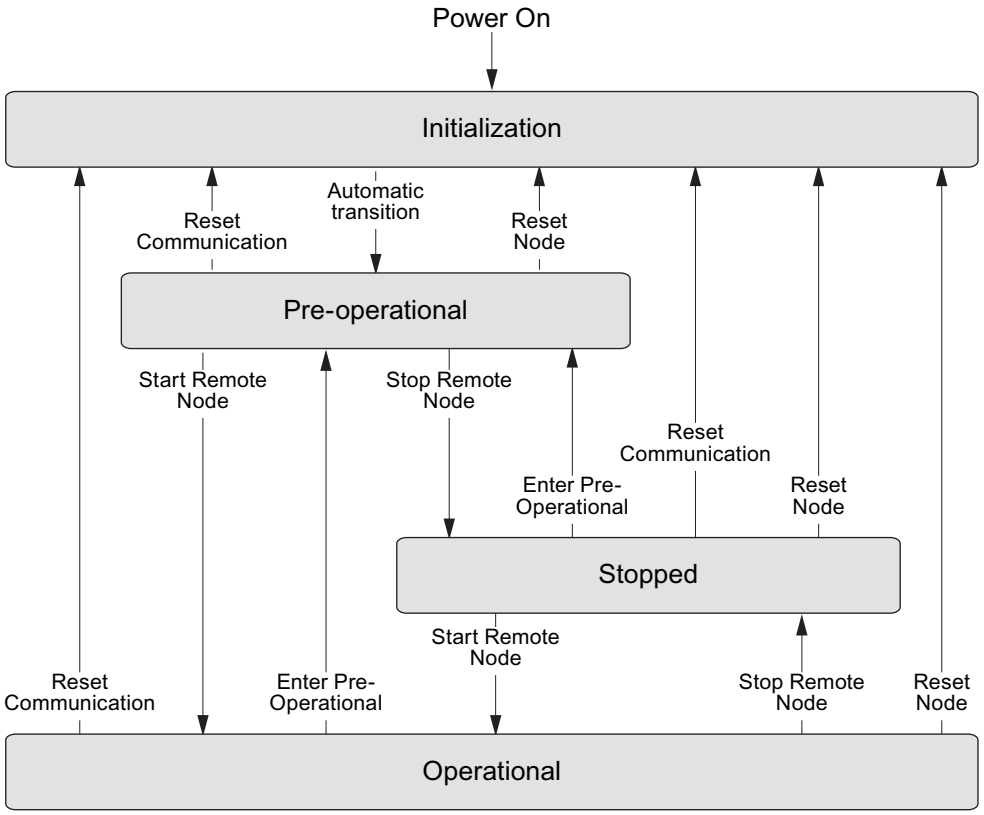


Figure 7-19 CANopen status diagram

The transition states and addressed nodes are displayed using the command specifier and the Node_ID:

Table 7- 47 Overview of NMT commands

NMT Master Request ----> NMT Slave message		
Command	**Byte 0 (command specifier, CS)**	**Byte 1**
Start	1 (01hex)	Node ID of the addressed node
Stop	2 (02hex)	Node ID of the addressed node
Enter Pre-Operational	128 (80hex)	Node ID of the addressed node
Reset Node	129 (81hex)	Node ID of the addressed node
Reset Communication	130 (82 hex)	Node ID of the addressed node

The NMT master can simultaneously direct a request to one or more slaves. The following is applicable:

- Requirement of a slave:
  The slave is addressed using its node ID (1 - 127).
- Requirement for all slaves:
  Node ID = 0

The current state of the node is displayed via p8685. It can also be changed directly using this parameter:

- p8685 = 0 Initializing (display only)
- p8685 = 4 Stopped
- p8685 = 5 Operational
- p8685 = 127 Pre-Operational (factory setting)
- p8685 = 128 Reset Node
- p8685 = 129 Reset Communication

You can also change the NMT status in STARTER via "Control_Unit / Communication / CAN" under the "Network-Management" tab.

7.5.4 Object directories

RPDO configuration objects

The following tables list the communication and mapping parameters together with the indices for the individual RPDO configuration objects. The configuration objects are established via SDO.

Table 7- 48 RPDO configuration objects - communication parameters

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1400		**Receive PDO 1 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8700.0	Unsigned32	200 hex + node ID	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8700.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1401		**Receive PDO 2 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8701.0	Unsigned32	300 hex + node ID	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8701.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1402		**Receive PDO 3 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8702.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
	2	Transmission type	p8702.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1403		**Receive PDO 4 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8703.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8703.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1404		**Receive PDO 5 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8704.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8704.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1405		**Receive PDO 6 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8705.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8705.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1406		**Receive PDO 7 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8706.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8706.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
1407		**Receive PDO 8 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8707.0	Unsigned32	8000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8707.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W

Table 7- 49 RPDO configuration objects - mapping parameters

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1600		**Receive PDO 1 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	1	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8710.0	Unsigned32	6040 hex	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8710.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8710.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8710.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1601		**Receive PDO 2 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8711.0	Unsigned32	6040 hex	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8711.1	Unsigned32	6042 hex	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8711.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8711.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1602		**Receive PDO 3 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8712.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8712.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8712.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8712.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1603		**Receive PDO 4 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8713.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8713.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8713.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8713.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1604		**Receive PDO 5 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8714.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8714.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8714.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8714.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1605		**Receive PDO 6 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8715.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8715.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8715.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8715.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1606		**Receive PDO 7 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8716.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8716.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8716.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8716.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1607		**Receive PDO 8 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8717.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8717.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8717.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8717.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W

TPDO configuration objects

The following tables list the communication and mapping parameters together with the indices for the individual TPDO configuration objects. The configuration objects are established via SDO.

Table 7- 50 TPDO configuration objects - communication parameters

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1800		**Transmit PDO 1 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8720.0	Unsigned32	180 hex + node ID	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8720.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8720.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8720.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8720.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1801		**Transmit PDO 2 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8721.0	Unsigned32	280 hex + node ID	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8721.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8721.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
	4	Reserved	p8721.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8721.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1802		**Transmit PDO 3 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8722.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8722.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8722.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8722.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8722.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1803		**Transmit PDO 4 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8723.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8723.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8723.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8723.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8723.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1804		**Transmit PDO 5 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8724.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8724.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8724.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8724.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8724.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1805		**Transmit PDO 6 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8725.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8725.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8725.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8725.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8725.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1806		**Transmit PDO 7 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8726.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8726.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W
	3	Inhibit time	p8726.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8726.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8726.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W
1807		**Transmit PDO 8 communication parameter**				
	0	Largest subindex supported		Unsigned8	5	R
	1	COB ID used by PDO	p8727.0	Unsigned32	C000 06DF hex	R/W
	2	Transmission type	p8727.1	Unsigned8	FE hex	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
	3	Inhibit time	p8727.2	Unsigned16	0	R/W
	4	Reserved	p8727.3	Unsigned8	---	R/W
	5	Event timer	p8727.4	Unsigned16	0	R/W

Table 7- 51 TPDO configuration objects - mapping parameters

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
1A00		**Transmit PDO 1 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	1	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8730.0	Unsigned32	6041 hex	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8730.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8730.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8730.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A01		**Transmit PDO 2 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	2	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8731.0	Unsigned32	6041 hex	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8731.1	Unsigned32	6044 hex	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8731.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8731.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A02		**Transmit PDO 3 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8732.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8732.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8732.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8732.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A03		**Transmit PDO 4 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8733.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8733.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W

OD Index (hex)	Sub-Index (hex)	Object name	SINAMICS parameters	Data type	Predefined connection set	Can be read/ written to
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8733.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8733.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A04		**Transmit PDO 5 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8734.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8734.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8734.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8734.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A05		**Transmit PDO 6 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8735.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8735.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8735.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8735.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A06		**Transmit PDO 7 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8736.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8736.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8736.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8736.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W
1A07		**Transmit PDO 8 mapping parameter**				
	0	Number of mapped application objects in PDO		Unsigned8	0	R
	1	PDO mapping for the first application object to be mapped	p8737.0	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	2	PDO mapping for the second application object to be mapped	p8737.1	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	3	PDO mapping for the third application object to be mapped	p8737.2	Unsigned32	0	R/W
	4	PDO mapping for the fourth application object to be mapped	p8737.3	Unsigned32	0	R/W

7.5.4.1 Free objects

You can interconnect any process data objects of the received and transmit buffer using receive and transmit double words.

- Scaling the process data of the free objects:
  - 16 bit (word): 4000hex ≙100 %
  - For temperature values: 16 bit (word): 4000hex ≙ 100 °C

OD index (hex)	Description	Data type per PZD	Default values	Can be read/ written to
5800 to 580F	16 freely-interconnectable receive process data	Integer16	0	R/W
5810 to 581F	16 freely-interconnectable transmit process data	Integer16	0	R

7.5.4.2 Objects in drive profile DSP402

The following table lists the object directory with the index of the individual objects for the drives.

Table 7- 52 Objects in drive profile DSP402

OD index (hex)	Sub-index (hex)	Name of the object	SINAMICS parameters	Transmission	Data type	Default setting	Can be read/ written to
Predefinitions							
67FF		Single device type		SDO	Unsigned32		R
Common entries in the object dictionary							
6007		Abort connection option code	p8641	SDO	Integer16	3	R/W
6502		Supported drive modes		SDO	Integer32		R
6504		Drive manufacturer		SDO	String	SIEMENS	R
Device control							
6040		Control word	r8795	PDO/SDO	Unsigned16	–	R/W 1)
6041		Status word	r8784	PDO/SDO	Unsigned16	–	R
6060		Modes of operation	p1300	SDO	Integer8	–	R/ 2)
6061		Modes of operation display	p1300	SDO	Integer8	–	R
Profile torque mode							
6071		Target torque Set torque	p1513[0]	SDO/PDO	Integer16	–	R/W 1)
6072		Max. torque	p1520/p1521	SDO	Real32	-	R/W
6074		Torque demand value Actual torque	r0080	SDO/PDO	Integer16	–	R
Velocity mode							
6042	0	vl target velocity	r0060	SDO/PDO	Integer16	-	R/W
6044	0	vl control effort	r0063	SDO/PDO	Integer16	-	R

1) SDO access is only possible after mapping the objects and the BICO interconnection to display parameters.

2) Object cannot be written to as a CANopen device profile is not supported, only manufacturer-specific operating data

7.5.5 Configuration example

The following example describes how you can integrate the converter into a CANopen bus system using STARTER in two steps.

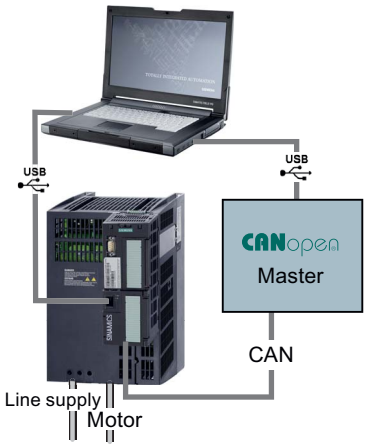
In the first step, the converter is integrated into the communication via the CAN bus using the Predefined Connection Set. In this case, the control word, the speed setpoint as well the status word and speed actual value are transferred.

In the second step, using the free PDO mapping, the torque setpoint as well as the current actual value are mapped and the BiCo wiring established.

Preconditions for integrating in CAN

The following preconditions must be fulfilled in order to be able to integrate the converter into a CAN bus:

- The converter and motor must have been completely installed
- STARTER V4.2 or higher has been installed on your computer.
- You have a CAN controller via which you can control the converter.
- The converter is connected online with Starter.
- The EDS file has been installed on your CAN controller.



Integrate the converter into a CAN bus system using the Predefined Connection Set

- Carry out the commissioning (Page 68) using the wizards and for the I/O configuration (second commissioning step) select the setting "22 CAN fieldbus" (macro 15 = 22). As a consequence, you establish the BICO interconnection of the speed setpoint/control word as well as speed actual value/status word corresponding to the Predefined Connections Set.
- In STARTER, in the screen form "…/Control_Unit/Communication/CAN" set the node ID and data transmission rate (Page 153) - (in the example, Node ID = 50, transmission rate = 500 kbit/s).
- Using the Expert List, in Starter set the mapping via the Predefined connection set (Page 164): p8744 = 1 and accept with p8744 = 1 (p8744 jumps back to 0 again after a few seconds).

As a consequence, you have established communication with CAN via the "Predifined Connection Set" (speed setpoint/control word as well as the actual value/status word, also see Objects in drive profile DSP402 (Page 175)).

Integrate the current actual value and torque limit into the communication via the free PDO mapping

In order to integrate the current actual value and torque limit into the communication, you must switch over from the Predefined Connection Set to the free PDO mapping. The current actual value and torque limit are integrated as free objects.

In the example, the actual current value is transferred in TPDO1 and the torque limit in RPDO1, i.e. it is not necessary to create new communication parameters (node ID and transmission mode). However, you must map the OD indices for the current actual value and the torque limits and adapt to the BiCo interconnection.

1. Switching over from the Predefined Connection Set to free PDO mapping

In the expert list, set p8744 to 1.

2. Mapping the current actual value (r0068) with TPDO1

- Define the OD index for the current actual value: 5810
- Set the COB ID from TPDO1 to "Mapping permissible":
  p8720[0] = 400001B2H (mapping not permitted) on p8720.0 = 800001B2H (mapping permissible)
- Set p8730[1] = 5810010H - the first four digits are the OD index for the current actual value (r0068), 00: Sub-index (corresponds to the parameter index) 10: Object size (10H = 16 bit) must be attached to the OD index
- Reset p8720[0] to 400001B2H
- r8751 shows which object has been matched to which PZD

3. Mapping the torque limit (p1522) with RPDO1

- Define the OD index for the torque limit: 5800
- Set the COB ID from RPDO1 to"Mapping permissible":
  Set p8700[0] = 232H (mapping not permissible) to p8700.0 = 80000232H (mapping permissible)
- Set p8710[1] = 5800010H - the first four digits are the OD index for the torque limit (p1522), 010 is CAN-specific and for all linked parameters in free PDO mapping must be attached to the OD index
- Reset p8700[0] to 232H
- r8750 shows which object has been matched to which PZD

4. Adapting BiCo interconnections

Object	Mapped receive objects	Receive word r2050	
Control word	r8750[0] = 6040H (PZD1)	Also mapped in r2050[0] to PZD1 -> OK	
Torque limit	r8750[1] = 5800H (PZD2)	Link PZD2 with torque limit:	p1522 = 2050[1]
Speed setpoint	r8750[2] = 6042H (PZD3)	Link PZD3 with speed setpoint:	p1070 = 2050[2]

Object	Mapped send objects	Send word p2051	
Status word	r8751[0] = 6041H (PZD1)	Also mapped in r2051[0] to PZD1 -> OK	
Current actual value	r8751[1] = 5810H (PZD2)	Link PZD2 with current actual value	p2051[1] = r68[1]
Speed actual value	r8751[2] = 6044H (PZD3)	Link PZD3 with speed actual value	p2051[2] = r63[0]

You have now made all of the necessary settings, in order to transfer status and control word, speed setpoint and actual value as well as the current actual value and torque limit.

Functions

8

Before you set the inverter functions, you should have completed the following commissioning steps:

- Basic commissioning (Page 55)
- If necessary: Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79)
- If necessary: Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91)

8.1 Overview of the inverter functions

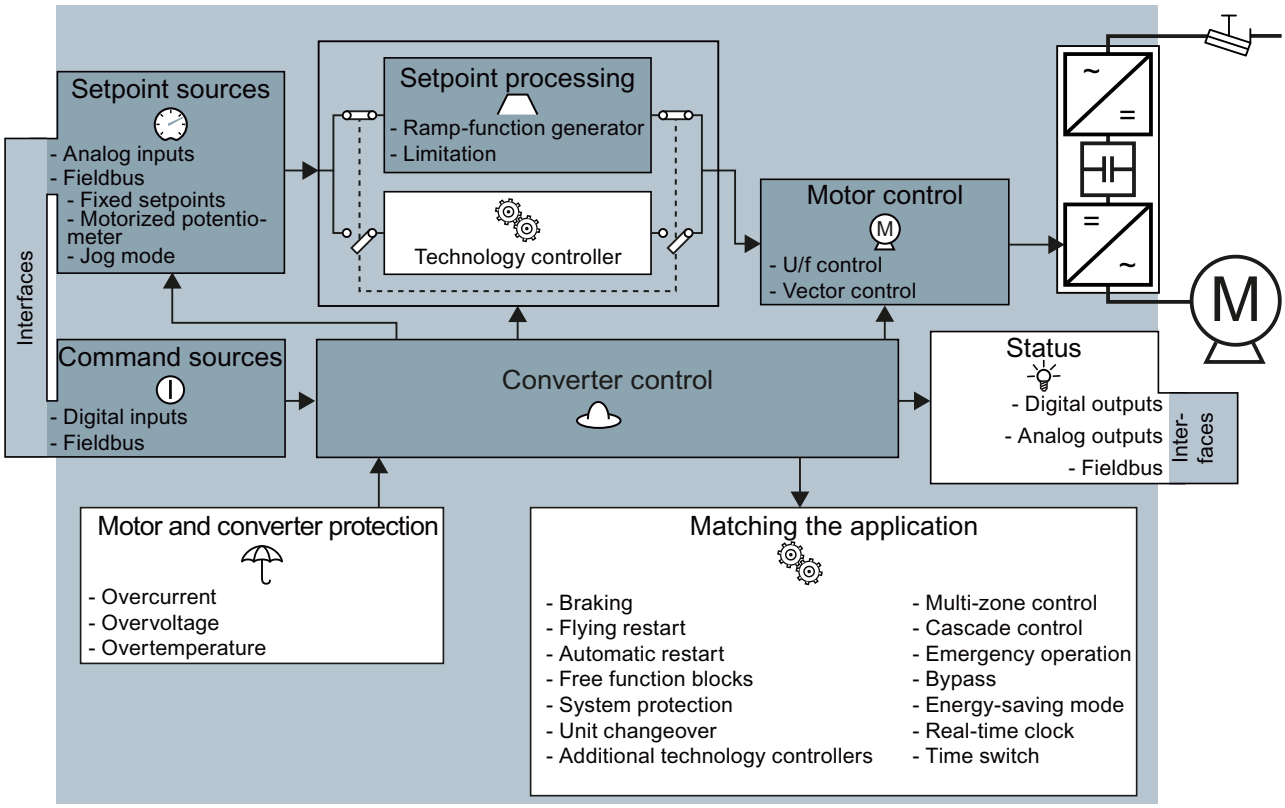
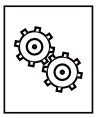


Figure 8-1 Overview of inverter functions

Functions relevant to all applications		**Functions required in special applications only**	
The functions that you require in your application are shown in a dark color in the function overview above. In the quick commissioning, the parameters of these functions are assigned an appropriate basic setting, so that in many cases the motor can be operated without having to assign any other parameters.		The functions whose parameters you only need to adapt when actually required are shown in white in the function overview above.	
	**Inverter control** is responsible for all of the other inverter functions. Among other things, it defines how the inverter responds to external control signals. Inverter control (Page 181)		The **production functions** avoid overloads and operating states that could cause damage to the motor, inverter and driven load. The motor temperature monitoring, for example, is set here. Protection functions (Page 215)
	The **command source** defines where the control signals are received from to switch on the motor, e.g. via digital inputs or a fieldbus. Command sources (Page 193)		The **status messages** provide digital and analog signals at the Control Unit outputs or via the fieldbus. Examples include the current speed of the motor or fault message issued by the inverter. Status messages (Page 222)
	The **setpoint source** defines how the speed setpoint for the motor is specified, e.g. via an analog input or a fieldbus. Setpoint sources (Page 194)		The functions **matching the application** provide e.g. the control of a motor holding brake or allow a higher-level pressure or temperature control to be implemented using the technology controller. Further, the inverter provides solution options specifically for applications in the area of pumps, fans and climate control systems (HVAC). Application-specific functions (Page 223)
	The **setpoint processing** uses a ramp-function generator to prevent speed steps occurring and to limit the speed to a permissible maximum value. Setpoint calculation (Page 201)		
	The **motor closed-loop control** ensures that the motor follows the speed setpoint. Motor control (Page 205)		

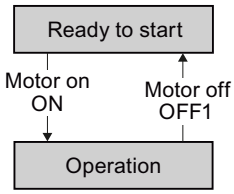
8.2 Inverter control

8.2.1 Switching the motor on and off



After switching on the supply voltage, the converter normally goes into the "Ready to start" state. In this state, the converter waits for the command to switch-on the motor:

- The converter switches on the motor with the ON command. The converter changes to the "Operation" state.
- After the OFF1 command, the converter brakes the motor with the ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator. The converter switches off the motor once standstill has been reached. The converter is again "ready to start".



Converter states and commands for switching the motor on and off

In addition to the OFF1command, there are other commands that are used to switch off the motor:

- OFF2 - the converter immediately switches off the motor without first braking it.
- OFF3 - this command means "quick stop". After an OFF3 command, the converter brakes the motor with the OFF3 ramp-down time. After reaching standstill, the converter switches off the motor.
  The command is frequently used for exceptional operating situations where it is necessary to brake the motor especially quickly, e.g. when it involves collision protection.

The following diagram shows the internal sequence control of the converter when switching the motor on and off.

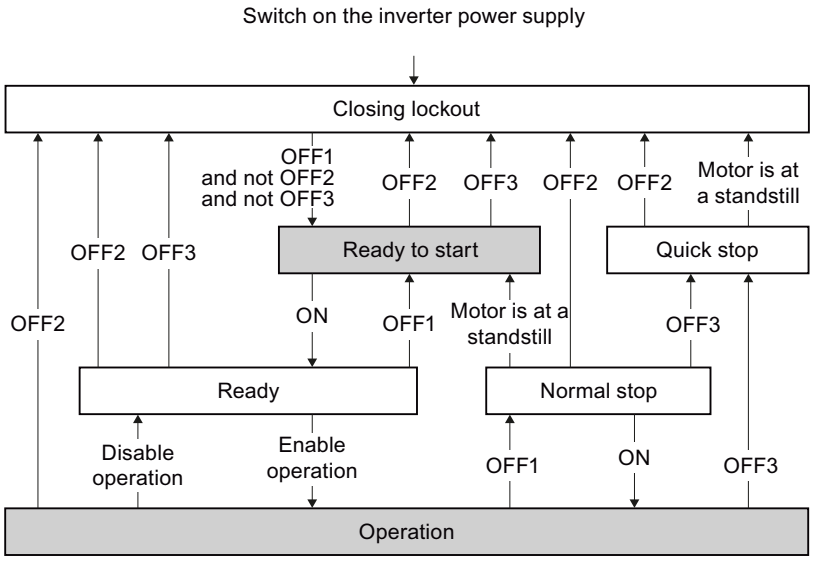


Figure 8-2 State overview of the converter

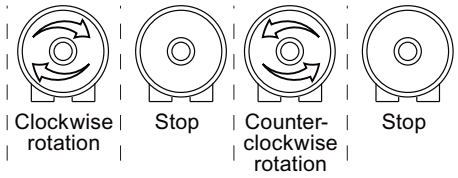
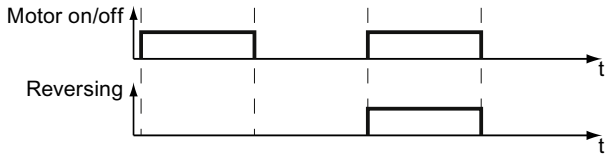
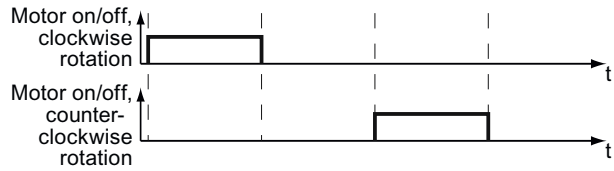
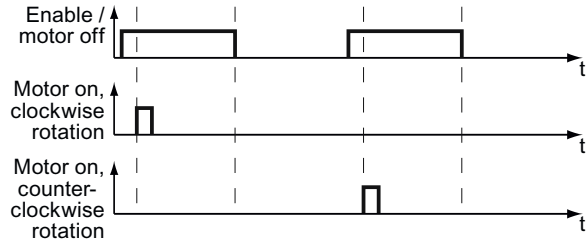
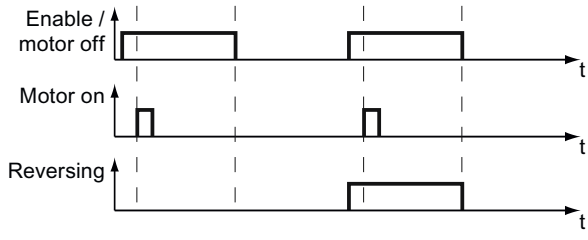
Table 8- 1 Explanation of the converter states

State	Explanation
Closing lockout	In this state, the converter does not respond to the ON command. The converter goes into this state under the following conditions: • The ON command was active when switching on the converter. Exception: When the automatic start function is active, the ON command must be active after switching on the power supply. • The OFF2 or OFF3 command is selected.
Ready to start	This state is required to switch on the motor.
Ready	The converter waits for the operating enable. If the converter is controlled via a fieldbus, then you must set the operating enable in a control word bit. If the converter is exclusively controlled via its digital inputs, then the operating enable signal is automatically set in the factory setting.
Operation	The motor is switched on.
Normal stop	The motor was switched off with an OFF1 command and brakes with the ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator.
Quick stop	The motor was switched off with an OFF3 command and brakes with the OFF3 ramp-down time.

If you are controlling the inverter using digital inputs, you use parameter p0015 during basic commissioning to define how the motor is switched on and off and how it is changed over from clockwise to counter-clockwise rotation.

Five different methods are available for controlling the motor. Three of the five methods just require two control commands (two-wire control). The other two methods require three control commands (three-wire control).

Table 8- 2 Two-wire control and three-wire control

Behavior of the motor		
	**Control commands**	**Typical application**
	**Two-wire control, method 1** 1. Switch the motor on and off (ON/OFF1). 2. Reverse the motor direction of rotation.	Local control in conveyor systems.
	**Two-wire control, method 2 and two-wire control, method 3** 1. Switch the motor on and off (ON/OFF1), clockwise rotation. 2. Switch the motor on and off (ON/OFF1), counter-clockwise rotation.	Traction drives with control via joystick
	**Three-wire control, method 1** 1. Issue enable for switching on motor and switch off motor (OFF1). 2. Switch on motor (ON), clockwise rotation. 3. Switch on motor (ON), counter-clockwise rotation.	Traction drives with control via joystick
	**Three-wire control, method 2** 1. Issue enable for switching on motor and switch off motor (OFF1). 2. Switch on motor (ON). 3. Reverse the motor direction of rotation.	-

8.2.2 Two-wire control: method 1

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1). while the other control command reverses the motor direction of rotation.

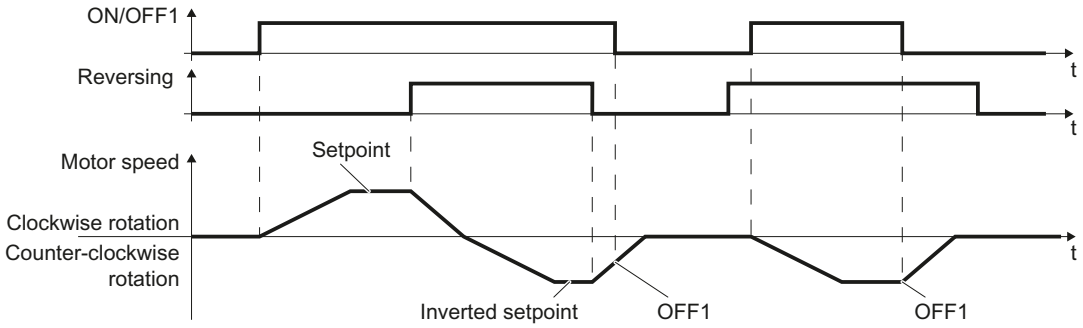


Figure 8-3 Two-wire control, method 1

Table 8- 3 Function table

ON/OFF1	Reversing	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
0	1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise rotation of motor.
1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise rotation of motor.

Table 8- 4 Parameter

Parameter	Description		
p0015 = 12	**Macro drive unit** (factory setting for inverters without PROFIBUS interface)		
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1
		ON/OFF1	Reversing
Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).			
p0840[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: ON/OFF1** (ON/OFF1)		
p1113[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: Setpoint inversion** (reversing)		
Example			
p0840 = 722.3	DI 3: ON/OFF1. Also see Section Digital inputs (Page 80).		

8.2.3 Two-wire control, method 2

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1) and at the same time select clockwise motor rotation. You also use the other control command to switch the motor on and off, but in this case you select counter-clockwise rotation for the motor.

The inverter only accepts a new control command when the motor is at a standstill.

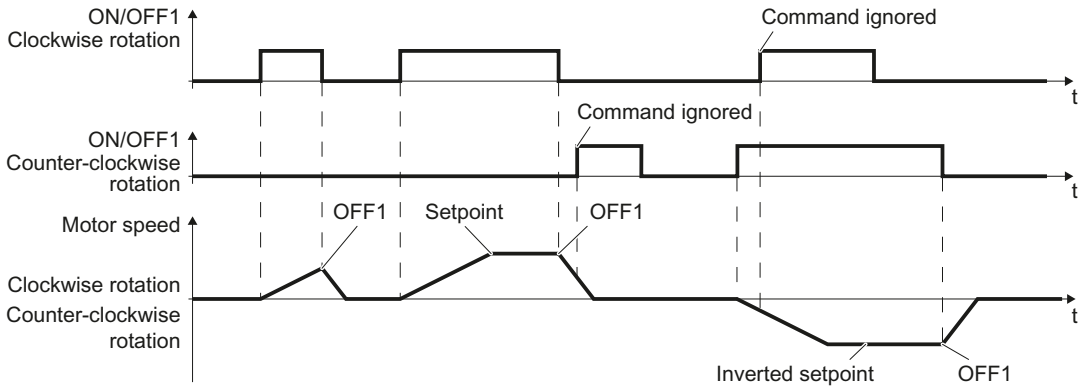


Figure 8-4 Two-wire control, method 2

Table 8- 5 Function table

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise rotation of motor.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise rotation of motor.
1	1	ON: The motor direction of rotation is based on the signal that takes on the status "1" first.

Table 8- 6 Parameter

Parameter	Description		
p0015 = 17	**Macro drive unit**		
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1
		ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation
Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).			
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 1** (ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation)		
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 2** (ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation)		
Example			
p3331 = 722.0	DI 0: ON/OFF1 Counter-clockwise rotation Also see Section Digital inputs (Page 80).		

8.2.4 Two-wire control, method 3

You switch the motor on and off using a control command (ON/OFF1) and at the same time select clockwise motor rotation. You also use the other control command to switch the motor on and off, but in this case you select counter-clockwise rotation for the motor.

Unlike method 2, the inverter will accept the control commands at any time, regardless of the motor speed.

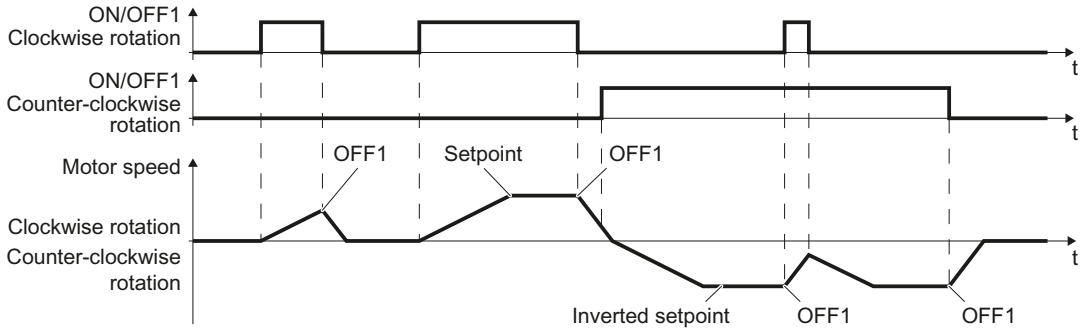


Figure 8-5 Two-wire control, method 3

Table 8- 7 Function table

ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0	ON: Clockwise rotation of motor.
0	1	ON: Counter-clockwise rotation of motor.
1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Table 8- 8 Parameter

Parameter	Description		
p0015 = 18	**Macro drive unit**		
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1
		ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation	ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation
Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).			
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 1** (ON/OFF1 clockwise rotation)		
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 2** (ON/OFF1 , counter-clockwise rotation)		
Example			
p3331[0 … n] = 722.2	DI 2: ON/OFF1 Counter-clockwise rotation Also see Section Digital inputs (Page 80).		

8.2.5 Three-wire control, method 1

With one control command, you enable the two other control commands. You switch the motor off by canceling the enable (OFF1).

You switch the motor's direction of rotation to clockwise rotation with the positive edge of the second control command. If the motor is still switched off, switch it on (ON).

You switch the motor's direction of rotation to counter-clockwise rotation with the positive edge of the third control command. If the motor is still switched off, switch it on (ON).

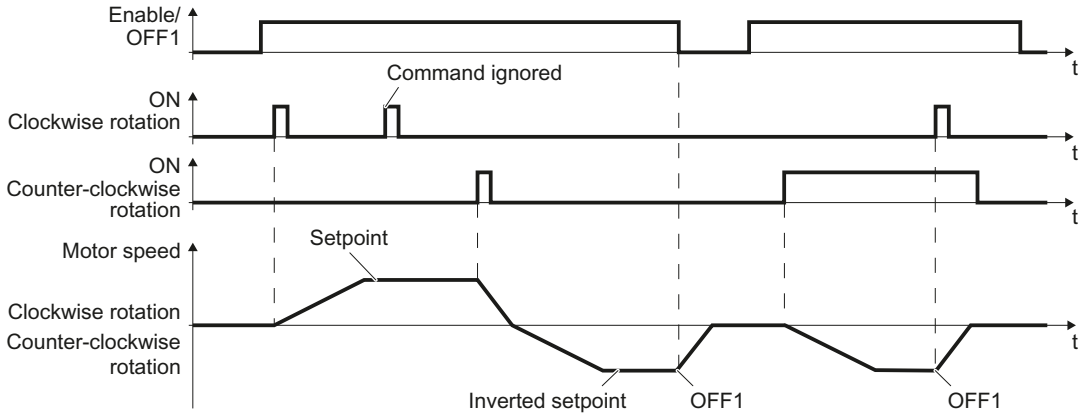


Figure 8-6 Three-wire control, method 1

Table 8- 9 Function table

Enable/OFF1	ON clockwise rotation	ON , counter-clockwise rotation	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise rotation of motor.
1	0	0→1	ON: Counter-clockwise rotation of motor.
1	1	1	OFF1: The motor stops.

Table 8- 10 Parameter

Parameter	Description			
p0015 = 19	**Macro drive unit**			
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1	DI 2
		Enable/OFF1	ON clockwise rotation	ON , counter-clockwise rotation
Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).				
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 1** (enable/OFF1)			
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 2** (ON clockwise rotation)			
p3332[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 3** (ON , counter-clockwise rotation)			
Example				
p3332 = 722.0	DI 0: ON Counter-clockwise rotation. Also see Section Digital inputs (Page 80).			

8.2.6 Three-wire control, method 2

With one control command, you enable the two other control commands. You switch the motor off by canceling the enable (OFF1).

You switch on the motor with the positive edge of the second control command (ON).

The third control command defines the motor's direction of rotation (reversing).

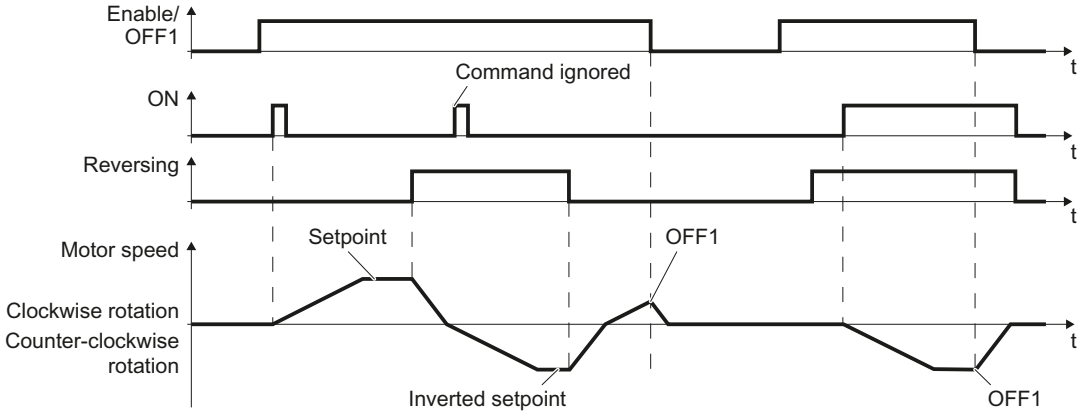


Figure 8-7 Three-wire control, method 2

Table 8- 11 Function table

Enable/OFF1	ON	Reversing	Function
0	0 or 1	0 or 1	OFF1: The motor stops.
1	0→1	0	ON: Clockwise rotation of motor.
1	0→1	1	ON: Counter-clockwise rotation of motor.

Table 8- 12 Parameter

Parameter	Description			
p0015 = 20	**Macro drive unit**			
	Controlling the motor using the digital inputs of the inverter:	DI 0	DI 1	DI 2
		Enable/OFF1	ON	Reversing
Advanced setting Interconnecting control commands with digital inputs of your choice (DI x).				
p3330[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 1** (enable/OFF1)			
p3331[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 2** (ON)			
p3332[0 … n] = 722.x	**BI: 2-3-WIRE Control Command 3** (reversing)			
Example				
p3331 = 722.0	DI 0: ON. Also see Section Digital inputs (Page 80).			

8.2.7 Running the motor in jog mode (JOG function)

The "Jog" function is typically used to a slowly move a machine part, e.g. a conveyor belt. The function is frequently used when the converter is temporarily not operated via the fieldbus, but via digital inputs instead.

With the "Jog" function, you switch the motor on and off using a digital input. When the motor is switched on, it accelerates to the jogging setpoint. There are two different setpoints available, e.g. for motor counterclockwise rotation and clockwise rotation.

The same ramp-function generator acts on the setpoint as for the ON/OFF1 command.

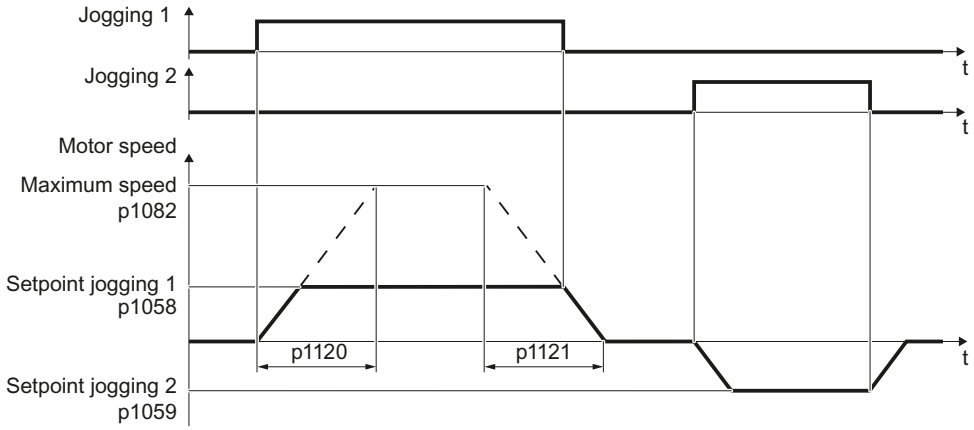
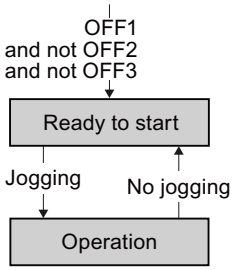


Figure 8-8 Behavior of the motor when "jogging",

The converter must be ready to start before you issue the "Jog" control command. If the motor is already switched on, then the "Jog" command has no effect.



Setting jogging

Table 8- 13 Settings

Parameter	Description	
p1058	**Jogging 1 speed setpoint** (factory setting, 150 rpm)	
p1059	**Jogging 2 speed setpoint** (factory setting, -150 rpm)	
p1082	**Maximum speed** (factory setting 1500 rpm)	
p1110	**Inhibit negative direction**	
	=0	Negative direction of rotation is enabled
	=1	Negative direction of rotation is inhibited
p1111	**Inhibit positive direction**	
	=0	Positive direction of rotation is enabled
	=1	Positive direction of rotation is inhibited
p1113	**Setpoint inversion**	
	=0	Setpoint is not inverted
	=1	Setpoint is inverted
p1120	**Ramp-function generator ramp-up time** (factory setting 10 s)	
p1121	**Ramp-function generator ramp-down time** (factory setting 10 s)	
p1055 = 722.0	**Jogging bit 0:** Select jogging 1 via digital input 0	
p1056 = 722.1	**Jogging bit 1:** Select jogging 2 via digital input 1	

8.2.8 Switching over the inverter control (command data set)

In several applications, the inverter must be able to be operated from different, higher-level control systems.

Example: Switchover from automatic to manual operation

A motor is switched on and off and its speed varied either from a central control system via a fieldbus or from a local control box.

Command data set (CDS)

This means that you can set the inverter control in various ways and toggle between the settings. For instance, as described above, the inverter can either be operated via a fieldbus or via the terminal strip.

The settings in the inverter, which are associated with a certain control type of the inverter, are known as a command data set.

Example:

Command data set 0: Controlling the inverter via the fieldbus
Command data set 1: Controlling the inverter via terminal strip

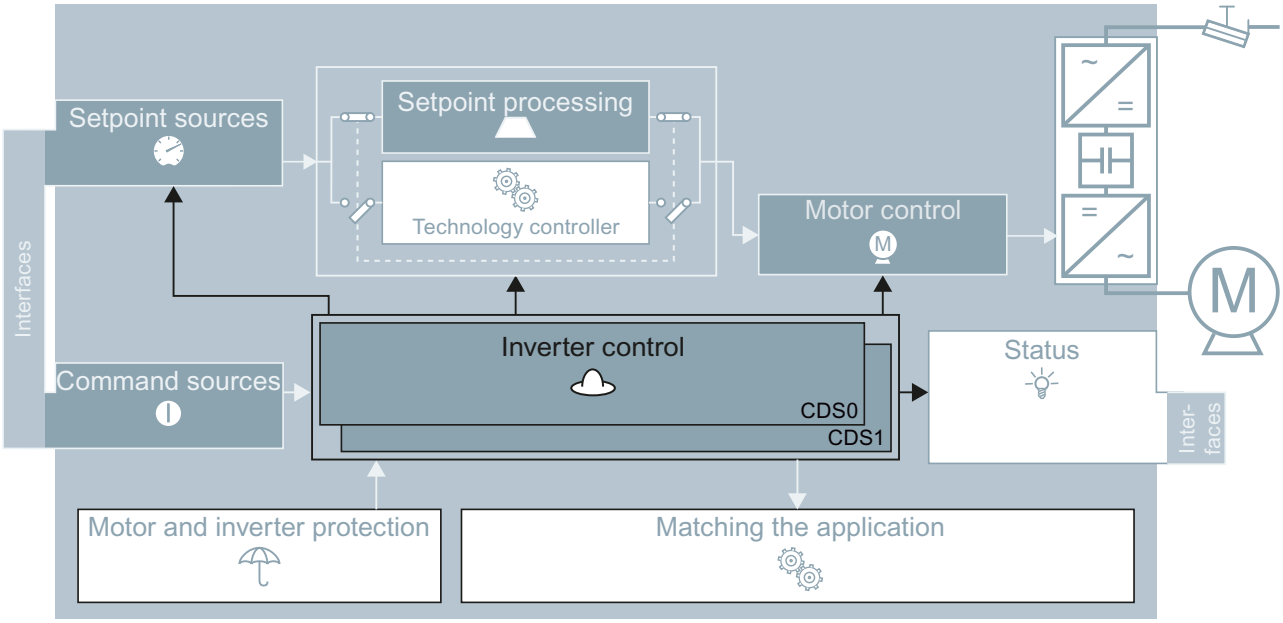


Figure 8-9 CDS switchover in the inverter

You select the command data set using parameter p0810. To do this, you must interconnect parameter p0810 with a control command of your choice, e.g. a digital input.

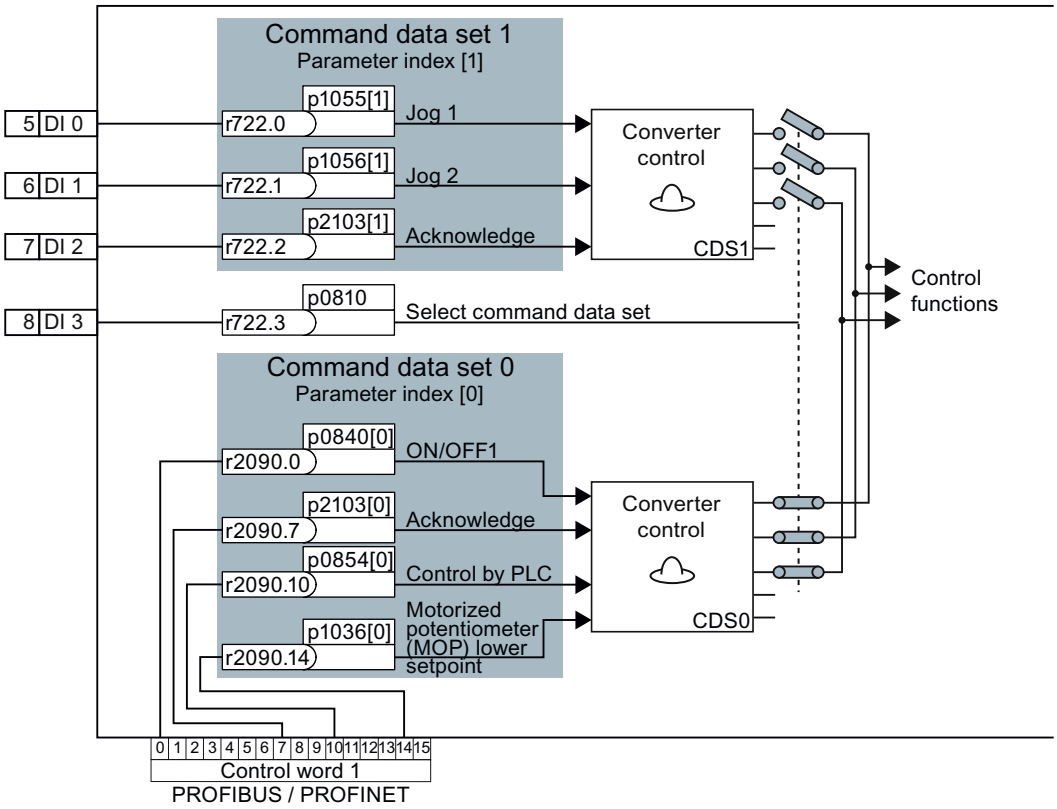


Figure 8-10 Example for the various command data sets

You obtain the interconnection as in the example above, if you configured the interfaces of the inverter with p0015 = 7 in the basic commissioning, also see Section Selecting the interface assignments (Page 48).

An overview of all the parameters that belong to the command data sets is provided in the List Manual.

Note

It takes approximately 4 ms to toggle between command data sets.

Advanced settings

If you require more than two command data sets, then define the number of command data sets (2, 3 or 4) using parameter p0170.

Table 8- 14 Defining the number of command data sets

Parameter	Description
p0010 = 15	**Drive commissioning:** Data sets
p0170	**Number of command data sets** (factory setting: 2) P0170 = 2, 3 or 4
p0010 = 0	**Drive commissioning:** Ready
r0050	**Displaying the number of the CDS that is currently active**

You require two bits to be able to make a clear selection for more than two command data sets.

Table 8- 15 Selecting a command data set

Parameter	Description
p0810	**Command data set selection CDS bit 0**
p0811	**Command data set selection CDS bit 1**
r0050	**Displaying the number of the CDS that is currently active**

A copy function is available making it easier to commission more than one command data set.

Table 8- 16 Parameters for copying the command data sets

Parameter	Description
P0809[0]	**Number of the command data set to be copied (source)**
P0809[1]	**Number of the command data set to which the data is to be copied (target)**
P0809[2] = 1	**Copying is started** Once copying has been completed, the inverter sets p0809[2] to 0.

8.3 Command sources



The command source is the interface via which the inverter receives its control commands. You define the assignment of the inverter interfaces when carrying out the basic commissioning.

Change command source

You have two options to change the command sources:

1. Carry out the basic commissioning again and select a different assignment of the inverter interfaces.

2. Adapt the function of individual digital inputs or change the fieldbus interface. You can find more information on this in Sections Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79) and Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91).

8.4 Setpoint sources

The inverter receives its main setpoint from the setpoint source. The main setpoint generally specifies the motor speed.

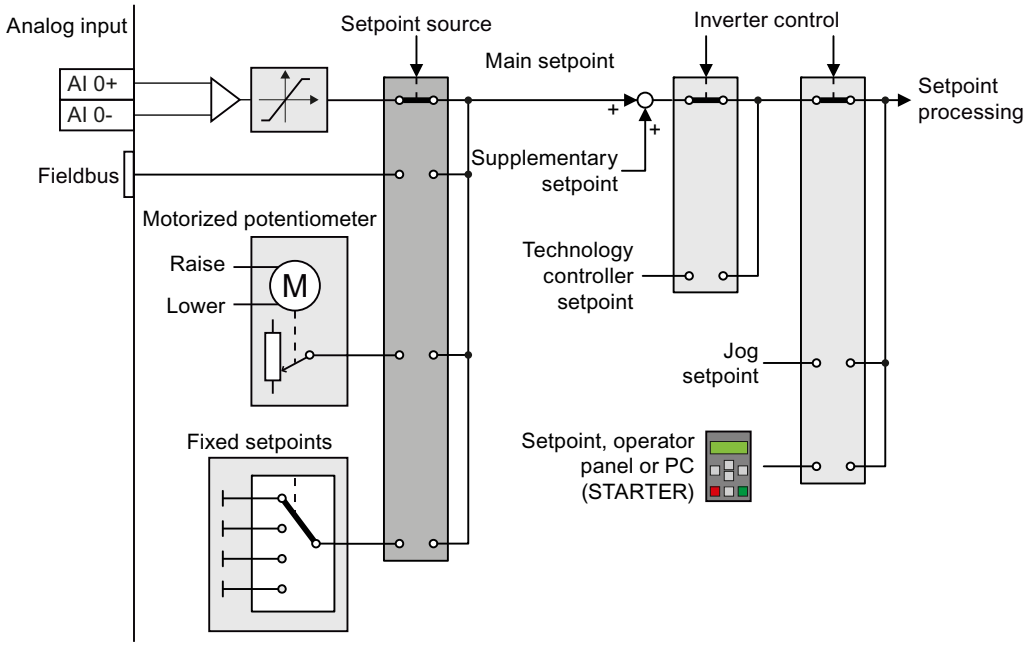


Figure 8-11 Setpoint sources for the inverter

You have the following options when selecting the source of the main setpoint:

- Inverter analog input.
- Inverter fieldbus interface.
- Motorized potentiometer simulated in the inverter.
- Fixed setpoints saved in the inverter.

You have the same selection options when selecting the source of the supplementary setpoint.

Under the following conditions, the inverter switches from the main setpoint to other setpoints:

- When the technology controller is active, it's output specifies the motor speed.
- When jogging is active.
- When controlling from an operator panel or the STARTER PC tool.

In the basic commissioning, you have already selected a setpoint source. Refer also to Section: Selecting the interface assignments (Page 48).

However, you can change this setting. The setpoint sources will be described in more detail on the following pages.

8.4.1 Analog input as setpoint source

Procedure

If you have selected a pre-assignment without a function of the analog input, then you must interconnect the parameter of the main setpoint with an analog input.

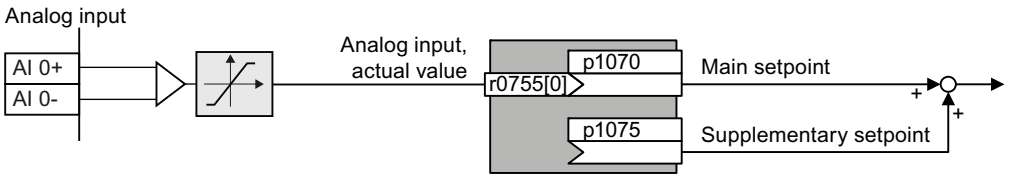


Figure 8-12 Example: Analog input 0 as setpoint source

Table 8- 17 Setting with analog input 0 as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 755[0]	**Main setpoint** Interconnect the main setpoint with analog input 0
p1075 = 755[0]	**Additional setpoint** Interconnect the additional setpoint with analog input 0

You must adapt the analog input to the connected signal, e.g. ± 10 V or 4 … 20 mA. You will find additional information in the section: Analog inputs (Page 83).

8.4.2 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

The "Motorized potentiometer" function emulates an electromechanical potentiometer The output value of the motorized potentiometer can be continually set using the "up" and "down" control signals.

Interconnecting the motorized potentiometer (MOP) with the setpoint source

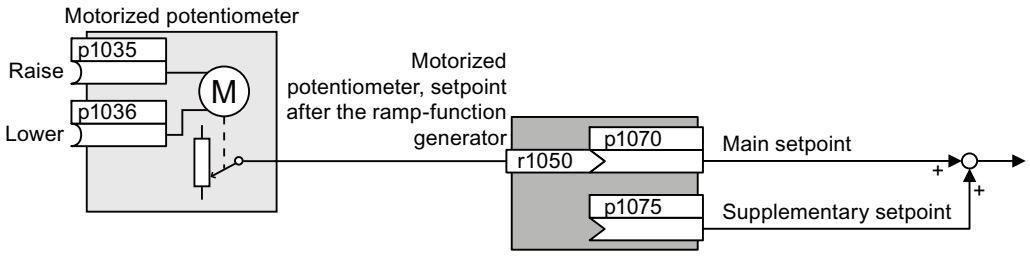


Figure 8-13 Motorized potentiometer as setpoint source

Table 8- 18 Setting the MOP as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 1050	**Main setpoint** Interconnecting the main setpoint with MOP.
p1035	**Motorized potentiometer, increase setpoint** (factory setting 0) Interconnect this signal, for example with a digital input of your choice: p1035 = 722.1 (digital input 1)
p1036	**Motorized potentiometer, decrease setpoint** (factory setting 0) Interconnect this signal, for example with a digital input of your choice.

Adapting the behavior of the motorized potentiometer

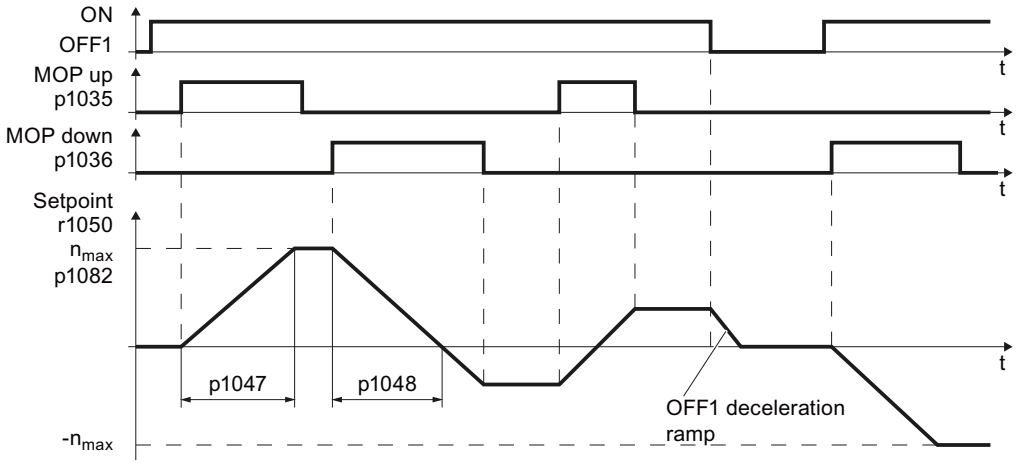


Figure 8-14 Function chart of motorized potentiometer

Table 8- 19 Basic setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description
p1047	**MOP ramp-up time** (factory setting 10 s)
p1048	**MOP ramp-down time** (factory setting 10 s)
p1040	**MOP start value** (factory setting 0 rpm) Defines the start value [rpm], which is effective when first switching on the motor.

Table 8- 20 Extended setup of motorized potentiometer

Parameter	Description
p1030	**MOP configuration** (factory setting 00110 bin) **Parameter value with four independently adjustable bits 00 … 03** **Bit 00:** Save setpoint after switching off motor 0: After the motor is switched on, p1040 is specified as the setpoint 1: Setpoint is saved after the motor is switched off and set to the saved value once it is switched on **Bit 01:** Configure ramp-function generator in automatic mode (1-signal via BI: p1041) 0: No ramp-function generator in automatic mode (ramp-up/-down time = 0) 1: With ramp-function generator in automatic mode In manual mode (0-signal via BI: p1041) the ramp-function generator is always active **Bit 02:** Configure initial rounding 0: No initial rounding 1: With initial rounding. Using the initial rounding function it is possible to enter very small setpoint changes **Bit 03:** Store setpoint in power-independent manner 0: No power-independent saving 1: Setpoint is saved in the event of a power failure (bit 00 = 1) **Bit 04:** Ramp-function generator always active 0: Setpoint is only calculated with enabled pulses 1: The setpoint is calculated independent of the pulse enable.
p1037	**MOP maximum speed** (factory setting 0 rpm) This is automatically preassigned when commissioning
p1038	**MOP minimum speed** (factory setting 0 rpm) This is automatically preassigned when commissioning
p1044	**MOP setting value** (factory setting 0) Signal source for the setting value.

For more information about the motorized potentiometer, refer to function diagram 3020 in the List Manual.

8.4.3 Fixed speed as setpoint source

In many applications after switching on the motor, all that is needed is to run the motor at a constant speed or to switch between different speeds.

Examples: After it has been switched on, a conveyor belt only runs with two different velocities.

Interconnecting the fixed speeds with a main setpoint

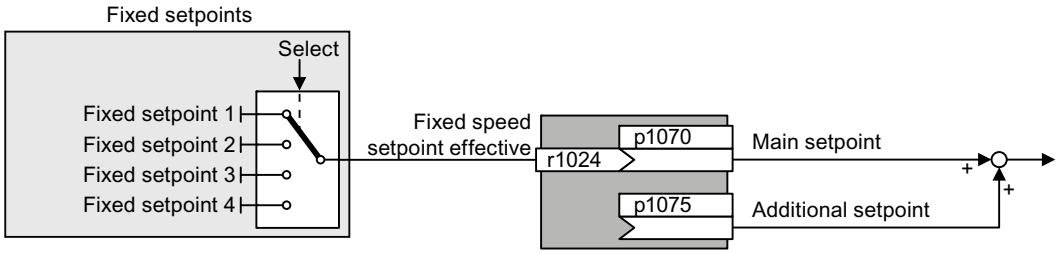


Figure 8-15 Fixed speeds as setpoint source

Table 8- 21 Setting the fixed speeds as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 1024	**Main setpoint** Interconnecting the main setpoint with fixed speeds.
p1075 = 1024	**Additional setpoint** Interconnecting the additional setpoint with fixed speeds

Direct or binary selection of the fixed setpoints

The converter has up to 16 different fixed setpoints. The fixed setpoints can be selected via digital inputs or the fieldbus.

The various fixed setpoints can be selected in two ways:

1. Direct selection:
   You set four different fixed setpoints. By adding one or more of the four fixed setpoints, up to 16 different resulting setpoints are obtained.
   Direct selection is the most suitable method for controlling the converter via the digital inputs.
2. Binary selection:
   You set 16 different fixed setpoints. You precisely select one of these fixed setpoints by a combination of four selection bits.
   The binary selection is the preferred solution for a central control and connecting the converter to a fieldbus.
   Additional information about binary selection can be found in function diagram 3010 of the List Manual.

Direct selection of fixed setpoints

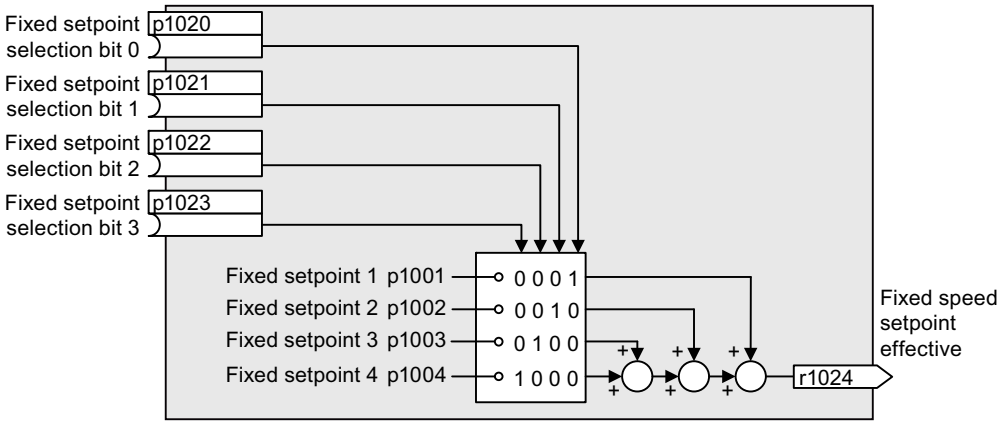


Figure 8-16 Simplified function diagram for directly selecting fixed setpoints

Additional information about direct selection can be found in function diagram 3011 in the List Manual.

Example: Direct selection of two fixed speed setpoints

The motor is to operate at two different speeds as follows:

- The motor is switched on with digital input 0 and then accelerates to 300 rpm.
- When digital input 1 is selected, the motor accelerates up to a speed of 2000 rpm.
- The motor reverses when selecting digital input 3.

Table 8- 22 Settings for the example

Parameter	Description
p1001 = 300.000	**Fixed speed setpoint 1** in [rpm]
p1002 = 2000.000	**Fixed speed setpoint 2** in [rpm]
p0840 = 722.0	**ON/OFF1:** Switch on motor with digital input 0
p1070 = 1024	**Main setpoint:** Interconnect the main setpoint with the speed setpoint
p1020 = 722.0	**Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 0:** Interconnect fixed setpoint 1 with digital input 0 (DI 0).
p1021 = 722.1	**Fixed speed setpoint selection bit 1:** Interconnect fixed setpoint 2 DI 2.
p1016 = 1	**Fixed speed setpoint mode:** Direct selection of the fixed setpoints

Table 8- 23 Resulting fixed setpoints for the example above

Fixed setpoint selected by	Resulting setpoint
DI 0 = LOW	Motor stops
DI 0 = HIGH and DI 1 = LOW	300 rpm
DI 0 = HIGH and DI 1 = HIGH	2300 rpm

8.4.4 Specifying the motor speed via the fieldbus

If you enter the setpoint via a fieldbus, you must connect the converter to a higher-level control. For additional information, see chapter Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91).

Interconnecting the fieldbus with the main setpoint

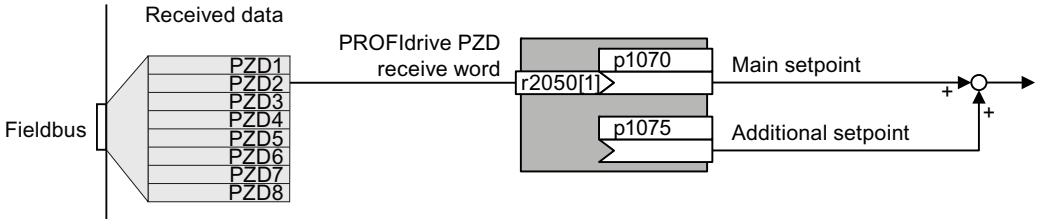


Figure 8-17 Fieldbus as setpoint source

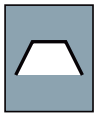
Most standard frames receive the speed setpoint as a second process data PZD2.

Table 8- 24 Setting the fieldbus as setpoint source

Parameter	Remark
p1070 = 2050[1]	**Main setpoint** Interconnect the main setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.
p1075 = 2050[1]	**Additional setpoint** Interconnect the additional setpoint with process data PZD2 from the fieldbus.

8.5 Setpoint calculation

8.5.1 Overview of setpoint processing



The setpoint can be modified as follows using the setpoint processing:

- Invert setpoint to reverse the motor direction of rotation (reversing).
- Inhibit positive or negative direction of rotation, e.g. for conveyor belts, pumps or fans.
- Minimum speed to avoid standstill when the motor is switched on.
- Limit to a maximum speed to protect the motor and mechanical system.
- Ramp-function generator to accelerate and brake the motor with an optimum torque.

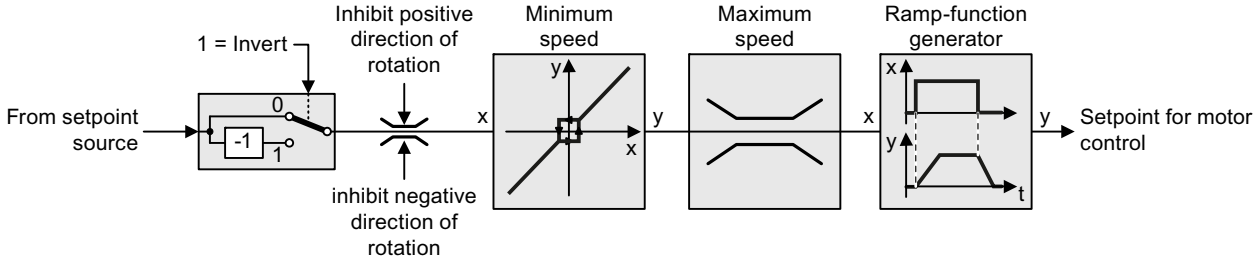


Figure 8-18 Setpoint processing in the inverter

8.5.2 Invert setpoint

Procedure

Interconnect parameter p1113 with a binary signal, e.g. digital input 1.

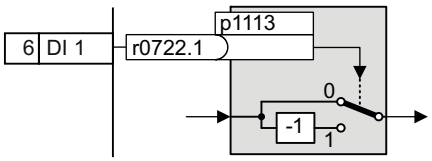


Table 8- 25 Examples of settings to invert the setpoint

Parameter	Remark
p1113 = 722.1	**Setpoint inversion** Digital input 1 = 0: Setpoint remains unchanged. Digital input 1 = 1: Converter inverts the setpoint.
p1113 = 2090.11	Invert setpoint via control word 1, bit 11.

8.5.3 Inhibit direction of rotation

Procedure

In the factory setting of the converter, the negative direction of rotation of the motor is inhibited.

If you want to permanently enable the negative direction of rotation, then you must set parameter p1110 to 0.

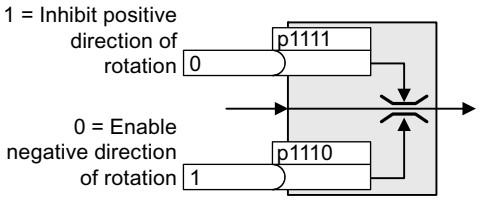


Table 8- 26 Examples of settings to inhibit the direction of rotation

Parameter	Remark
p1110 = 1	**Inhibit negative direction** Negative direction is permanently inhibited.
p1110 = 722.3	**Inhibit negative direction** Digital input 3 = 0: Negative direction of rotation is enabled. Digital input 3 = 1: Negative direction of rotation is inhibited.

8.5.4 Minimum speed

Function

The inverter prevents continuous motor operation at speeds < minimum speed.

Speeds, where the absolute value is less than the minimum speed, can only be passed through when accelerating or braking.

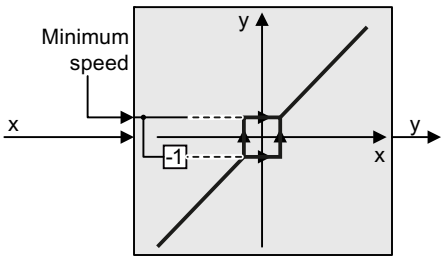


Table 8- 27 Setting the minimum speed

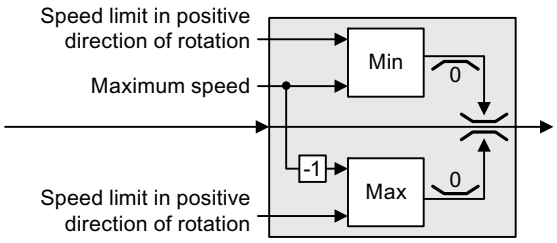
Parameter	Description
p1080	Minimum speed

8.5.5 Maximum speed

Function

The maximum speed limits the speed setpoint range for both directions of rotation.

The inverter generates a message (fault or alarm) when the maximum speed is exceeded.



The maximum speed also acts as a reference value for several other functions, e.g. the ramp-function generator.

If you must limit the speed depending on the direction of rotation, then you can define speed limits for each direction.

Table 8- 28 Parameters for minimum and maximum speed

Parameter	Description
p1082	**Maximum speed** (factory setting: 1500 rpm)
p1083	**Speed limit, positive direction of rotation** (factory setting: 210,000 rpm)
p1086	**Speed limit, negative direction of rotation** (factory setting: -210,000 rpm)

8.5.6 Ramp-function generator

Function

The ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel limits the speed of changes to the speed setpoint. The ramp-function generator does the following:

- The soft acceleration and braking of the motor reduces the stress on the mechanical system of the driven machine.
- Acceleration and braking distance of the driven machine (e.g. a conveyor belt) are independent of the motor load.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator can be set independently of each other. The times that you select depend on the application in question and can range from just a few 100 ms (e.g. for belt conveyor drives) to several minutes (e.g. for centrifuges).

When the motor is switched on/off via ON/OFF1, the motor also accelerates/decelerates in accordance with the times set in the ramp-function generator.

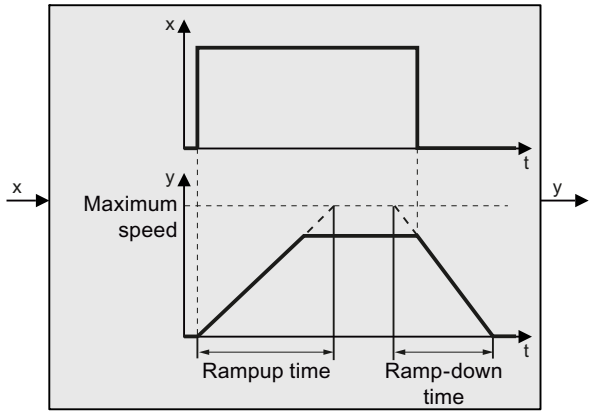


Table 8- 29 Parameters for minimum and maximum speed

Parameter	Description
p1120	**Ramp-function generator, ramp-up time** (factory setting: 10 s) Accelerating time in seconds from zero speed up to the maximum speed p1082
p1121	**Ramp-function generator, ramp-down time** (factory setting: 10 s) braking time in seconds from the maximum speed down to standstill
p1135	**OFF3 ramp-down time** (factory setting: 0 s) The quick stop (OFF3) has its own ramp-down time.

Note

Excessively short ramp-up and ramp-down times mean that the motor reaches its current limit when accelerating or braking. In this case, the set times are exceeded.

Extended ramp-function generator

In the extended ramp-function generator, the acceleration process can be made "softer" using initial and final rounding via parameters p1130 … p1134. Here, the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the motor are increased by the rounding times.

Rounding does not affect the ramp-down time in the event of a quick stop (OFF3).

You can find more information in function diagram 3070 and in the parameter list of the List Manual.

8.6 Motor control



Decision-making criteria for the control mode that is suitable for your application is provided in Section U/f control or speed control? (Page 60).

8.6.1 V/f control

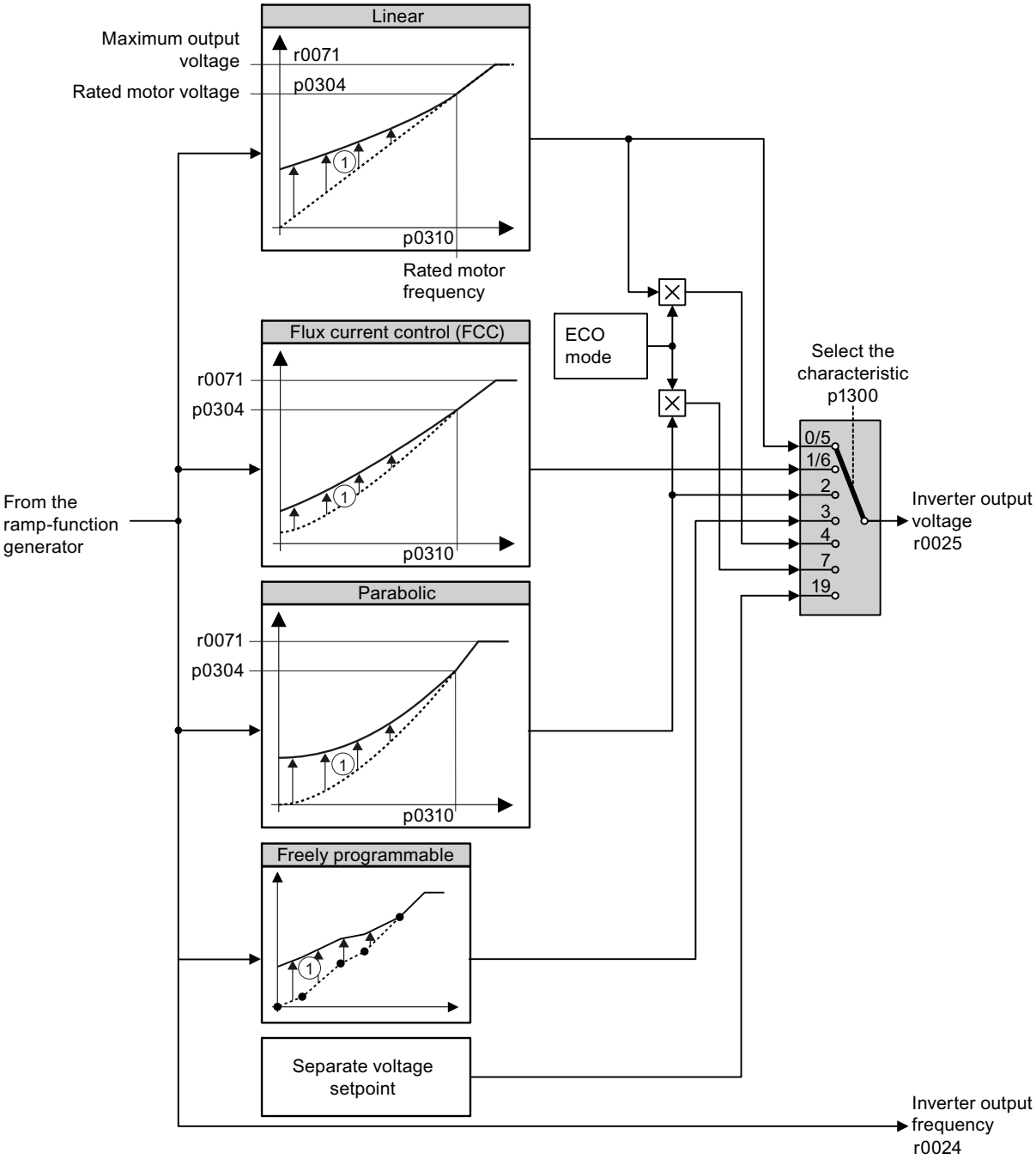
V/f control sets the voltage at the motor terminals on the basis of the specified speed setpoint. The relationship between the speed setpoint and stator voltage is calculated using characteristic curves. The required output frequency is calculated on the basis of the speed setpoint and the number of pole pairs of the motor (f = n * number of pole pairs / 60, in particular: f_{max} = p1082 * number of pole pairs / 60). The inverter provides the two most important characteristics (linear and square-law). User-defined characteristic curves are also supported.

V/f control is not a high-precision method of controling the speed of the motor. The speed setpoint and the speed of the motor shaft are always slightly different. The deviation depends on the motor load. If the connected motor is loaded with the rated torque, the motor speed is below the speed setpoint by the amount of the rated slip. If the load is driving the motor (i.e. the motor is operating as a generator), the motor speed is above the speed setpoint.

The characteristic is selected during commissioning, using p1300.

8.6.1.1 Characteristics of U/f control

The inverter has several U/f characteristics. Based on the characteristic, as the speed increases the inverter increases its output voltage.



① Voltage boost as a function of speed and torque

Figure 8-19 U/f characteristics of the inverter

The inverter increases its output voltage – also above the motor rated speed up to the maximum output voltage. The higher the line voltage, the greater the maximum inverter output voltage.

If the inverter has reached its maximum output voltage, then it can only increase its output frequency. From this point onwards, the motor is operated in field weakening; this means that the available torque linearly decreases with increasing speed.

The voltage boost of the characteristic improves motor behavior at low speeds.

8.6.1.2 Selecting the U/f characteristic

Procedure

With the Operator Panel:

- Select the suitable characteristic curve and set parameter p1300.

Using STARTER:

- Go online with STARTER.
- Select the U/f characteristic curve in one of the screen forms "speed controller" or "U/f control".

Table 8- 30 Linear and parabolic characteristics

Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
The required torque is independent of the speed	Conveyor belts, roller conveyors, chain conveyors, eccentric worm pumps, compressors, extruders, centrifuges, agitators, mixers	-	Linear	p1300 = 0
		The inverter equalizes the voltage drops across the stator resistance. Recommended for motors with a low power rating. Precondition: You have set the motor data according to the rating plate and have performed the motor identification after the basic commissioning.	Linear with Flux Current Control (FCC)	p1300 = 1
The required torque increases with the speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	Lower losses in the motor and inverter than for a linear characteristic.	Parabolic	p1300 = 2

Table 8- 31 Characteristics for special applications

Requirement	Application examples	Remark	Characteristic	Parameter
Applications with a low dynamic response and constant speed	Centrifugal pumps, radial fans, axial fans	The ECO mode results in additional energy saving when compared to the parabolic characteristic. If the speed setpoint is reached and remains unchanged for 5 seconds, then the inverter again reduces its output voltage.	ECO mode	p1300 = 4 or p1300 = 7
The inverter must keep the motor speed constant under all circumstances.	Drives in the textile sector	When the maximum current limit is reached, the inverter only reduces the stator voltage but not the speed.	precise frequency characteristic	p1300 = 5 or p1300 = 6
Freely adjustable U/f characteristic	Operating the inverter with a synchronous motor	-	Parameterizable characteristic	p1300 = 3
U/f characteristic with independent voltage setpoint	-	The interrelationship between the frequency and voltage is not calculated in the inverter, but is specified by the user.	Independent voltage setpoint	p1300 = 19

Additional information on U/f characteristics can be found in the parameter list and in the function diagrams 6300 ff of the List Manual.

8.6.1.3 Optimizing with a high break loose torque and brief overload

Voltage boost of the U/f control

The voltage boost acts on every U/f characteristic. The adjacent diagram shows the voltage boost using a linear characteristic as example.

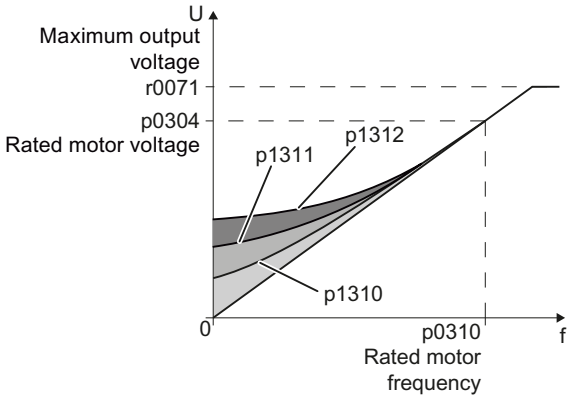


Table 8- 32 Parameters for the voltage boost

Parameter	Description
p1310	**Permanent voltage boost** (factory setting 50 %) Compensates voltage drops as a result of long motor cables and the ohmic losses in the motor.
p1311	**Voltage boost when accelerating** (Factory setting 0 %) Provides additional torque when the motor accelerates.
p1312	**Voltage boost when starting** (Factory setting 0 %) Provides additional torque, however, only when the motor accelerates for the first time after it has been switched on ("break loose torque").

Procedure

Only increase the voltage boost in small steps. Excessively high values in p1310 ... p1312 can cause the motor to overheat and switch off (trip) the inverter due to overcurrent .

- Power-up the motor with an average speed.
- Reduce the speed to just a few revolutions per minute.
- Check whether the motor rotates smoothly.
- If the motor does not rotate smoothly, or even remains stationary, increase the voltage boost p1310 until you are satisfied with the motor behavior.
- Accelerate the motor to the maximum speed with maximum load and check whether the motor follows the setpoint.
- If, when accelerating, the motor stalls, increase the voltage boost p1311 until the motor accelerates to the maximum speed without any problems.

In most cases, your motor will now behave satisfactorily. You will only have to increase parameter p1312 for applications with a noticeable break loose torque.

You will find more information about this function in the parameter list and in function diagram 6300 of the List Manual.

8.6.2 Closed-loop speed control

8.6.2.1 Properties of the sensorless vector control

Sensorless vector control

Using a motor model, the speed control calculates the load and the motor slip. As a result of this calculation, the inverter controls its output voltage and frequency so that the motor speed follows the setpoint, independent of the motor load.

Speed control is possible without directly measuring the motor speed and is therefore also called "sensorless vector control".

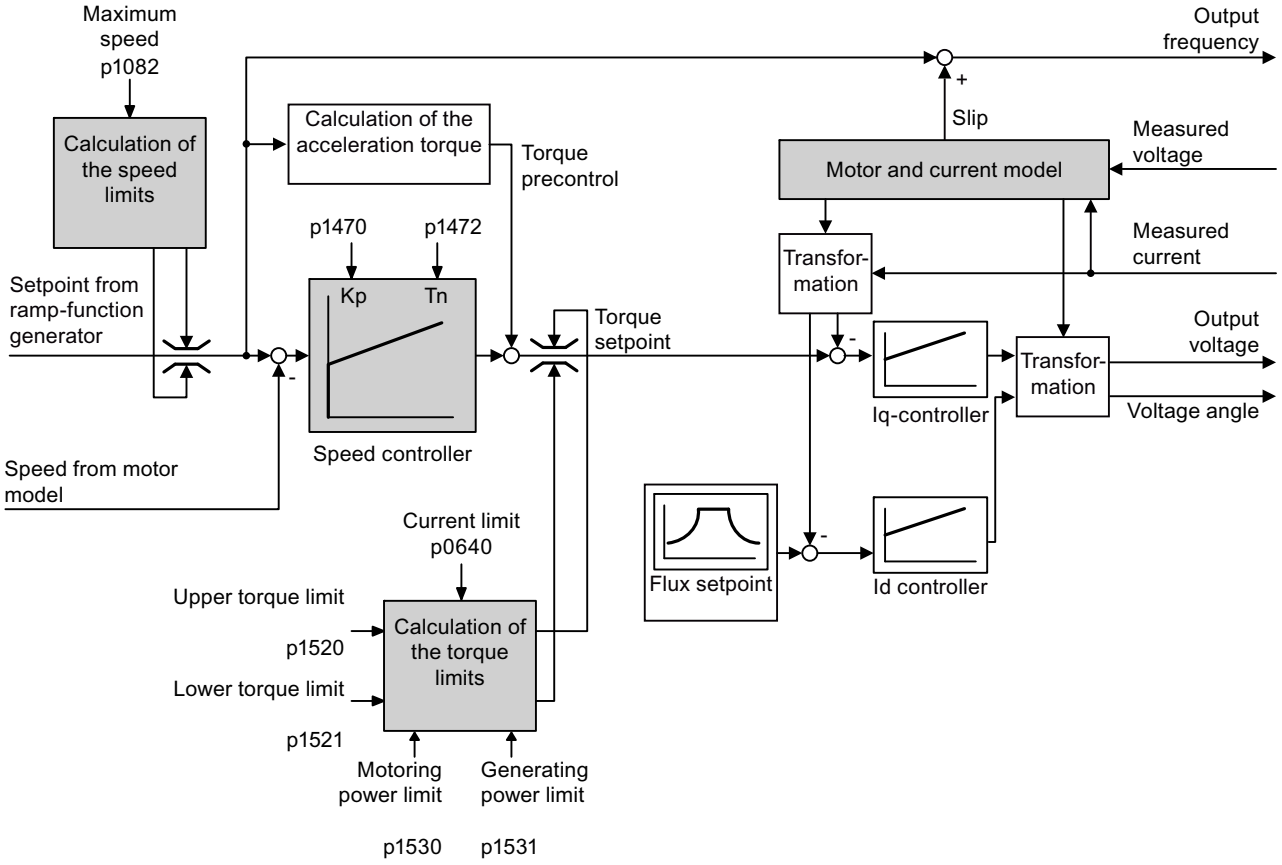


Figure 8-20 Simplified function diagram of sensorless vector control

8.6.2.2 Select motor control

Speed control is already preset

To achieve a good controller response, you must adapt the elements marked in gray in the figure in the overview diagram above. If you selected speed control as control mode in the basic commissioning, you will already have set the following:

- The maximum speed for your application.
- The motor and current model: If the motor data in the converter correspond to the motor data on the rating plate, then the motor and current model in the converter are correct and the vector control can operate satisfactorily.
- The converter calculates the torque limits matching the current limit that you have set for the basic commissioning.
  Regardless of it, you can also set additional positive and negative torque limits or limit the power of the motor.
- The converter has a preset speed controller with self-optimization (rotating measurement).
  If you want to continue to optimize this setting, follow the instructions further down in this chapter.

Select encoderless vector control

Procedure

With an Operator Panel:

- Set p1300 = 20.

Using STARTER:

- Go online with STARTER.
- Select speed control without encoder in the "Speed controller" or "V/f control" mask.

8.6.2.3 Re-optimize the speed controller

In the following cases you will need to manually optimize the speed controller:

- Your application does not permit self-optimization because the motor cannot rotate freely.
- You are dissatisfied with the result of the converter self-optimization.
- The converter interrupted the self-optimization with a fault message.

Procedure

- Temporarily set the ramp-up and ramp-down time of the ramp-function generator to zero.

  With an Operator Panel:
  - Set p1120 = 0 and p1121 = 0.

  Using STARTER:
  - Go online with STARTER.
  - Set the times to 0 in the "Ramp-function generator" screen form.

- Temporarily set the pre-control of the speed controller to zero.

  With an Operator Panel:
  - Set p1496 = 0.

  Using STARTER:
  - Go online with STARTER.
  - Set the precontrol to 0 in the "Speed controller" screen form.

- Enter a setpoint step and monitor the associated actual value, e.g. using the trace function in STARTER.
- Optimize the speed controller by changing controller parameters K_P and T_N until the drive runs optimally (see the diagrams below).

  With an Operator Panel:
  - K_P = p1470
  - T_N = p1472

  Using STARTER:
  - Go online with STARTER.
  - Set the controller in the "Speed controller" screen form.

- Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator back to their original value.
- Set the pre-control of the speed controller back to 100 %.

Table 8- 33 Optimum control response

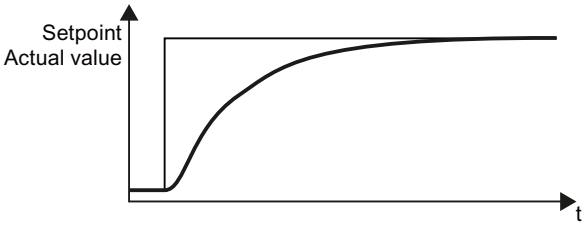
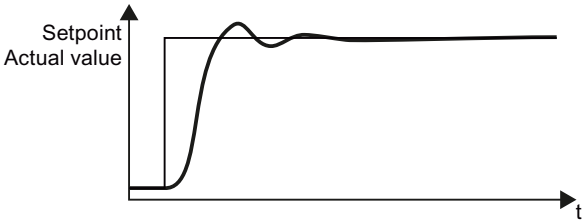
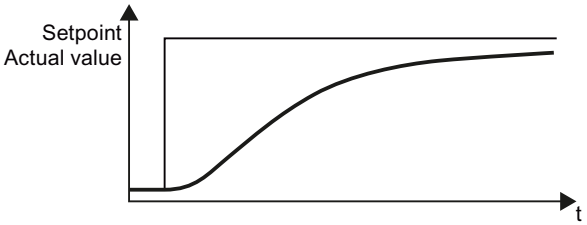
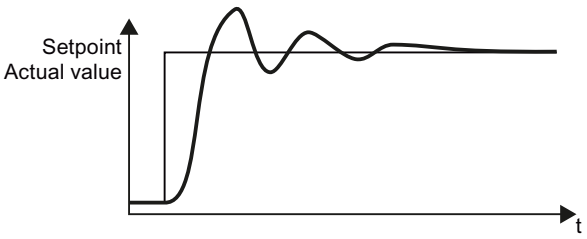
	**Optimum control response for applications that do not permit any overshoot.** The actual value approaches the setpoint, without any significant overshoot.
	**Optimum control behavior for fast correction and quick compensation of noise components.** The actual value approaches the setpoint and slightly overshoots (maximum 10% of the setpoint step).

Table 8- 34 Optimizing the control response

	**The actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint.** • Increase the proportional component K_P and reduce the integration time T_N.
	**The actual value quickly approaches the setpoint, but overshoots too much** • Decrease the proportional component K_P and increase the integration time T_N.

8.6.2.4 Torque control

Torque control is part of the vector control and normally receives its setpoint from the speed controller output. By deactivating the speed controller and directly entering the torque setpoint, the closed-loop speed control becomes closed-loop torque control. The inverter then no longer controls the motor speed, but the torque that the motor generates.

Typical applications for torque control

The torque control is used in applications where the motor speed is specified by the connected driven load. Examples of such applications include:

- Load distribution between master and slave drives:
  The master drive is speed controlled, the slave drive is torque controlled.
- Winding machines

Commissioning the torque control

The torque control only functions error-free if, during the basic commissioning, you correctly parameterized the motor data and performed the motor data identification with the motor in the cold state.

You can find the basic commissioning in the following sections:

- Basic commissioning with the BOP-2 (Page 63)
- Basic commissioning with STARTER (Page 68)

Table 8- 35 The most important torque control parameters

Parameter	Description
P1300 = …	**Control type:** 20: Vector control without speed encoder 22: Torque control without speed encoder
P0300 … P0360	**Motor data** is transferred from the rating plate during basic commissioning and calculated with the motor data identification
P1511 = …	**Additional torque**
P1520 = …	**Upper torque limit**
P1521 = …	**Lower torque limit**
P1530 = …	**Motoring power limit**
P1531 = …	**Regenerative power limit**

Additional information about this function is provided in the parameter list and in function diagrams 6030 onwards in the List Manual.

8.7 Protection functions



The frequency inverter offers protective functions against overtemperature and overcurrent for both the frequency inverter as well as the motor. Further, the frequency inverter protects itself against an excessively high DC link voltage when the motor is regenerating.

8.7.1 Inverter temperature monitoring

The inverter protects itself against overtemperature with different monitoring functions:

1. I2t monitoring (alarm A07805, fault F30005)
   The I^2t monitoring measures the actual utilization on the basis of a current reference value. Parameter r0036 [%] displays the actual utilization as a %. As long as the actual current does not exceed the reference value, then the utilization in r0036 = 0.
2. Monitoring the chip temperature of the power unit (alarm A05006 - fault F30024)
   The inverter monitors the difference in temperature between the power chip (IGBT) and the heat sink. The measured values are in r0037[1] [°C].
3. Heat sink monitoring (alarm A05000, fault F30004)
   The inverter monitors the heat sink temperature of the Power Module. The values are in r0037[0] [°C].

Inverter response

The inverter temperature is essentially determined by the resistive losses of the output current and the switching losses which occur when pulsing the motor. Parameter p0290 defines how the inverter responds to an excessively high temperature.

Parameter	Description
P0290	**Power unit overload response** (factory setting for SINAMICS G120 inverters with Power Module PM260: 0; factory setting for all of the inverters: 2) Setting the reaction to a thermal overload of the power unit: 0: Reduce output current (in vector control mode) or speed (in V/f mode) 1: No reduction, shutdown when overload threshold is reached (F30024) 2: Reduce pulse frequency and output current (in vector control mode) or pulse frequency and speed (in V/f mode) 3: Reduce pulse frequency
P0292	**Power unit temperature warning threshold** (factory setting: Heat sink [0] 5°C, power semiconductor [1] 15°C) The value is set as a difference to the shutdown temperature.

8.7.2 Motor temperature monitoring using a temperature sensor

Connecting the temperature sensor

You can use one of the following sensors to protect the motor against overtemperature:

- Temperature switch (e.g. bimetallic switch)
- PTC sensor
- KTY84 sensor

Connect the temperature sensor of the motor to terminals 14 and 15 of the inverter.

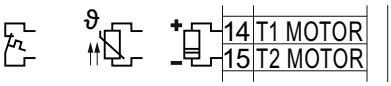


Figure 8-21 Connecting the motor temperature sensor at the inverter

Temperature switch

The inverter evaluates the temperature switch as follows:

- Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
  The inverter interprets a resistance ≥ 100 Ω as an open-circuit temperature switch and responds with an alarm.
- Overtemperature fault (F07011):
  If p0610 = 1 or p0610 = 2, in addition to an alarm, the inverter responds to this with a fault.

PTC sensor

The inverter evaluates the PTC sensor as follows:

- Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
  For a resistance > 1650 Ω, the inverter responds with an alarm.
- Overtemperature fault (F07011):
  If p0610 = 1 or p0610 = 2, in addition to an alarm, the inverter responds to this with a fault.
- Alarm and fault, sensor monitoring (A07015 or F07016):
  - The inverter interprets a resistance < 20 Ω as short-circuit.
  - The inverter responds to the short circuit with an alarm. If the alarm is present longer than 100 milliseconds, then this is followed by a fault.

KTY84 sensor

CAUTION
Ensure the correct polarity when connecting the KTY sensor: If a KTY sensor sensor is connected with the incorrect polarity, this can destroy the motor due to overheating, as the inverter cannot detect a motor overtemperature condition.

The inverter evaluates the KTY sensor as follows:

- Temperature measurement:
  The inverter determines the motor temperature in the range from -48 °C ... +248 °C.
- Overtemperature alarm (A07910):
  The inverter signals an alarm for a motor temperature > p0604.
- Overtemperature fault (F07011):
  The inverter signals a fault in the following cases:
  - Always for a motor temperature > p0605.
  - In addition, for a motor temperature > p0604, if p0610 = 1 or p0610 = 2.
- Alarm and fault, sensor monitoring (A07015 or F07016):
  - Wire-break:
    The inverter interprets a resistance > 2120 Ω as a wire break.
  - Short-circuit:
    The inverter interprets a resistance < 50 Ω as short-circuit.
  - The inverter responds to a wire break or short circuit with an alarm. If the alarm is present longer than 100 milliseconds, then this is followed by a fault.

Parameters for the temperature monitoring

Table 8- 36 Setting the monitoring

Parameter	Description
p0335	**Specify the motor cooling** 0: Self-ventilated - with fan on the motor shaft (factory setting) 1: Forced ventilation - with a separately driven fan 2: Self-ventilated and inner cooling (open-circuit cooling) 3: Forced ventilated and inner cooling (open-circuit cooling)
p0601	**Motor temperature sensor type** 0: No sensor (factory setting) 1: PTC (→ p0604) 2: KTY84 (→ p0604, p0605) 4: Temperature switch
p0604	**Motor temperature alarm threshold** (factory setting 130 °C)
p0605	**Motor temperature fault threshold** (Factory setting: 145 °C) Setting for KTY84 sensor. The parameter has no significance for a PTC sensor.

Parameter	Description
p0610	**Motor overtemperature response** Determines the response when the motor temperature reaches the alarm threshold p0604. 0: Alarm (A07910), but no response of the motor. 1: Alarm (A07910) and reduction of the current limit (factory setting) - this reduces the motor speed. 2: Fault (F07011) and shutdown.
p0640	**Current limit** (input in A)

Additional information on the motor temperature monitoring can be found in function diagram 8016 of the List Manual.

8.7.3 Protecting the motor by calculating the motor temperature

The temperature calculation is only possible in the vector control mode (P1300 ≥ 20) and functions by calculating a thermal motor model.

Table 8- 37 Parameter to sense the temperature without using a temperature sensor

Parameters	Description
P0621 = 1	**Motor temperature measurement after restarting** 0: No temperature measurement (factory setting) 1: Temperature measurement after the motor is switched on for the first time 2: Temperature measurement each time that the motor is switched on
P0622	**Magnetization time of the motor for temperature measurement after starting** *(set automatically as the result of motor data identification)*
P0625 = 20	**Ambient motor temperature** Enter the ambient motor temperature in°C at the instant that the motor data is acquired (factory setting: **20°C**). The difference between the motor temperature and motor environment (P0625) must lie within a tolerance range of approx. ± 5 °C.

8.7.4 Overcurrent protection

During vector control, the motor current remains within the torque limits set there.

During U/f control, the maximum current controller (I_{max} controller) protects the motor and inverter against overload by limiting the output current.

Method of operation of I_{max} controller

If an overload situation occurs, the speed and stator voltage of the motor are reduced until the current is within the permissible range. If the motor is in regenerative mode, i.e. it is being driven by the connected machine, the I_{max} controller increases the speed and stator voltage of the motor to reduce the current.

Note

The inverter load is only reduced if the motor torque decreases at lower speeds (e.g. for fans).

In the regenerative mode, the current only decreases if the torque decreases at a higher speed.

Settings

You only have to change the factory settings of the I_{max} controller if the drive tends to oscillate when it reaches the current limit or it is shut down due to overcurrent.

Table 8- 38 I_{max} controller parameters

Parameter	Description
P0305	**Rated motor current**
P0640	**Motor current limit**
P1340	**Proportional gain of the I_{max} controller for speed reduction**
P1341	**Integral time of the I_{max} controller for speed reduction**
r0056.13	**Status: I_{max} controller active**
r1343	**Speed output of I_{max} controller** Shows the amount to which the I-max controller reduces the speed.

For more information about this function, see function diagram 1690 in the List Manual.

8.7.5 Limiting the maximum DC link voltage

How does the motor generate overvoltage?

An induction motor operates as a generator if it is driven by the connected load. A generator converts mechanical power into electrical power. The electric power flows back into the converter and causes V_{DC} in the converter to increase.

Above a critical DC link voltage both the converter as well as the motor will be damaged. Before the voltage can reach critical levels, however, the converter switches the motor off with the fault message "DC link overvoltage".

Protecting the motor and converter against overvoltage

The V_{DCmax} controller prevents – as far as the application permits – the DC link voltage from reaching critical levels. The V_{DCmax} controller increases the ramp-down time of the motor during braking, so that the motor feeds back only as little power to the converter as is covered by the losses in the converter.

The V_{DCmax} controller is not suitable for applications in which the motor is permanently in the regenerative mode, e.g. in hoisting gear or when large flywheel masses are braked. Further information on converter braking methods can be found in Section Braking functions of the converter (Page 229).

There are two different groups of parameters for the V_{DCmax} controller, depending on whether the motor is being operated with U/f control or vector control.

Table 8- 39 V_{DCmax} controller parameters

Parameter for V/f control	Parameter for vector control	Description
p1280 = 1	p1240 = 1	**V_{DC} controller or V_{DC} monitoring configuration**(factory setting: 1)1: Enable V_{DCmax} controller
r1282	r1242	**V_{DCmax} controller switch-on level** Shows the value of the DC-link voltage above which the V_{DCmax} controller is active
p1283	p1243	**V_{DCmax} controller dynamic factor** (factory setting: 100 %) scaling of the control parameters P1290, P1291 and P1292
p1290	p1250	**V_{DCmax} controller proportional gain** (factory setting: 1)
p1291	p1251	**V_{DCmax} controller reset time** (factory setting p1291: 40 ms, factory setting p1251: 0 ms)
p1292	p1252	**V_{DCmax} controller rate time** (factory setting p1292: 10 ms, factory setting p1252: 0 ms)

Parameter for V/f control	Parameter for vector control	Description
p1294	p1254	**V_{DCmax}-controller automatic recording ON-signal level**(factory setting p1294: 0, factory setting p1254: 1)Activates or deactivates automatic detection of the switch-on levels of the V_{DCmax}controller. 0: Automatic detection disabled 1: Automatic detection enabled
p0210	p0210	**Unit supply voltage** If p1254 or p1294 = 0, the inverter uses this parameter to calculate the intervention thresholds of the V_{DCmax} controller. Set this parameter to the actual value of the input voltage.

For more information about this function, see the List Manual (function diagrams 6320 and 6220).

8.8 Status messages



Information about the inverter state (alarms, faults, actual values) can be output via inputs and outputs and also via the communication interface.

Details on evaluating the inverter state via inputs and outputs are provided in Section Adapting the terminal strip (Page 79).

The evaluation of the inverter state via the communication interface is realized using the inverter status word. Details on this are provided in the individual sections of Chapter Configuring the fieldbus (Page 91).

8.8.1 System runtime

By evaluating the system runtime of the inverter, you can decide when you should replace components subject to wear in time before they fail - such as fans, motors and gear units.

Principle of operation

The system runtime is started as soon as the Control Unit power supply is switched-on. The system runtime stops when the Control Unit is switched off.

The system runtime comprises r2114[0] (milliseconds) and r2114[1] (days):

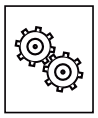
System runtime = r2114[1] × days + r2114[0] × milliseconds

If r2114[0] has reached a value of 86,400,000 ms (24 hours), r2114[0] is set to the value 0 and the value of r2114[1] is increased by 1.

Parameter	Description
r2114[0]	System runtime (ms)
r2114[1]	System runtime (days)

You cannot reset the system runtime.

8.9 Application-specific functions



The inverter offers a series of functions that you can use depending on your particular application, e.g.:

- Unit changeover
- Braking functions
- Automatic restart and flying restart
- Basic process control functions
- Logical and arithmetic functions using function blocks that can be freely interconnected

Please refer to the following sections for detailed descriptions.

- Essential service mode
- Multi-zone controller
- Cascade control
- Bypass
- Energy-saving mode

8.9.1 Unit changeover

Description

With the unit changeover function, you can adapt the inverter to the line supply (50/60 Hz) and also select US units or SI units as base units.

Independent of this, you can define the units for process variables or change over to percentage values.

Specifically, you have the following options:

- Changing over the motor standard (Page 224) IEC/NEMA (adaptation to the line supply)
- Changing over the unit system (Page 225)
- Changing over process variables for the technology controller (Page 226)

NOTICE
The motor standard, the unit system as well as the process variables can only be changed offline. The procedure is described in Section Changing of the units with STARTER (Page 227).

Note

Restrictions for the unit changeover function

- The values on the rating plate of the inverter or motor cannot be displayed as percentage values.
- Using the unit changeover function a multiple times (for example, percent → physical unit 1 → physical unit 2 → percent) may lead to the original value being changed by one decimal place as a result of rounding errors.
- If the unit is changed over into percent and the reference value is then changed, the percentage values relate to the new reference value.
  Example:
  – For a reference speed of 1500 rpm, a fixed speed of 80% corresponds to a speed of 1200 rpm.
  – If the reference speed is changed to 3000 rpm, then the value of 80% is kept and now means 2400 rpm.

Reference variables for unit changeover

p2000 Reference frequency/speed

p2001 Reference voltage

p2002 Reference current

p2003 Reference torque

r2004 Reference power

p2005 Reference angle

p2007 Reference acceleration

8.9.1.1 Changing over the motor standard

You change over the motor standard using p0100. The following applies:

- p0100 = 0: IEC motor (50 Hz, SI units)
- p0100 = 1: NEMA motor (60 Hz, US units)
- p0100 = 2: NEMA motor (60 Hz, SI units)

The parameters listed below are affected by the changeover.

Table 8- 40 Variables affected by changing over the motor standard

P no.	Designation	Unit for p0100 =		
		0*)	1	2
r0206	Power Module rated power	kW	HP	kW
p0307	Rated motor power	kW	HP	kW
p0316	Motor torque constant	Nm/A	lbf ft/A	Nm/A
r0333	Rated motor torque	Nm	lbf ft	Nm
r0334	Motor torque constant, actual	Nm/A	lbf ft/A	Nm/A
p0341	Motor moment of inertia	kgm^2	lb ft^2	kgm^2
p0344	Motor weight (for thermal motor type)	kg	Lb	kg
r1969	Speed_cont_opt moment of inertia determined	kgm^2	lb ft^2	kgm^2

*) Factory setting

8.9.1.2 Changing over the unit system

You change over the unit system using p0505. The following selection options are available:

- P0505 = 1: SI units (factory setting)
- P0505 = 2: SI units or % relative to SI units
- P0505 = 3: US units
- P0505 = 4: US units or % relative to US units

Note

Special features

The percentage values for p0505 = 2 and for p0505 = 4 are identical. In order to perform internal calculations and output values that are changed back over to physical variables, however, an important factor is whether the changeover process relates to SI or US units.

In the case of variables for which changeover to % is not possible, the following applies: p0505 = 1 ≙ p0505 = 2 and p0505 = 3 ≙ p0505 = 4.

In the case of variables whose units are identical in the SI system and US system, and which can be displayed as a percentage, the following applies:
p0505 = 1 ≙ p0505 = 3 and p0505 = 2 ≙ p0505 = 4.

Parameters affected by changeover

The parameters affected by changing over the unit system are grouped according to unit. An overview of the unit groups and the possible units can be found in the List Manual in the Section "Unit group and unit selection".

8.9.1.3 Changing over process variables for the technology controller

Note

We recommend that the units and reference values of the technology controller are coordinated and harmonized with one another during commissioning.

Subsequent modification in the reference variable or the unit can result in incorrect calculations or displays.

Changing over process variables of the technology controller

You change over the process variables of the technology controller using p0595. For physical values, you define the reference variable in p0596.

The parameters affected by changing over units of the technology controller belong to unit group 9_1. For details, please refer to the section titled "Unit group and unit choice" in the List Manual.

Switching the process variables of the additional technology controller 0

The process variables of the additional technology controller 0 switch over via p11026. You define the reference variable for absolute units in p11027.

The parameters affected by the unit switchover of the additional technology controller 0 belong to units group 9_2. Details can be found in the Parameter Manual, under the section entitled "units group and unit selection".

Switching the process variables of the additional technology controller 1

The process variables of the additional technology controller 1 switch over via p11126. You define the reference variable for absolute units in p11127.

The parameters affected by the unit switchover of the additional technology controller 1 belong to units group 9_3. Details can be found in the Parameter Manual, under the section entitled "units group and unit selection".

Switching the process variables of the additional technology controller 2

The process variables of the additional technology controller 2 switch over via p11226. You define the reference variable for absolute units in p11227.

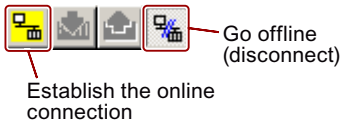
The parameters affected by the unit switchover of the additional technology controller 2 belong to units group 9_4. Details can be found in the Parameter Manual, under the section entitled "units group and unit selection".

8.9.1.4 Changing of the units with STARTER

The converter must be in the offline mode in order to change over the units.

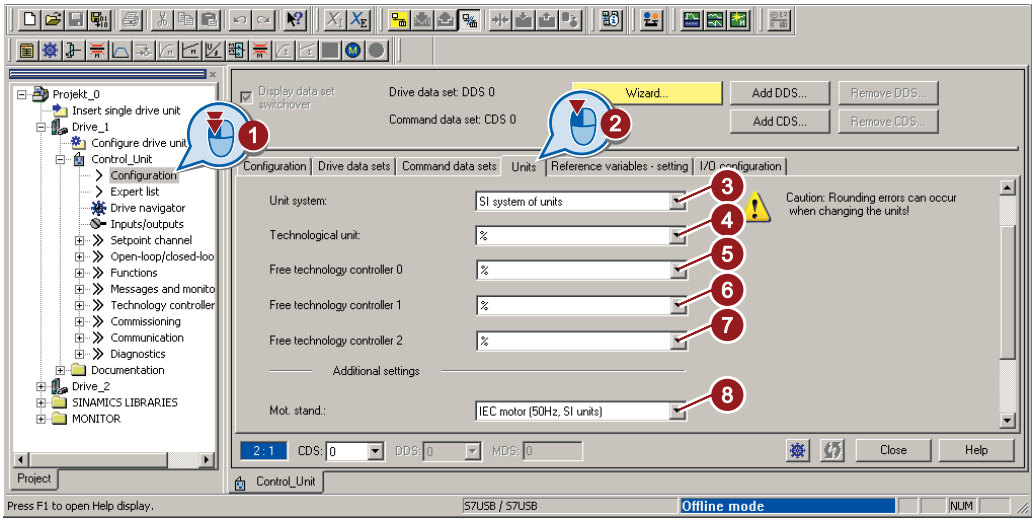
STARTER shows whether you change settings online in the converter or change offline in the PC (**Online mode** / **Offline mode**).

You switch over the mode using the adjacent buttons in the menu bar.



Procedure

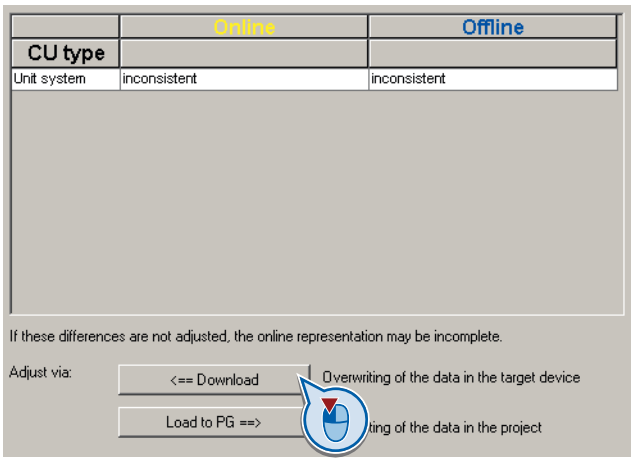
- Go to the "Units" tab in the configuration screen form to change over the units.



③ Changing over the unit system
④ Selecting process variables of the technology controller
⑤ Select process variables of the additional technology controller 0
⑥ Select process variables of the additional technology controller 2
⑦ Select process variables of the additional technology controller 1
⑧ adapting to the line supply

Figure 8-22 Unit changeover

- Save your settings and go online.
  In this case, the converter detects that other units or process variables have been set offline than are actually in the converter; the converter displays this in the following screen form:
- Accept these settings in the converter.



8.9.2 Braking functions of the converter

8.9.2.1 Comparison of electrical braking methods

Regenerative power

If an induction motor electrically brakes the connected load and the mechanical power exceeds the electrical losses, then it operates as a generator. The motor converts mechanical power into electrical power. Examples of applications, in which regenerative operation briefly occurs, include:

- Grinding disk drives
- Fans

For certain drive applications, the motor can operate in the regenerative mode for longer periods of time, e.g.:

- Centrifuges
- Hoisting gear and cranes
- Conveyor belts with downward movement of load (vertical or inclined conveyors)

Depending on the Power Modules used, SINAMICS G inverters offer the following options to either convert the regenerative power of the motor into heat or to feed this power back into the line supply:

- DC braking (Page 231)
  for Power Modules **PM230, PM240, PM250** and **PM260**
- Compound braking (Page 235)
  for Power Module **PM240**
- Dynamic braking (Page 236)
  for Power Module **PM240**
- Braking with regenerative feedback to the line (Page 240)
  for Power Modules **PM250** and **260**

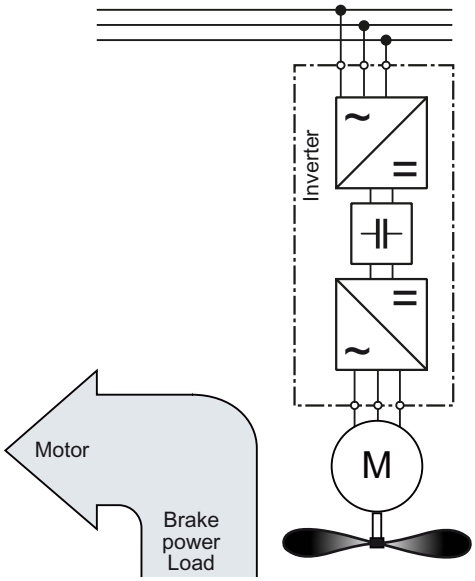
A comparison with the main features of the individual braking functions is listed in the following paragraphs.

Main features of the braking functions

DC braking

The motor converts the regenerative power into heat.

- *Advantage:* The motor brakes without the inverter having to process the regenerative energy
- *Disadvantages:* significant increase in the motor temperature; no defined braking characteristics; no constant braking torque; no braking torque at standstill; regenerative power is lost as heat; does not function when the line supply fails



Compound braking

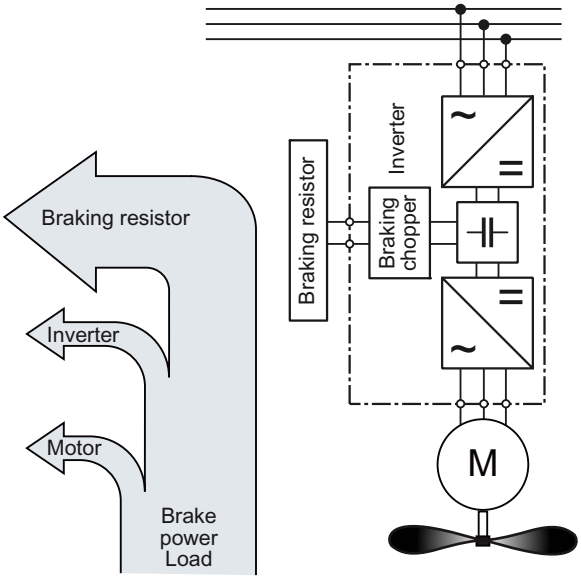
The motor converts the regenerative power into heat.

- *Advantage:* Defined braking characteristics, the motor brakes without the inverter having to convert any regenerative energy
- *Disadvantages:* significant motor temperature rise; no constant braking torque; regenerative power is dissipated as heat; does not function when the line supply fails

Dynamic braking

The inverter converts the regenerative power into heat using a braking resistor.

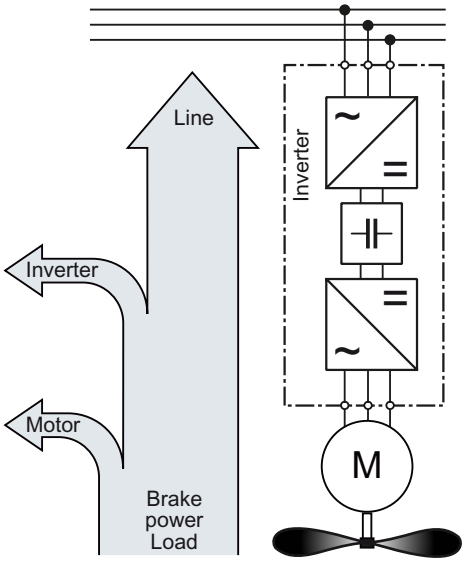
- *Advantages:* defined braking characteristics; no additional motor temperature increase; constant braking torque; in principle, also functions when the power fails
- *Disadvantages:* Braking resistor required; regenerative power is dissipated as heat



Braking with regenerative feedback into the line supply

The converter feeds the regenerative power back into the line supply.

- *Advantages:* Constant braking torque; the regenerative power is not converted into heat, but is regenerated into the line supply; can be used in all applications; continuous regenerative operation is possible - e.g. when lowering a crane load
- *Disadvantage:* Does not function when power fails



Braking with regenerative feedback into the line supply

Braking method depending on the application

Table 8- 41 What Power Module is suitable for what application?

Application examples	Electrical braking methods	Power Modules that can be used
Pumps, fans, mixers, compressors, extruders	Not required	PM230, PM240, PM250, PM260
Grinding machines, conveyor belts	DC braking, compound braking	PM240
Centrifuges, vertical conveyors, hoisting gear, cranes, winders	Dynamic braking	PM240
	Braking with regenerative feedback into the line supply	PM250, PM260

8.9.2.2 DC braking

DC braking is used for applications without regenerative feedback into the line supply, where the motor can be more quickly braked by impressing a DC current than along a braking ramp.

Typical applications for DC braking include:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Conveyor belts

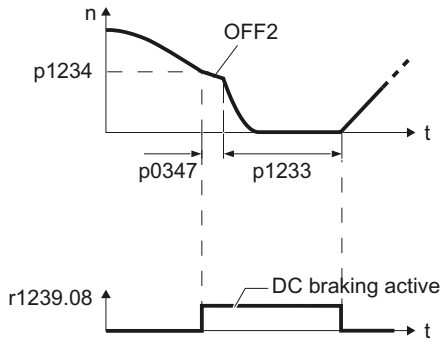
Whether DC braking or ramp-down with an OFF1 command is more effective depends on the motor properties.

Principle of operation

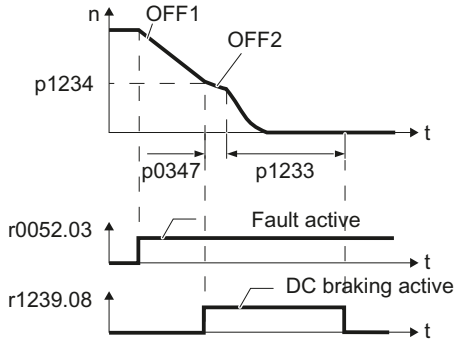
With DC braking, the inverter outputs an internal OFF2 command for the time that it takes to demagnetize the motor - and then impresses the braking current for the duration of the DC braking.

The following operating modes are available for DC braking.

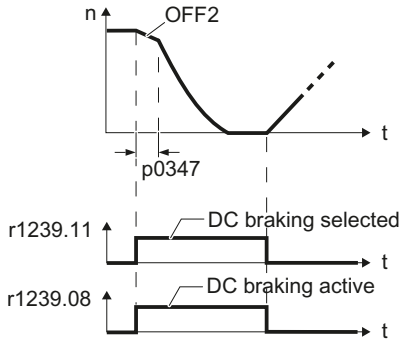
DC braking when the start speed for DC braking is fallen below
Precondition: P1230 = 1 and p1231 = 14)



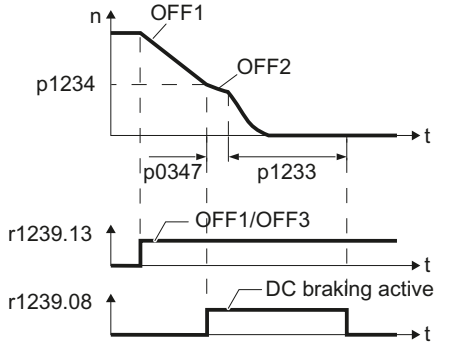
DC braking when a fault occurs
Precondition: Fault number and fault reaction assigned via p2100 and p2101



Activating DC braking independent of the speed using a control command
Precondition: p1231 = 4



DC braking when the motor is switched off
Precondition: P1231 = 5 or p1230 = 1 and p1231 = 14



DC braking when the start speed for DC braking is fallen below

DC braking is automatically activated as soon as the motor speed falls below the start speed for DC braking. However, the motor speed must have first exceeded the start speed for DC braking. Once the DC braking time is complete, the inverter switches to normal operation. If p1230 is set to 0, DC braking can also be canceled before the time defined in p1233.

DC braking when a fault occurs

If a fault occurs, where the configured response is DC braking, then the inverter first brakes the motor along the down ramp until the start speed for DC braking is reached, and then starts DC braking.

Activating DC braking independent of the speed using a control command

DC braking starts independent of the motor speed, as soon as the control command for braking (e.g. via DI3: P1230 = 722.3) is issued. If the braking command is revoked, the inverter returns to normal operation and the motor accelerates to its setpoint.

Note: The value of p1230 is displayed in r1239.11.

DC braking when the motor is switched off

If the motor is switched off with OFF1 or OFF3, the inverter first brakes the motor along the down ramp until the start speed for DC braking is reached, and then starts DC braking. The motor is then switched into a torque-free condition (OFF2).

Note

In the following operating modes, it is possible that the motor is still rotating after DC braking. This is the reason that in these operating modes "Flying restart (Page 241)" must be activated:

- DC braking when the start speed for DC braking is fallen below
- Activating DC braking independent of the speed using a control command
- DC braking when the motor is switched off

The DC braking function can only be set for induction motors.

⚠ CAUTION

DC braking converts some of the kinetic energy of the motor and load into heat in the motor (temperature rise). The motor will overheat if the braking operation lasts too long or the motor is braked too often.

DC braking parameters

Table 8- 42 Parameters for configuring DC braking

Parameter	Description
p1230	**Activate DC braking (BICO parameter)** The value for this parameter (0 or 1) can be either entered directly or specified by means of an interconnection with a control command.
p1231	**Configure DC braking** • p1231 = 0, no DC braking • p1231 = 4, general enabling of DC braking • p1231 = 5, DC braking for OFF1/3, independent of p1230 • P1231 = 14, enables DC braking for the case that the motor speed falls below the start speed for DC braking.

Table 8- 43 Parameters for configuring DC braking in the event of faults

Parameter	Description
p2100	**Set fault number for fault reaction** (factory setting: 0) Enter the fault number for which DC braking should be activated, e.g.: p2100[3] = 7860 (external fault 1).
p2101 = 6	**Fault reaction setting** (factory setting: 0) Assigning the fault response: p2101[3] = 6.
The fault is assigned an index of p2100. The associated fault response must be assigned the same index in p2101. In the List Manual of the inverter - in the "Faults and alarms" list - possible fault responses are listed for every fault. The entry "DCBRAKE" means that for this particular fault, DC braking can be set as fault response.	

Table 8- 44 Additional parameters for setting DC braking

Parameter	Description
p1232	**DC braking braking current** (factory setting: 0 A) Setting the braking current for the DC braking.
p1233	**DC braking duration** (factory setting: 1 s)
p1234	**DC braking start speed** (factory setting: 210000 rpm) DC braking starts – assuming that it has been correspondingly parameterized (p1230/p1231) – as soon as the actual speed falls below this threshold.
p0347	**Motor de-excitation** The parameter is calculated via p0340 = 1, 3. The inverter can trip due to an overcurrent during DC braking if the de-excitation time is too short.

8.9.2.3 Compound braking

Compound braking is typically used for applications in which the motor is normally operated at a constant speed and is only braked down to standstill in longer time intervals, e.g.:

- Centrifuges
- Saws
- Grinding machines
- Horizontal conveyors

Principle of operation

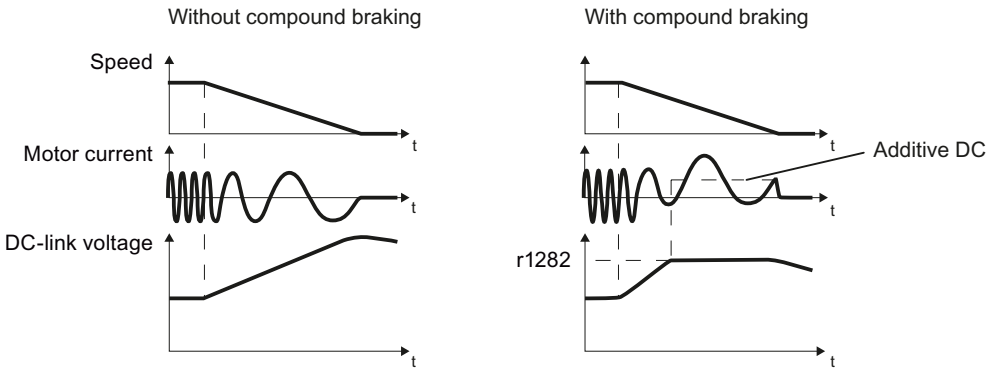


Figure 8-23 Motor brakes with and without active compound braking

Compound braking prevents the DC link voltage increasing above a critical value. The inverter activates compound braking depending on the DC link voltage. Above a DC link voltage threshold (r1282), the inverters adds a DC current to the motor current. The DC current brakes the motor and prevents an excessive increase in the DC link voltage.

Note

Compound braking is only active in conjunction with the V/f control.

Compound braking does not operate in the following cases:

- The "flying restart" function is active
- DC braking is active
- Vector control is selected

Parameterizing compound braking

Table 8- 45 Parameters to enable and set compound braking

Parameter	Description
P3856	**Compound braking current (%)** With the compound braking current, the magnitude of the DC current is defined, which is additionally generated when stopping the motor for operation with V/f control to increase the braking effect. P3856 = 0 Compound braking locked P3856 = 1 … 250 Current level of the DC braking current as a % of the rated motor current (P0305) Recommendation: p3856 < 100 % × (r0209 - r0331) / p0305 / 2
r3859.0	**Status word, compound braking** r3859.0 = 1: Compound braking is active

⚠ CAUTION

Compound braking converts part of the kinetic energy of the motor and load into motor heat (temperature rise). The motor can overheat if braking lasts too long or the drive is braked too frequently.

8.9.2.4 Dynamic braking

Dynamic braking is typically used in applications in which dynamic motor behavior is required at different speeds or continuous direction changes, e.g.:

- Horizontal conveyors
- Vertical and inclined conveyors
- Hoisting gear

Principle of operation

The inverter controls the braking chopper depending on its DC link voltage. The DC link voltage increases as soon as the inverter absorbs the regenerative power when braking the motor. The braking chopper converts this power into heat in the braking resistor. This therefore prevents the DC link voltage increasing above the limit value $V_{DC\ link,\ max}$.

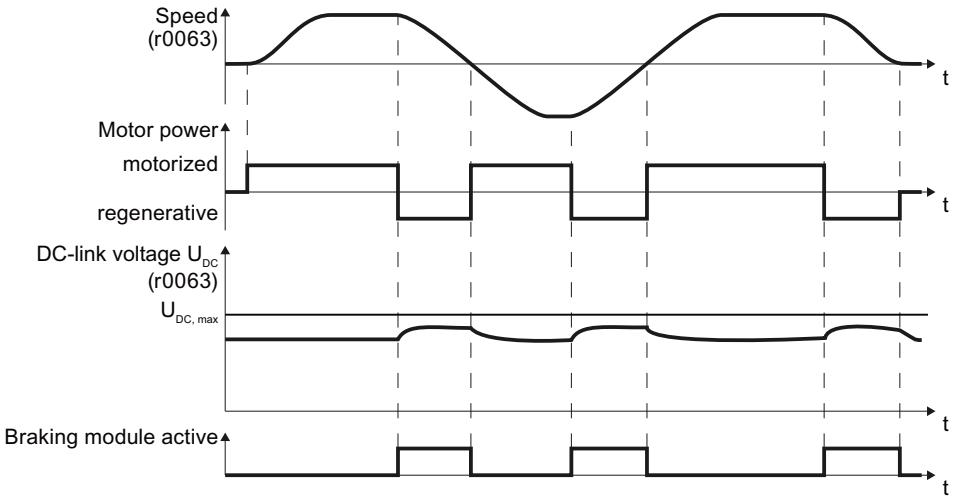


Figure 8-24 Simplified representation of dynamic braking with respect to time

Braking resistor connection

- Connect the braking resistor to terminals R1 and R2 of the Power Module
- Ground the braking resistor directly to the control cabinet's grounding bar. It is not permissible that the braking resistor is grounded via the PE terminals on the Power Module.
- If you must observe the EMC guidelines, pay special attention to the shielding.
- Evaluate the braking resistor's temperature monitoring (terminals T1 and T2) such that the motor is switched off when the resistor experiences overtemperature.
  You can do this in the following two ways:
  - Use a contactor to disconnect the converter from the line as soon as the temperature monitoring responds.
  - Connect the contact of the temperature monitoring function of the braking resistor with a free digital input of your choice on the converter. Set the function of this digital input to the OFF2 command.

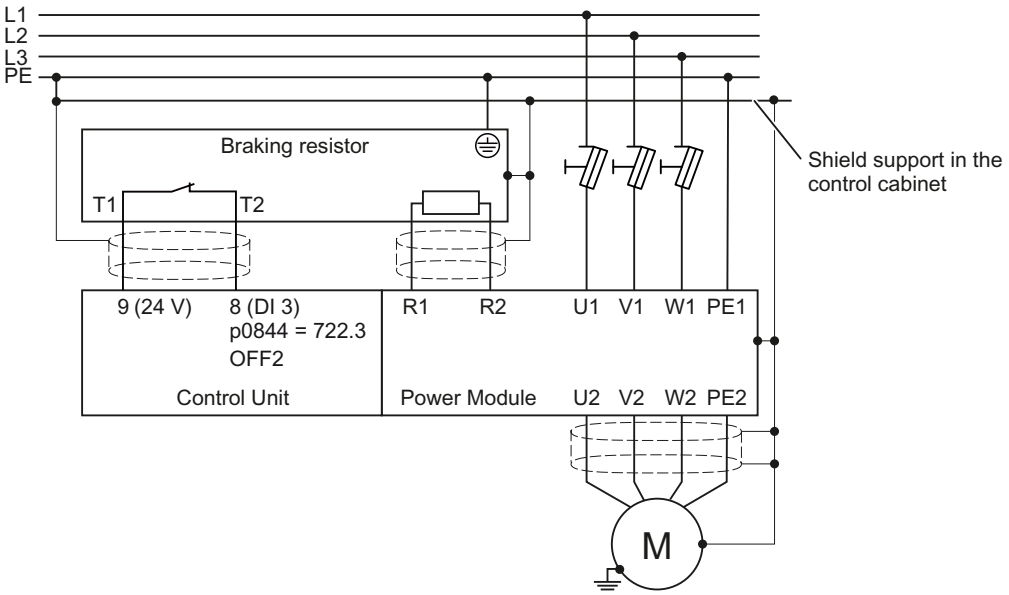


Figure 8-25 Braking resistor connection (example: Temperature monitoring via DI 3)

You will find more information about the braking resistor in the installation instructions for Power Module PM240 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/30563173/133300).

⚠ WARNING

If an unsuitable braking resistor is used, this could result in a fire and severely damage the converter.

The temperature of braking resistors increases during operation. For this reason, avoid coming into direct contact with braking resistors. Maintain sufficient clearances around the braking resistor and ensure that there is adequate ventilation.

Procedure: Set dynamic braking

In order to optimally utilize the connected braking resistor, you must know the braking power that occurs in your particular application.

Table 8- 46 Parameter

Parameter	Description	
p0219	**Braking power of the braking resistor** (factory setting: 0 kW) Set the maximum braking power that the braking resistor must handle in your particular application. Under certain circumstances, for low braking power ratings, the converter extends the ramp-down time of the motor. **Example**: In your particular application, the motor brakes every 10 seconds. In so doing, the braking resistor must handle a braking power of 1 kW for 2 s. Use a braking resistor with a continuous power rating of 1 kW × 2 s / 10 s = 0.2 kW and set the maximum braking power to: p0219 = 1 (kW).	
p0844	**No coast down/coast down (OFF2) signal source 1**	
	p0840 = 722.x	Monitor the overtemperature of the braking resistor with digital input x of the converter.

8.9.2.5 Braking with regenerative feedback to the line

Regenerative braking is typically used in applications where braking energy is generated either frequently or for longer periods of time, e.g.:

- Centrifuges
- Unwinders
- Cranes and hoisting gear

Pre-requisite for regenerative braking is the Power Module PM250 or PM260.

The inverter can feed back up to 100% of its power into the line supply (referred to "High Overload" base load, see Section Technical data, Power Modules (Page 329)).

Parameterization of braking with regenerative feedback to the line

Table 8- 47 Settings for braking with regenerative feedback to the line

Parameter	Description
Limiting the regenerative feedback for V/f control (P1300 < 20)	
p0640	**Motor overload factor** Limiting the regenerative power is not directly possible with V/f control, but can be achieved indirectly by limiting the motor current. If the current exceeds this value for longer than 10 s, the inverter shuts down the motor with fault message F07806.
Limiting feedback with vector control (P1300 ≥ 20)	
P1531	**Regenerative power limit** The maximum regenerative load is entered as negative value via p1531. (-0.01 … -100000.00 kW). Values higher than the rated value of the power unit (r0206) are not possible.

8.9.3 Automatic restart and flying restart

8.9.3.1 Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running

If you switch on the motor while it is still running, then with a high degree of probability, a fault will occur due to overcurrent (overcurrent fault F07801). Examples of applications involving an unintentionally rotating motor directly before switching on:

- The motor rotates after a brief line interruption.
- A flow of air turns the fan impeller.
- A load with a high moment of inertia drives the motor.

After the ON command, the "flying restart" function initially synchronizes the inverter output frequency to the motor speed and then accelerates the motor up to the setpoint.

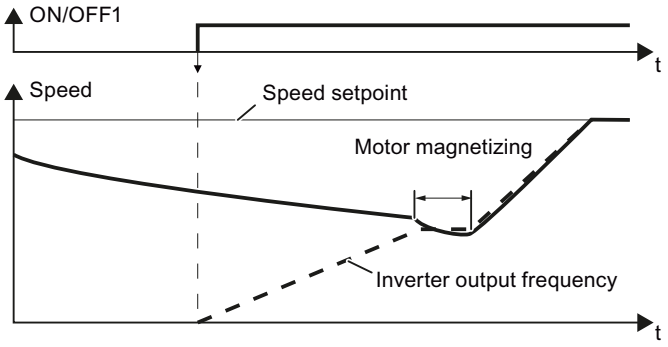


Figure 8-26 Principle of operation of the "flying restart" function

Setting "flying restart" function

If the inverter simultaneously drives several motors, then you must only use the "flying restart" function if the speed of all of the motors is always the same (group drive with a mechanical coupling).

Table 8- 48 Basic setting

Parameter	Description	
P1200	**Flying restart operating mode** (factory setting: 0)	
	0	Flying restart is locked
	1	Flying restart is enabled, look for the motor in both directions, start in direction of setpoint
	4	Flying restart is enabled, only search in direction of setpoint

Table 8- 49 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
P1201	**Flying restart enable signal source** (factory setting: 1) Defines a control command, e.g. a digital input, through which the flying restart function is enabled.
P1202	**Flying restart search current** (Factory setting for Power Module PM230: 90 %. Factory setting for PM240, PM250 and PM260: 100%) Defines the search current with respect to the motor magnetizing current (r0331), which flows in the motor while the flying restart function is being used.
P1203	**Flying restart search speed factor** (Factory setting for Power Module PM230: 150 %. Factory setting for PM240, PM250 and PM260: 100%) The value influences the speed with which the output frequency is changed during the flying restart. A higher value results in a longer search time. If the inverter does not find the motor, reduce the search speed (increase p1203).

8.9.3.2 Automatic switch-on

The automatic restart includes two different functions:

1. The inverter automatically acknowledges faults.
2. After a fault occurs or after a power failure, the inverter automatically switches-on the motor again.

This automatic restart function is primarily used in applications where the motor is controlled locally via the inverter's inputs. In applications with a connection to a fieldbus, the central control should evaluate the feedback signals of the drives, specifically acknowledge faults or switch-on the motor.

The inverter interprets the following events as power failure:

- The inverter signals fault F30003 (DC link undervoltage), as the line supply voltage of the inverter has briefly failed.
- The inverter power supply has failed for a long enough time so that the inverter has been switched-off.

⚠ WARNING

When the "automatic restart" function is active (p1210 > 1), the motor automatically starts after a power failure. This is especially critical after longer power failures.

Reduce the risk of accidents in your machine or system to an acceptable level by applying suitable measures, e.g. protective doors or covers.

Commissioning the automatic restart

- If it is possible that the motor is still rotating for a longer period of time after a power failure or after a fault, then in addition, you must activate the "flying restart" function, see Flying restart – switching on while the motor is running (Page 241).
- Using p1210, select the automatic restart mode that best suits your application.

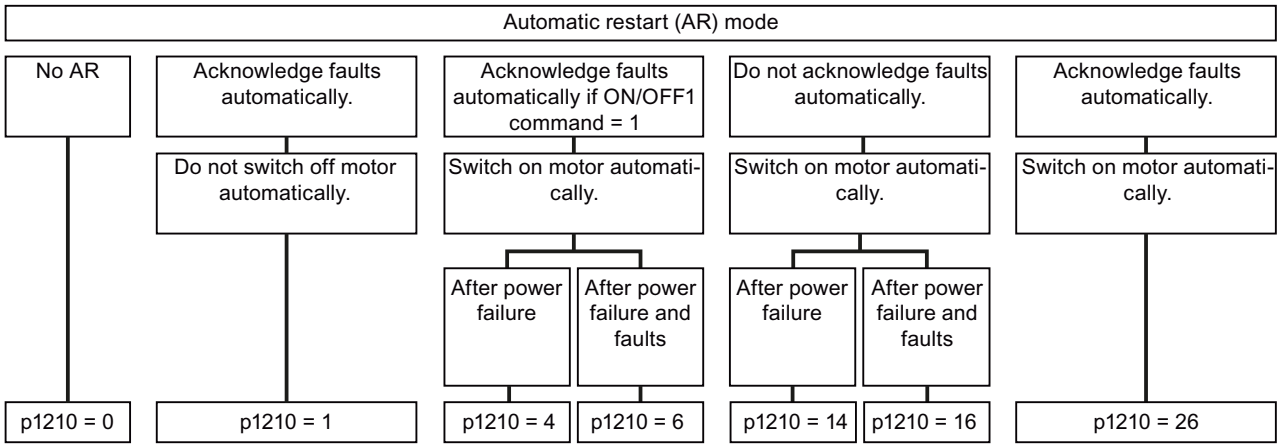
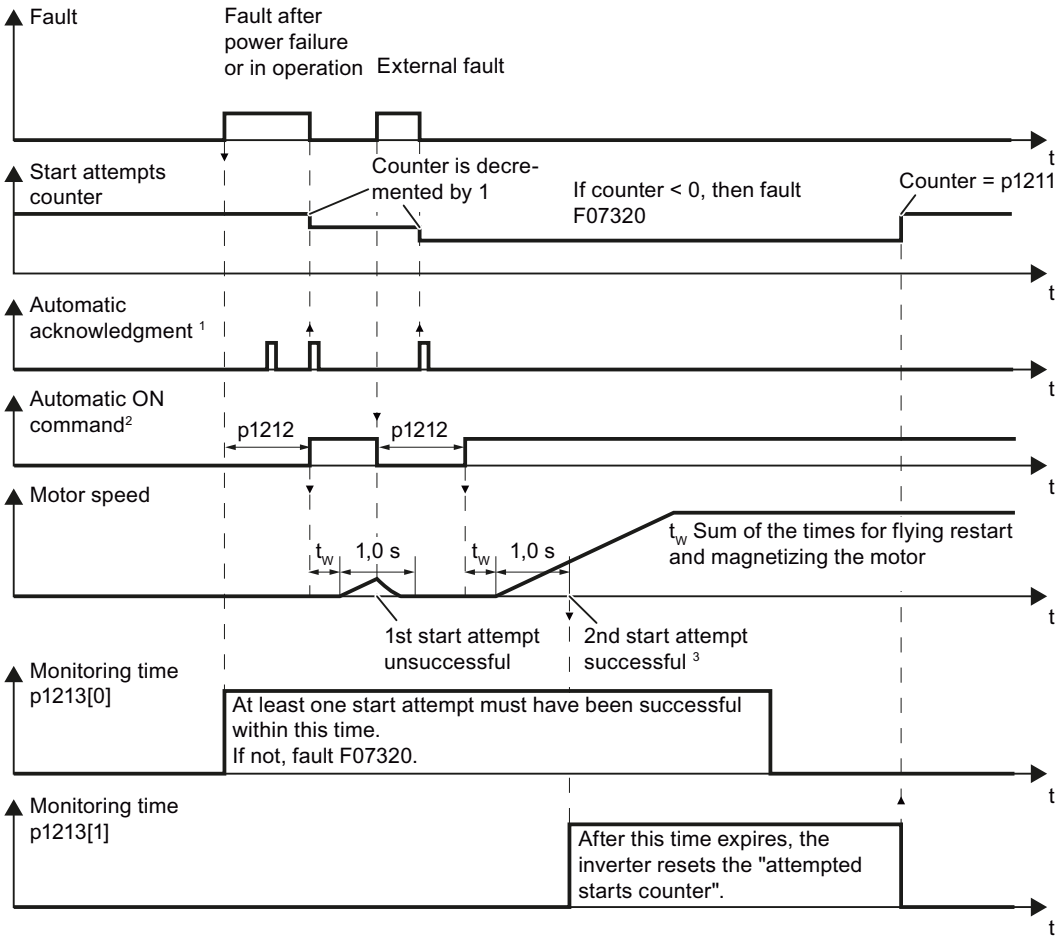


Figure 8-27 Selecting the automatic restart mode

- Set the parameters of the automatic restart function.
  The method of operation of the parameters is explained in the following diagram and in the table.



1 The inverter automatically acknowledges faults under the following conditions:

- p1210 = 1 or 26: always.
- p1210 = 4 or 6: If the command to switch on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 command = HIGH).
- p1210 = 14 or 16: never.

2 The inverter attempts to automatically switch-on the motor under the following conditions:

- p1210 = 1: never.
- p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, or 26: If the command to switch on the motor is available at a digital input or via the fieldbus (ON/OFF1 command = HIGH).

3 The start attempt is successful if flying restart has been completed and the motor has been magnetized (r0056.4 = 1) and one additional second has expired without a new fault having occurred.

Figure 8-28 Time response of the automatic restart

Table 8- 50 Setting the automatic restart

Parameter	Explanation	
p1210	**Automatic restart mode** (factory setting: 0)	
	0: 1: 4: 6: 14: 16: 26:	Disable automatic restart Acknowledge all faults without restarting Restart after power failure without further restart attempts Restart after fault with further restart attempts Restart after power failure after manual fault acknowledgement Restart after fault after manual fault acknowledgement Acknowledgement of all faults and restart with ON command
p1211	**Automatic restart start attempts** (factory setting: 3) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. You define the maximum number of start attempts using p1211. After each successful fault acknowledgement, the inverter decrements its internal counter of start attempts by 1. For p1211 = n, up to n + 1 start attempts are made. Fault F07320 is output after n + 1 unsuccessful start attempts. The inverter sets the start attempt counter back again to the value of p1211, if one of the following conditions is fulfilled: • After a successful start attempt, the time in p1213[1] has expired. • After fault F07320, withdraw the ON command and acknowledge the fault. • You change the start value p1211 or the mode p1210.	
p1212	**Automatic restart wait time start attempt** (factory setting: 1.0 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 26. Examples for setting this parameter: 1. After a power failure, a certain time must elapse before the motor can be switched-on, e.g. because other machine components are not immediately ready. In this case, set p1212 longer than the time, after which all of the fault causes have been removed. 2. In operation, the inverter develops a fault condition. The lower you select p1212, then the sooner the inverter attempts to switch-on the motor again.	
p1213[0]	**Automatic restart monitoring time for restart** (factory setting: 60 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. With this monitoring function, you limit the time in which the inverter may attempt to automatically switch-on the motor again. The monitoring function starts when a fault is identified and ends with a successful start attempt. If the motor has not successfully started after the monitoring time has expired, fault F07320 is signaled. Set the monitoring time longer than the sum of the following times: + P1212 + time that the inverter requires to start the motor on the fly. + Motor magnetizing time (p0346) + 1 second You deactivate the monitoring function with p1213 = 0.	

Parameter	Explanation
p1213[1]	**Automatic restart monitoring time to reset the fault counter** (factory setting: 0 s) This parameter is only effective for the settings p1210 = 4, 6, 14, 16, 26. Using this monitoring time, you prevent that faults, which continually occur within a certain time period, are automatically acknowledged each time. The monitoring function starts with a successful start attempt and ends after the monitoring time has expired. If the inverter has made more than (p1211 + 1) successful start attempts within monitoring time p1213[1], the inverter cancels the automatic restart function and signals fault F07320. In order to switch on the motor again, you must acknowledge the fault and issue a new ON command.

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

Advanced settings

If you with to suppress the automatic restart function for certain faults, then you must enter the appropriate fault numbers in p1206[0 … 9].

Example: P1206[0] = 07331 ⇒ No restart for fault F07331.

Suppressing the automatic restart only functions for the setting p1210 = 6, 16 or 26.

⚠ WARNING

In the case of communication via the field bus interface, the motor restarts with the setting p1210 = 6 even if the communication link is interrupted. This means that the motor cannot be stopped via the open-loop control. To avoid this dangerous situation, you must enter the fault code of the communications error in parameter p1206.

Example: A communication failure via PROFIBUS is signaled using fault code F01910. You should therefore set p1206[n] = 1910 (n = 0 … 9).

8.9.4 PID technology controller

8.9.4.1 Overview

The technology controller controls process variables, e.g. pressure, temperature, level or flow.

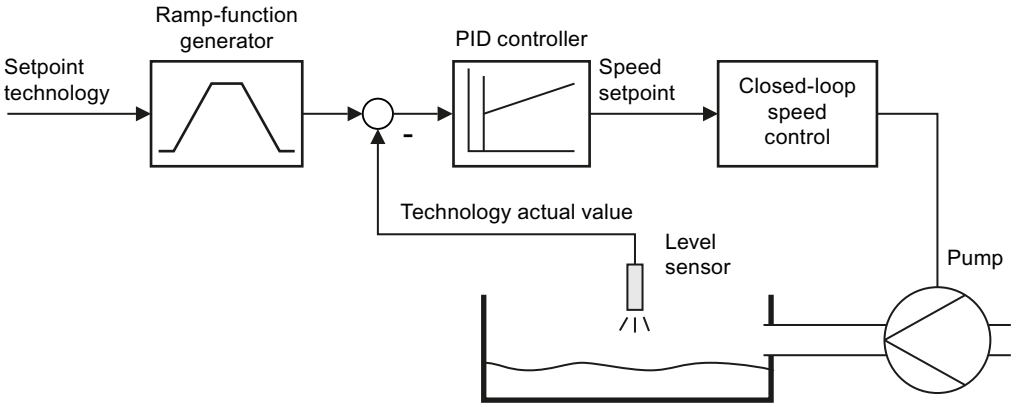


Figure 8-29 Example: technology controller as a level controller

8.9.4.2 Setting the controller

Simplified representation of the technology controller

The technology controller is designed as a PID controller, which makes it highly flexible.

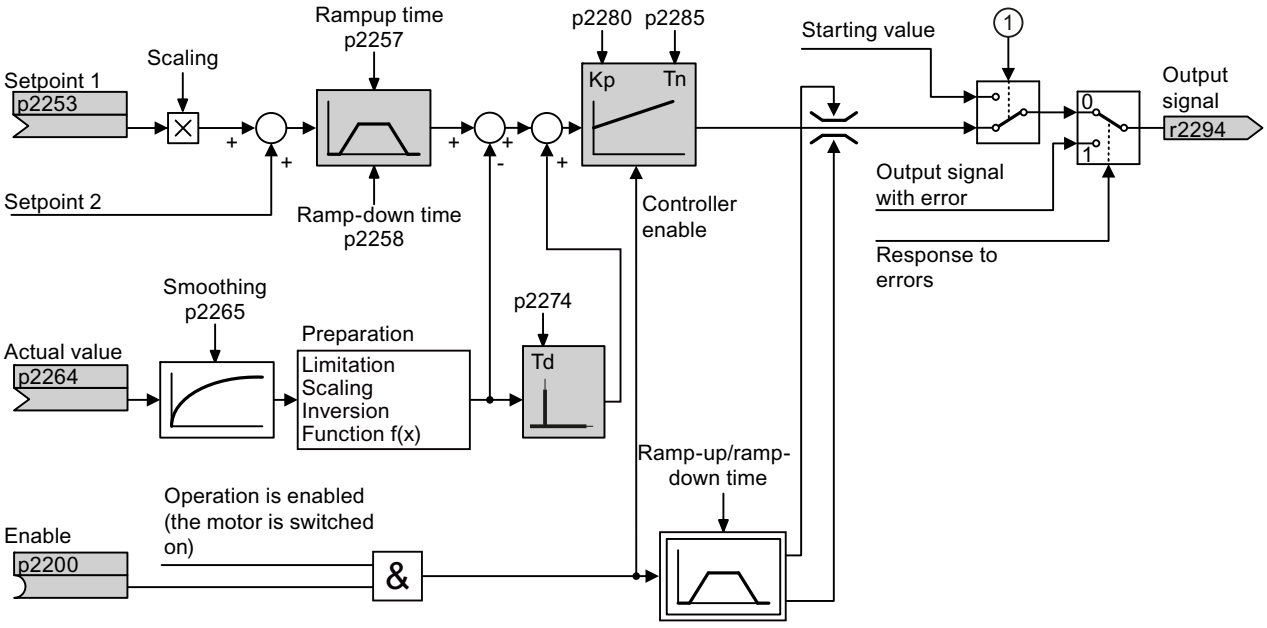


Figure 8-30 Simplified representation of the technology controller

Table 8- 51 Setting the technology controller

Parameter	Remark
p2200 = 1	Enable technology controller.
p1070 = 2294	Interconnect the main speed setpoint with the output of the technology controller.
p2253 = …	Define the setpoint for the technology controller. Example: p2253 = 2224: The inverter interconnects the fixed setpoint p2201 with the setpoint of the technology controller. p2220 = 1: The fixed setpoint p2201 is selected.
p2264 = …	Define the actual value for the technology controller. Example: For p2264 = 755[0], analog input 0 is the source for the actual value.
p2257, p2258	Define the ramp-up and ramp-down times [s]
p2274	Differentiation time constant [s] The differentiation improves the rise time characteristics for very slow controlled variables, e.g. a temperature control. p2274 = 0: The differentiation is switched off.
p2280	Proportional gain K_P
p2285	Integral time T_N [s] Without an integral time, the controller cannot completely equalize deviations between the setpoint and actual value. p2285 = 0: The integral time is switched off.

Advanced settings

Table 8- 52 Settings

Parameter	Remark
Limiting the output of the technology controller In the factory setting, the output of the technology controller is limited to ± maximum speed. You must change this limit, depending on your particular application. Example: The output of the technology controller supplies the speed setpoint for a pump. The pump should only run in the positive direction.	
p2297 = 2291	Interconnect the upper limit with p2291.
p2298 = 2292	Interconnect the lower limit with p2292.
p2291	Upper limit for the technology controller output e.g.: p2291 =100
p2292	Lower limit for the technology controller output e.g.: p2292 = 0
Manipulating the actual value of the technology controller	
p2267, p2268	Limit the actual value
p2269	Scale the actual value
p2271	Invert the actual value
p2270	Actual value

You can find additional information in function block diagram 7958 of the List Manual.

8.9.4.3 Optimizing the controller

Setting PID controllers from a practical perspective

- Temporarily set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator (p2257 and p2258) to zero.
- Enter a setpoint step and monitor the associated actual value, e.g. with the trace function of STARTER.
  The slower the process to be controlled response, the longer you must monitor the controller response. Under certain circumstances (e.g. for a temperature control), you need to wait several minutes until you can evaluate the controller response.

Table 8- 53 Optimum control response

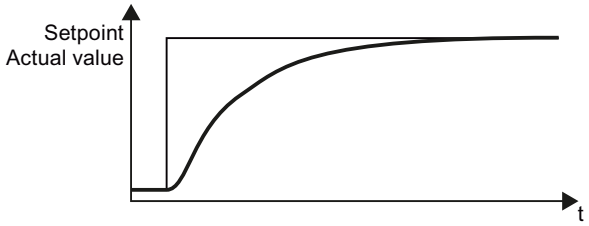
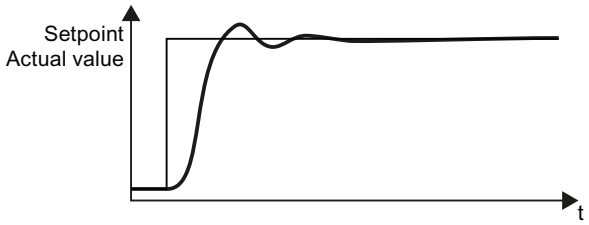
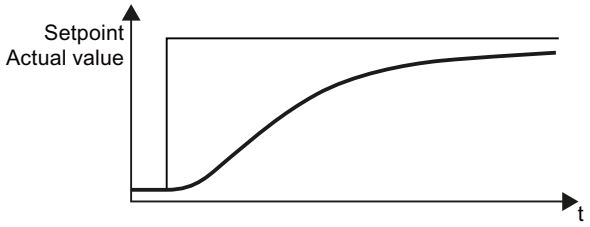
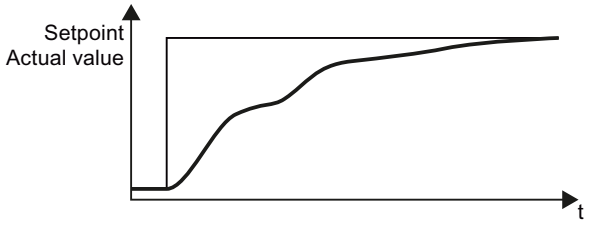
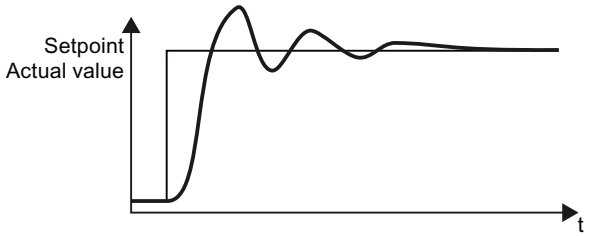
	**Optimum controller response for applications that do not permit any overshoot.** The actual value approaches the setpoint, without any significant overshoot.
	**Optimum controller behavior for fast correction and quick compensation of noise components.** The actual value approaches the setpoint and slightly overshoots (maximum 10% of the setpoint step).

Table 8- 54 Optimizing the control response

	**The actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint.** • Increase the proportional component K_P and reduce the integration time T_N.
	**Actual value only slowly approaches the setpoint with slight oscillation.** • Increase the proportional component K_P and reduce the rate time T_D (differentiating time).
	**The actual value quickly approaches the setpoint, but overshoots too much** • Decrease the proportional component K_P and increase the integration time T_N.

- Set the ramp-up and ramp-down times of the ramp-function generator back to their original value.

Additional technology controllers

Via the parameter ranges

- p11000 … p11099: free technology controller 0
- p11100 … p11199: free technology controller 1
- p11200 … p11299: free technology controller 2

additional technology controllers can be parameterized. Refer to the parameter descriptions and in function diagram 7970 of the associated List Manual for additional details.

8.9.5 Load torque monitoring (system protection)

In many applications, it is advisable to monitor the motor torque:

- Applications where the load speed can be indirectly monitored by means of the load torque. For example, in fans and conveyor belts too low a torque indicates that the drive belt is torn.
- Applications that are to be protected against overload or locking (e.g. extruders or mixers).
- Applications in which no-load operation of the motor represents an impermissible situation (e.g. pumps).

Load torque monitoring functions

The converter monitors the torque of the motor in different ways:

1. No-load monitoring:
   The converter generates a message if the motor torque is too low.
2. Blocking protection:
   The converter generates a message if the motor speed cannot match the speed setpoint despite maximum torque.
3. Stall protection:
   The converter generates a message if the converter control has lost the orientation of the motor.
4. Speed-dependent torque monitoring
   The converter measures the actual torque and compares it with a parameterized speed/torque characteristic.

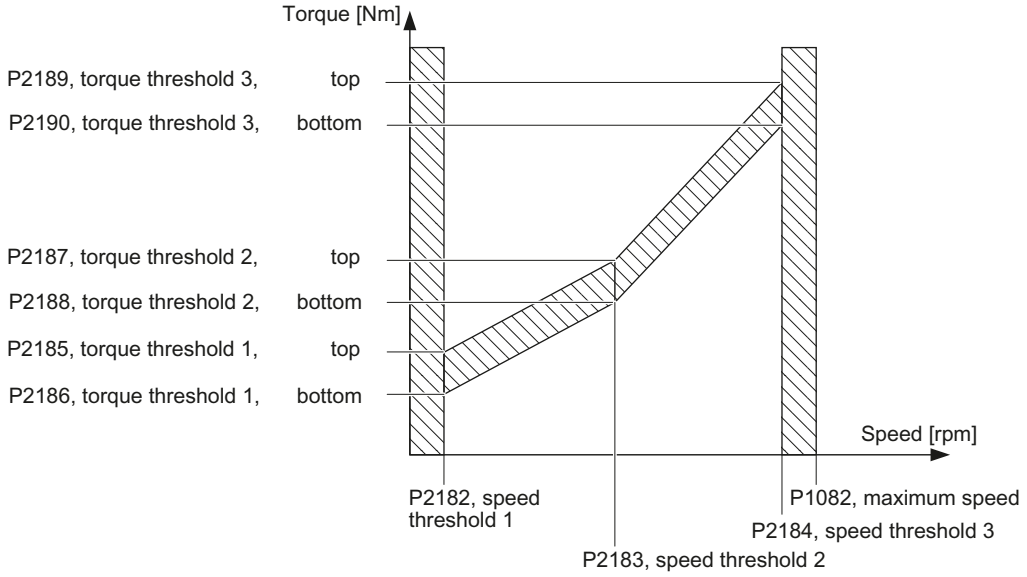


Table 8- 55 Parameterizing the monitoring functions

Parameter	Description
No-load monitoring	
P2179	**Current limit for no-load detection** If the converter current is below this value, the message "no load" is output.
P2180	**Delay time for the "no load" message**
Blocking protection	
P2177	**Delay time for the "motor locked" message**
Stall protection	
P2178	**Delay time for the "motor stalled" message**
P1745	**Deviation of the setpoint from the actual value of the motor flux as of which the "motor stalled" message is generated** This parameter is only evaluated as part of encoderless vector control.
Speed-dependent torque monitoring	
P2181	**Load monitoring, response** Setting the response when evaluating the load monitoring. 0: Load monitoring disabled >0: Load monitoring enabled
P2182	**Load monitoring, speed threshold 1**
P2183	**Load monitoring, speed threshold 2**
P2184	**Load monitoring, speed threshold 3**
P2185	**Load monitoring torque threshold 1, upper**
P2186	**Load monitoring torque threshold 1, lower**
P2187	**Load monitoring torque threshold 2, upper**
P2188	**Load monitoring torque threshold 2, lower**
P2189	**Load monitoring torque threshold 3, upper**
P2190	**Load monitoring torque threshold 3, lower**
P2192	**Load monitoring, delay time** Delay time for the message "Leave torque monitoring tolerance band"

For more information about these functions, see the List Manual (function diagram 8013 and the parameter list).

8.9.6 Load failure monitoring via digital input

Using this function, the inverter monitors the load failure of the driven machine, e.g. for fans or conveyor belts.

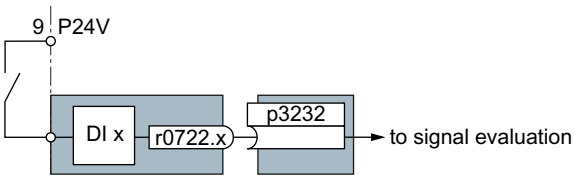


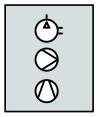
Figure 8-31 Load failure monitoring by means of a digital input

Table 8- 56 Setting load failure monitoring

Parameter	Description
p2193 = 1 … 3	**Load monitoring configuration** (factory setting: 1) 1: Torque and load failure monitoring 2: Speed and load failure monitoring 3: Load failure monitoring
p2192	**Load monitoring delay time** (factory setting 10 s) If, after the motor is switched on, the "LOW" signal is present on the associated digital input for longer than this time, a load failure is assumed (F07936)
p3232 = 722.x	**Load monitoring failure detection** (factory setting: 1) Interconnect the load monitoring with a digital input of your choice.

For more information, see the List Manual (the parameter list and function diagram 8013).

8.9.7 Real time clock (RTC)



The real time clock is the basis for time-dependent process controls, e.g.:

- To reduce the temperature of a heating control during the night
- Increase the pressure of a water supply at certain times during the day

Real time clock: Format and commissioning

The real time clock starts as soon as the Control Unit power supply is switched on for the first time. The real time clock comprises the clock time in a 24 hour format and the date in the "day, month, year" format.

After a Control Unit power supply interruption, the real time clock continues to run for approx. five days.

If you wish to use the real time clock, you must set the time and date once when commissioning. If you restore the inverter factory setting, the real time clock parameters are not reset.

Parameter	Real time clock (RTC)
p8400[0]	**RTC time**, hour (0 … 23)
p8400[1]	**RTC time**, minute (0 … 59)
p8400[2]	**RTC time**, second (0 … 59)
p8401[0]	**RTC date** , day (1 … 31)
p8401[1]	**RTC date** , month (1 … 12)
p8401[2]	**RTC date** , year (1 … 9999)
r8404	**RTC weekday** 1: Monday 2: Tuesday 3: Wednesday 4: Thursday 5: Friday 6: Saturday 7: Sunday
p8405	**RTC activate/deactivate alarm A01098** Sets whether the real time clock issues an alarm if the time is not running in synchronism (e.g. after a longer power supply interruption). 0: Alarm A01098 deactivated 1: Alarm A01098 activated

Accept the real time clock in the alarm and fault buffer

Using the real time clock, you can track the sequence of alarms and faults over time. When an appropriate message occurs, the real time clock is converted into the UTC time format (Universal Time Coordinated):

Date, time ⇒ 01.01.1970, 0:00 + d (days) + m (milliseconds)

The number "d" of the days and the number "m" of milliseconds is transferred into the alarm and fault times of the alarm or fault buffer, see Chapter Alarms, faults and system messages (Page 307).

Converting UTC into RTC

An RTC can again be calculated from the UTC. Proceed as follows to calculate a date and time from a fault or alarm time saved in the UTC format:

1. Calculate the number of seconds of UTC:
   Number of seconds = ms / 1000 + days × 86400
2. In the Internet, you will find programs to convert from UTC into RTC, e.g.:
   UTC to RTC (http://unixtime-converter.com/)
3. Enter the number of seconds in the corresponding screen and start the calculation.

Example:

Saved as alarm time in the alarm buffer:

r2123[0] = 2345 [ms]
r2145[0] = 14580 [days]

Number of seconds = 2345 / 1000 + 14580 × 86400 = 1259712002
Converting this number of seconds in RTC provides the date: 02.12.2009, 01:00:02.

8.9.8 Time switch (DTC)

The "time switch" (DTC) function, along with the real time clock in the inverter, offers the option of controlling when signals are switched on and off.

Examples:

- Day/night switching of a temperature control
- Switching a process control from weekday to weekend.

Principle of operation of the time switch (DTC)

The inverter has three independent parameterizable time switches. Using BICO technology, the time switch output can be interconnected with every binector of your inverter, e.g. a digital output or a technology controller's enable signal.

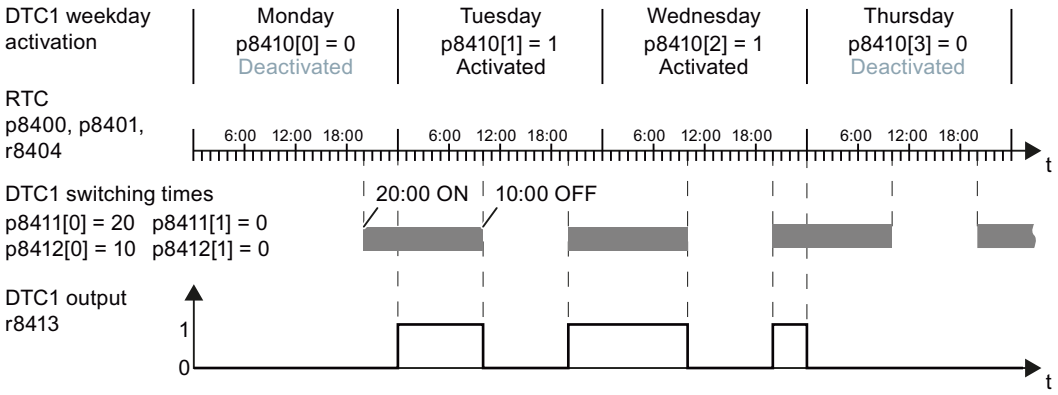


Figure 8-32 Time behavior of the time switch using example DTC1

Parameterizing the time switch

- Enable parameterization of the DTC: p8409 = 0.
  As long as DTC parameterization is enabled, the inverter keeps the output of all three DTC (r84x3, x = 1, 2, 3) on LOW.
- Parameterize the activation of the weekdays; the switching on and off times.
- Enable the setting: p8409 = 1.
  The inverter enables the DTC outputs once more.

Additional information is provided in the parameter list of the List Manual.

8.9.9 Temperature sensing using temperature-dependent resistors

Analog input AI 2

Analog input AI 2 can be used as a current input or resistance input for a temperature sensor. Both the DIP switch and parameter p0756.2 must be set accordingly for this purpose.

- P0756.2 = 2 or 3 -> options for setting as current input
- P0756.2 = 6, 7 or 8 -> options for setting as temperature sensor

Analog input AI 3

Analog input AI 3 is designed as a resistance input for a temperature sensor.

Setting options:

- P0756.3 = 6, 7 or 8 -> options for setting as temperature sensor

Permissible temperature sensors

The temperature-dependent PT1000 or NI1000 resistors can be used as sensors. The values of these sensors are supplied via analog input AI 2 or AI 3 (p2264 = 756.2 or 756.3) as actual values for the technology controller.

The connection is established at AI 2 (terminals 50, 51) or AI 3 (terminals 52, 53).

Measuring ranges and alarm thresholds for NI1000

The measuring range of the NI1000 sensors extends from – 88 °C … 165 °C. For values outside this range, the inverter outputs alarm A03520 "Temperature sensor fault". The fault type is displayed in r2124.

Measuring ranges and alarm thresholds for PT1000

The measuring range of the PT1000 sensors extends from – 88 °C … 240 °C. For values outside this range, the inverter outputs alarm A03520 "Temperature sensor fault". The fault type is displayed in r2124.

Fault values for temperature sensing via AI 2

- r2124 = 33: Wire break or sensor not connected
- r2124 = 34: Short-circuit

Fault values for temperature sensing via AI 3

- r2124 = 49: Wire break or sensor not connected
- r2124 = 50: Short-circuit

Note

If a temperature sensor is used as an input for the PID controller, the scaling of the analog input must be adjusted.

- Scaling example for NI1000:
  0 °C (p0757) = 0 % (p0758); 100 °C (p0759) = 100 % (p0760)
- Scaling example for PT1000:
  0 °C (p0757) = 0 % (p0758); 100 °C (p0759) = 80 % (p0760)

Please refer to the parameter list for more details.

8.9.10 Essential service mode

The **E**ssential **S**ervice **M**ode (ESM) function ensures that when required, the motor is operated for as long as possible so that, for example, smoke gases can be extracted or people affected by a fire can escape.

Application example

In order to improve air circulation in stairwells, frequently, a slight underpressure is generated using ventilation control. With this control, a fire would mean that smoke gases enter into the stairwell. This would then mean that the stairway would be blocked as escape or evacuation route.

Using the Essential Service Mode function, the ventilation switches over to control an overpressure. This prevents the propagation of smoke gases in the stairwell, thereby keeping the stairs free as an escape route.

Activating the essential service mode function

The essential service mode is activated by interconnecting p3880 with a digital input of your choice. Example: If you wish to activate the essential service mode with the digital input, set p3880 = 722.3.

Note

Command source for the essential service mode

We recommend that the digital input for the essential service mode is not logically combined with any other functions.

- The setting of the source for the essential service mode via p3880 is always referred to the data set that is currently active.
- The essential service mode can only be switched on precisely from one source.

The last setpoint recognized is taken as the emergency setpoint in the factory setting. You can use p3881 to define another value:

- P3881 = 0: Last recognized setpoint (factory setting)
- P3881 = 1: Fixed setpoint 15
- P3881 = 2: Analog setpoint
- P3881 = 3: Fieldbus
- P3881 = 4: Technology controller

If you specify the emergency setpoint via the analog setpoint, fieldbus or technology controller, you must ensure the appropriate monitoring so that an alternative setpoint can be used in the event of failure.

Possible forms of monitoring for the different setpoint sources:

- Analog setpoint: Using F03505
- Fieldbus status in r2043
- Technology controller r2349

You will find additional details on this in the List Manual in the function diagrams for essential service mode, setpoint channel and technology controller.

When in the factory setting, if the setpoint is lost, the drive continues using the last recognized setpoint. p3882 can be used to switch to the following values:

- P3882 = 0: Last recognized setpoint (factory setting)
- p3882 = 1: Fixed speed setpoint which is defined in p1015
- p3882 = 2: Maximum speed (value of p1082)

Note

Technology controller as setpoint source for the emergency operation setpoint

For the technology controller to be able to specify the emergency setpoint, it must be activated (p2200 = 1) and set as the main setpoint (p2251 = 0).

Direction of rotation in the essential service mode

- Emergency setpoint using p3881 = 0, 1, 2, 3

  Depending on your system, you may have to invert the setpoint locally for the essential service mode. The customer can therefore use p3883 to determine the direction of rotation of the emergency setpoint. To do this, p3883 must be linked with a free digital input, e.g. p3883 = r722.12.

  – p3883 = 0 -> normal emergency direction of rotation,

  – p3883 = 1 -> inverted emergency direction of rotation.

- Emergency setpoint using p3881 = 4

  If the emergency setpoint is specified using the technology controller, it is depicted using variables within the process and depends on these. Inversion using a digital input is therefore locked in such cases and must be implemented in the technology controller.

Bypass operation in the essential service mode

- If the motor is running in bypass operation when the emergency happens, the user must query the "Bypass control/status word" (r1261) and make an appropriate interconnection to ensure that the motor is switched to the inverter and continues to run with the emergency setpoint.
- If the inverter has failed in the essential service mode because of an internal fault and if it cannot be switched back on using the automatic restart function, the user can interconnect bit 7 of the status word for the automatic restart (r1214.7) with p1266 to operate the motor directly on line. You will find additional information about bypass operation in section Bypass (Page 270).

Special features of the essential service mode

- The automatic restart function is internally activated – independent of the setting of p1210 – as soon as the essential service mode kicks in. This results in the inverter being restarted if a pulse inhibit (OFF2) occurs due to an internal fault.
- In the essential service mode, inverter shutdown due to faults is suppressed, with the exception of faults that would lead to the destruction of the inverter. You will find a a list of these faults in Section Essential service mode (Page 258).
- The essential service mode is triggered by a continuous signal (level-triggered) using the digital input which was defined in p3880 as the source for the essential service mode.
- In the essential service mode, the motor can only be stopped if the line voltage is switched off.
- If the essential service mode is deactivated, the inverter reverts to normal operation and its behavior depends on the pending commands and setpoints.
- The essential service mode has priority over other operating modes

NOTICE
Loss of warranty for an inverter in the essential service mode In the case of the essential service mode, the customer can no longer lodge any claims for warranty. The essential service mode and the faults that arise while in the essential service mode are logged in a password protected memory and can be read by the repair center.

Refer to parameters p3880 … r3889 for more information on the essential service mode.

Note

Other preconditions for the essential service mode

In order to operate the inverter in the emergency service mode, the appropriate degrees of protection and connection and installation guidelines applicable to the system should be observed. You will find details of this in the Australian Standard: AS/NZS 1668.1:1998.

Table 8- 57 Parameters that are required to set the essential service mode

Parameter	Description
Setting the source for the essential service mode	
p3880 = 722.3	**ESM activation** (here, via DI3, high-active) Signal source for activating the essential service mode 722.x for high active, 723.x for low active
Additional parameters to set the essential service mode	
p3881	**ESM setpoint source,** 0 … 4
p3882	**ESM substitute setpoint source** Setpoint should the parameterized ESM setpoint be lost
p3883	**ESM direction of rotation** Signal source for direction of rotation in the essential service mode, is not evaluated when p3881 = 4
p3884	**ESM setpoint technology controller** If p3884 is not connected up, then the technology controller uses the main setpoint corresponding to p2251 = 0.
r3887	**ESM: Number of activations and faults** Indicates how frequently ESM has been activated (index 0) and how many faults occurred during ESM (index 1).
p3888	**ESM: Reset the number of activations and faults** p3888 = 1 resets 3887[0] and 3887[1].
r3889	ESM status word

Faults, which are not ignored when operating in the essential service mode

F01000 Internal software error
F01001 Floating Point Exception
F01002 Internal software error
F01003 Time-out for memory access
F01015 Internal software error
F01040 Back up parameters and perform a POWER ON
F01044 Error in description data
F01205 Time slice overflow
F01512 BICO: No scaling
F01662 Error, internal communications
F07901 Drive: Motor overspeed
F30001 Power unit: Overcurrent
F30002 Power unit: DC-link voltage overvoltage
F30003 Power unit: DC-link voltage undervoltage
F30004 Power unit: Overtemperature heatsink inverter
F30005 Power unit: Overload I2t
F30017 Power unit: Hardware current limit has responded too often
F30021 Power unit: Ground fault

F30024	Power unit: Overtemperature, thermal model
F30025	Power unit: Chip overtemperature
F30027	Power unit: Time monitoring for DC link pre-charging
F30036	Power unit: Overtemperature, inside area
F30071	No new actual values received from the Power Module
F30072	Setpoints can no longer be transferred to the Power Module
F30105	PU: Actual value sensing error
F30662	Internal communication error
F30664	Fault during power-up
F30802	Power unit: Time slice overflow
F30805	Power unit: EPROM checksum not correct
F30809	Power unit: Switching information invalid

8.9.11 Multi-zone control

Multi-zone control is used to control quantities such as pressure or temperature via the technology setpoint deviation. The setpoints and actual values are fed in via the analog inputs as current (0 … 20 mA) or voltage (0 … 10 V) or as a percentage via temperature-dependent resistances (NI1000 / PT1000, 0 °C = 0 %; 100 °C = 100 %).

Control variants for multi-zone control

There are three control variants for multi-zone control, which are selected via p31021:

- One setpoint and one, two or three actual values

  The actual value for the control can be calculated as mean value, maximum value or minimum value. You can find all of the setting options in the parameter list in parameter p31022.

  – Average value: The deviation from the setpoint of the average value of two or three actual values is controlled.

  – Minimum value: The deviation from the setpoint of the smallest actual value is controlled.

  – Maximum value: The deviation from the setpoint of the highest actual value is controlled.

- Two setpoint/actual value pairs as maximum value control (cooling)

  The maximum value control compares two setpoints/actual value pairs and controls the actual value which has the largest deviation upwards from its associated setpoint. No control takes place if both actual values lie below their setpoints.

  In order to avoid frequent changeover, the inverter only switches over if the deviation of the controlled setpoint-actual value pair is more than two percent lower than the deviation of the uncontrolled value pair.

- Two setpoint/actual value pairs as minimum value control (heating)

  The minimum value control compares two setpoints/actual value pairs and controls the actual value, which has the highest deviation downwards from its associated setpoint. No control takes place if both actual values lie above their setpoints.

  In order to avoid frequent changeover, the inverter only switches over if the deviation of the controlled setpoint-actual value pair is more than two percent lower than the deviation of the uncontrolled value pair.

Day and night switching

Using a **day/night changeover** other setpoints can be entered for specific times. The day/night changeover control can be realized e.g. using an external signal via DI4 or using free blocks and the real time clock via p31025.

Note

When the multi-zone control is activated, the analog inputs are newly interconnected as sources for the setpoint and actual value of the technology controller (see table).

Table 8- 58 Parameters to set the multi-zone control:

Parameter	Description	
p2200 = …	**Technology controller enable**	
p2251	**Set technology controller as main setpoint**	
P31020 = …	**Multi-zone control interconnection** (factory setting = 0) A subsequent parameterization is performed by activating or deactivating the multi-zone control.	
	Subsequent connection for p31020 = 1 (activate multi-zone control)	Subsequent connection for p31020 = 0 (deactivate multi-zone control)
	p31023[0] = 0755.0 (AI0) p31023[2] = 0755.1 (AI1) p31026[0] = 0755.2 (AI2) p31026[1] = 0755.3 (AI3) p2253 = 31024 (setpoint output, technology controller) p2264 = 31027 (actual value output, technology controller)	p31023[0] = 0 p31023[2] = 0 p31026[0] = 0 p31026[1] = 0 p2253 = 0 p2264 = 0
P31021 = …	**Configuration of multi-zone control** • 0 = Setpoint 1 / several actual values (factory setting) • 1 = Two zones / maximum value setting • 2 = Two zones / minimum value setting	
p31022 = …	**Processing of actual values for multi-zone control**(only for p31021 = 0) Possible values: 0 … 11 (factory setting = 0)	
p31023[0 … 3] = …	**Setpoints for multi-zone control** Parameters for selecting the source for setpoints in multi-zone control (factory setting = 0)	
r31024 = …	**Multi-zone control setpoint output for technology controller** CO parameters	
p31025 = …	**Day/night changeover for multi-zone control** Parameter for selecting the source for day/night changeover of the multi-zone control (factory setting = 0)	
p31026[0 … 2] = …	**Actual values for multi-zone control** Parameters for selecting the source for actual values of the multi-zone control (factory setting = 0)	
r31027 = …	**Multi-zone control actual value output for technology controller** CO parameters	

Note

Please note that when multi-zone control is activated, any BiCo interconnections present for analog inputs and for the technology controller's setpoint and actual value are cancelled and interconnected with the links defined in the factory.

When you deactivate multi-zone control, the associated BiCo interconnections are cancelled.

Example

The temperature in a large office is measured at three points and transferred to the inverter using analog inputs. NI1000 temperature sensors are used as actual value sensors. The setpoint temperature is specified via the analog input 0 and can be set in the range from 8 °C … 30 °C by a controller. Overnight the average temperature should be 16 °C.

Parameter settings

p2200.0 = 1	Technology controller enable
p2251 = 0	Set technology controller as main setpoint
p2900.0 = 16	Temperature setpoint overnight as a fixed value in %.
p31020 = 1	Activate multi-zone control
p31021 = 0	Select multi-zone control with one setpoint and three actual values
p31022 = 7	Three actual values, one setpoint. The average value of the three actual values is used for the control.
p31023.0 = 755.0	Temperature setpoint via analog input 0
p0756.0 = 0	Select analog input type (voltage input 0 … 10 V)
p0757.0 = 0 / p0758.0 = 8	Set the lower value to 8 °C (0 V ≙ 8 °C)
p0759.0 = 10 / p0760.0 = 30	Set the upper value to 30 °C (10 V ≙ 30 °C)
p31023.1 = 2900.0	Supply p31023.1 with the value written in P2900 to reduce the temperature overnight
p31026.0 = 755.2	Temperature actual value 1 via analog input 2 as a %
p0756.2 = 6	Select analog input type (temperature sensor Ni1000)
p0757.2 = 0 / p0758.2 = 0	Set lower value of the scaling characteristic
p0759.2 = 100 / p0760.2 = 100	Set upper value of the scaling characteristic
p31026.1 = 755.3	Temperature actual value 2 via analog input 3 as a %
p0756.3 = 6	Select analog input type (temperature sensor Ni1000)
p0757.3 = 0 / p0758.3 = 0	Set lower value of the scaling characteristic
p0759.3 = 100 / p0760.3 = 100	Set upper value of the scaling characteristic
p31026.2 = 755.1	Temperature actual value 3 via temperature sensor with current output (0 mA … 20 mA) via analog input 1
p0756.1 = 2	Select analog input type (current input 0 … 20 mA)
p0757.1 = 0 / p0758.1 = 0	Set lower value of the scaling characteristic (0 mA ≙ 0 °C)
p0759.1 = 20 / p0760.1 = 100	Set upper value of the scaling characteristic (20 mA ≙ 100 %)
p31025 = 722.4	Changeover from day to night via digital input 4

You will find more information about this multi-zone control in the parameter list and in (function diagram 7972 of the List Manual).

8.9.12 Cascade control

The cascade control function is used in applications that require between one and four motors to be run at the same time depending on load, so that e.g. highly variable pressure ratios or flow volumes can be corrected.

Cascade control consists of the speed-controlled main drive and up to three other drives that are switched-on or switched-off via contactors or motor starters, either in a fixed arrangement or dependent on the operating hours.

The PID deviation serves as the input signal for activating the other motors. The contactors or motor starters are switched by the inverter's digital outputs.

Note

Technology controller as main setpoint

For cascade control, the main setpoint must be entered via the technology controller (p2251 = 0, p2200 = 1).

Operating principle

- **Switching-in external motors**

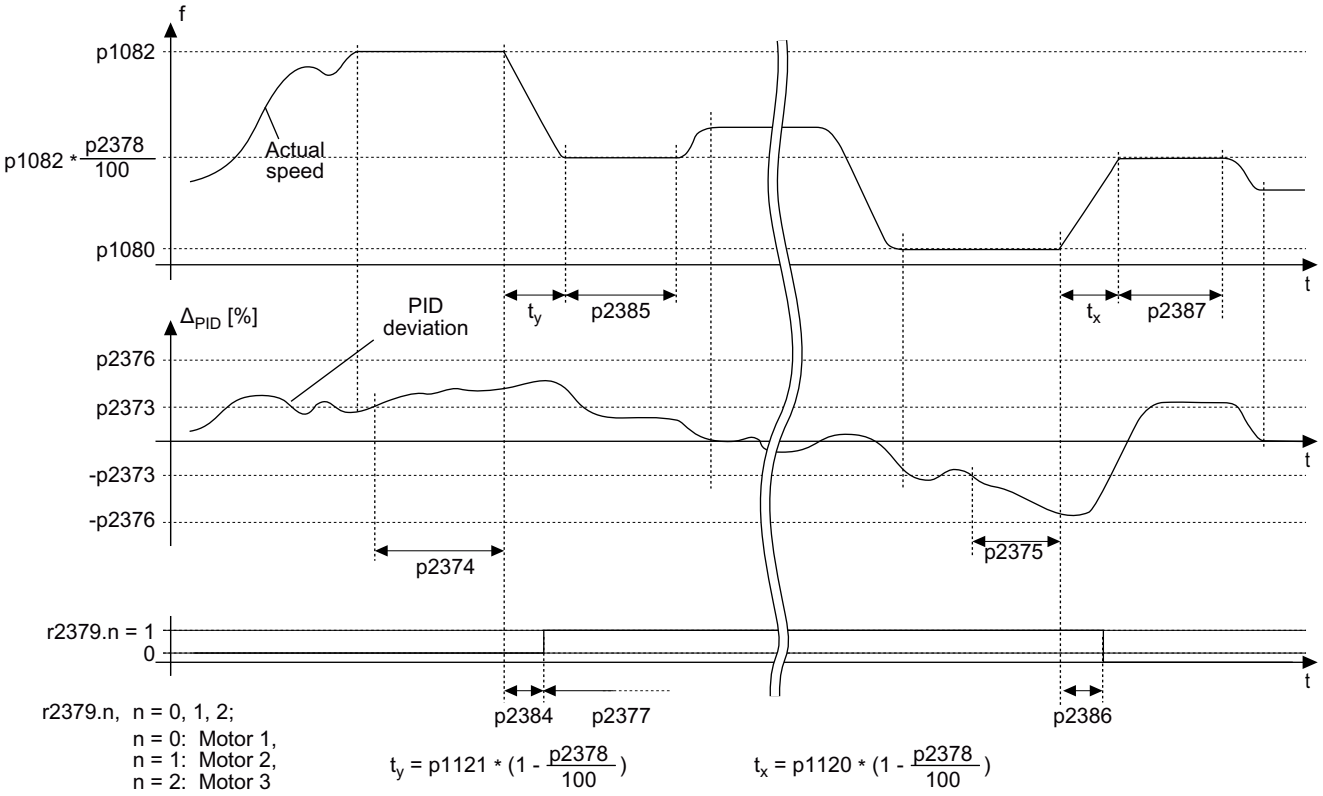
  If the main drive is run at maximum speed and the deviation on the technology controller input continues to increase, the control also switches the external motors on the line. At the same time, the main drive is ramped down to the switch-on/switch-off speed (p2378) to keep the total output power as constant as possible. The technology controller is deactivated while ramping down to the switch-on/switch-off speed.

- **Shutting down external motors**

  If the main drive is running at minimum speed and the deviation on the technology controller input continues to decrease, the control switches external motors M1 to M3 off the line. The main drive is simultaneously ramped-up to the switch-on/switch-off speed to keep the total output power as constant as possible.

To avoid frequent activation/deactivation of the uncontrolled motors, a time can be specified in p2377 which must have elapsed before a further motor can be activated/deactivated. After the time set in p2377 has elapsed, a further motor will be activated immediately if the PID deviation is greater than the value set in p2376. If, after p2377 has elapsed, the PID deviation is smaller than p2376 but greater than p2373, the timer p2374 is started before the uncontrolled motor is activated.

The motors are deactivated in the same way.



The diagram shows the conditions for activating/deactivating an uncontrolled motor

Controlling the activation and deactivation of motors

Use p2371 to determine the order of activation/deactivation for the individual external motors.

Table 8- 59 Order of activation for external motors depending on setting in p2371

p2371	Significance	Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3	Stage 4	Stage 5	Stage 6
0	Cascade control deactivated	---					
1	One motor can be activated	M1					
2	Two motors can be activated	M1	M1+M2				
3	Two motors can be activated	M1	M2	M1+M2			
4	Three motors can be activated	M1	M1+M2	M1+M2+M3			
5	Three motors can be activated	M1	M3	M1+M3	M1+M2+M3		
6	Three motors can be activated	M1	M2	M1+M2	M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	
7	Three motors can be activated	M1	M1+M2	M3	M1+M3	M1+M2+M3	
8	Three motors can be activated	M1	M2	M3	M1+M3	M2+M3	M1+M2+M3

Table 8- 60 Order of deactivation for external motors depending on setting in p2371

p2371	Activated motors	Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3	Stage 4	Stage 5	Stage 6
1	M1	M1					
2	M1+M2	M1+M2	M1				
3	M1+M2	M1+M2	M2	M1			
4	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2	M1			
5	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	M3+M1	M3	M1		
6	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	M3+M2	M2+M1	M2	M1	
7	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	M3+M1	M3	M2+M1	M1	
8	M1+M2+M3	M1+M2+M3	M3+M2	M3+M1	M3	M2	M1

If you are using motors of the same power rating, you can use p2372 to define whether the motors are to be activated/deactivated following the setting specified in p2371 (p2372 = 0) or based on the operating hours (p2372 = 1, 2 ,3. Details see parameter list).

Parameters to set and activate the cascade control:

p0730 = r2379.0	**Signal source for digital output 0** Control external motor 1 via DO 0
p0731 = r2379.1	**Signal source for digital output 1** Control external motor 2 via DO 1
p0732 = r2379.2	**Signal source for digital output 2** Control external motor 3 via DO 2
p2200 = 1	**Technology controller enable** Activate technology controller
p2251 = 0	**Technology controller mode** Technology controller as main speed setpoint
p2370	**Cascade control - enable** Signal source for staging on/off
p2371	**Cascade control- configuration** Activate staging and define switch-on sequence
p2372	**Cascade control - motor selection mode** Define automatic motor switch-on
p2373	**Cascade control - switch-in threshold** Define switch-on threshold
p2374	**Cascade control - switch-in delay** Define delay time
p2375	**Cascade control switch-off delay** Define delay time for destaging
p2376	**Cascade control - overcontrol threshold** Define overcontrol threshold
p2377	**Cascade control - interlock time** Define interlock time
p2378	**Cascade control - switch-on/switch-off speed** Defining the speed for the main drive after switching-on/switching-off a motor
r2379	**Cascade control - status word**

p2380	**Cascade control - operating hours**
p2381	**Cascade control - maximum time for continuous mode**
p2382	**Cascade control - absolute operating time limit**
p2383	**Cascade control - switch-off sequence** Define switch-off sequence for an OFF command
p2384	**Cascade control - motor switch-on delay** Define motor switch-on delay
p2385	**Cascade control - switch-in speed hold time** Define speed hold time after switching-in of an external motor
p2386	**Cascade control - motor switch-off delay** Define motor switch-off delay
p2387	**Cascade control - switch-off speed hold time**Define speed hold time after switching-off of an external motor

For more information about the parameters, see the List Manual.

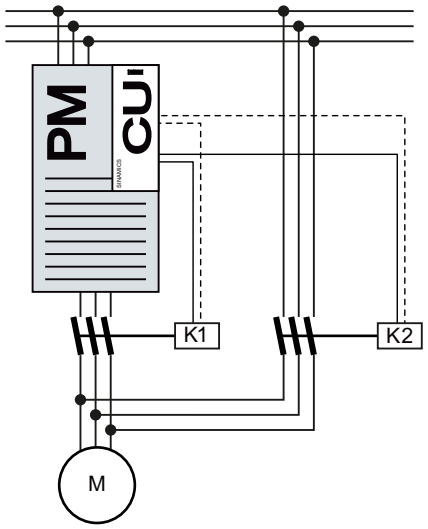
8.9.13 Bypass

In the bypass function, the motor is either operated by the inverter or directly on the line.

The bypass control can either be realized depending on the speed via the inverter or independently of the speed via a signal from the inverter or via a higher-level control.

If the bypass is controlled by a higher-level control, the control must lock the contactors so they cannot switch on at the same time.

If controlled by inverter, the digital outputs are used to activate two contactors via which the motor is powered. The inverter is provided with contactor position feedback via the digital inputs. This is evaluated. If using direct connection logic (high level = ON), both contactors should be NO contacts.



Bypass circuit for control using the inverter

Note

Flying restart must be activated for the bypass function (p1200 = 1 or 4).

NOTICE

Bypass operation in the essential service mode

The special features for bypass operation in the essential service mode are described in Section Essential service mode (Page 258).

Changeover operation between line and inverter operation

At changeover to line operation, contactor K1 is opened (after the inverter pulses have been inhibited). The system then waits for the motor de-excitation time to elapse, after which contactor K2 is closed, connecting the motor directly to the line supply.

When the motor is switched to the line supply, an equalizing current flows that must be taken into account when the protective equipment is selected and dimensioned.

When changing over to inverter operation, initially contactor K2 must be opened and after the de-excitation time, contactor K1 is closed. The inverter then captures the rotating motor and the motor is operated on the inverter.

Bypass function when activating via a control signal (p1267.0 = 1)

The status of the bypass contactors is evaluated when the inverter is switched on. If the automatic restart function is active (p1210 = 4) and an ON command (r0054.0 = 1) as well as the bypass signal (p1266 = 1) are still present at power up, then after power up, the inverter goes into the "ready and bypass" state (r899.0 = 1 and r0046.25 = 1) and the motor continues to run directly connected to the line supply.

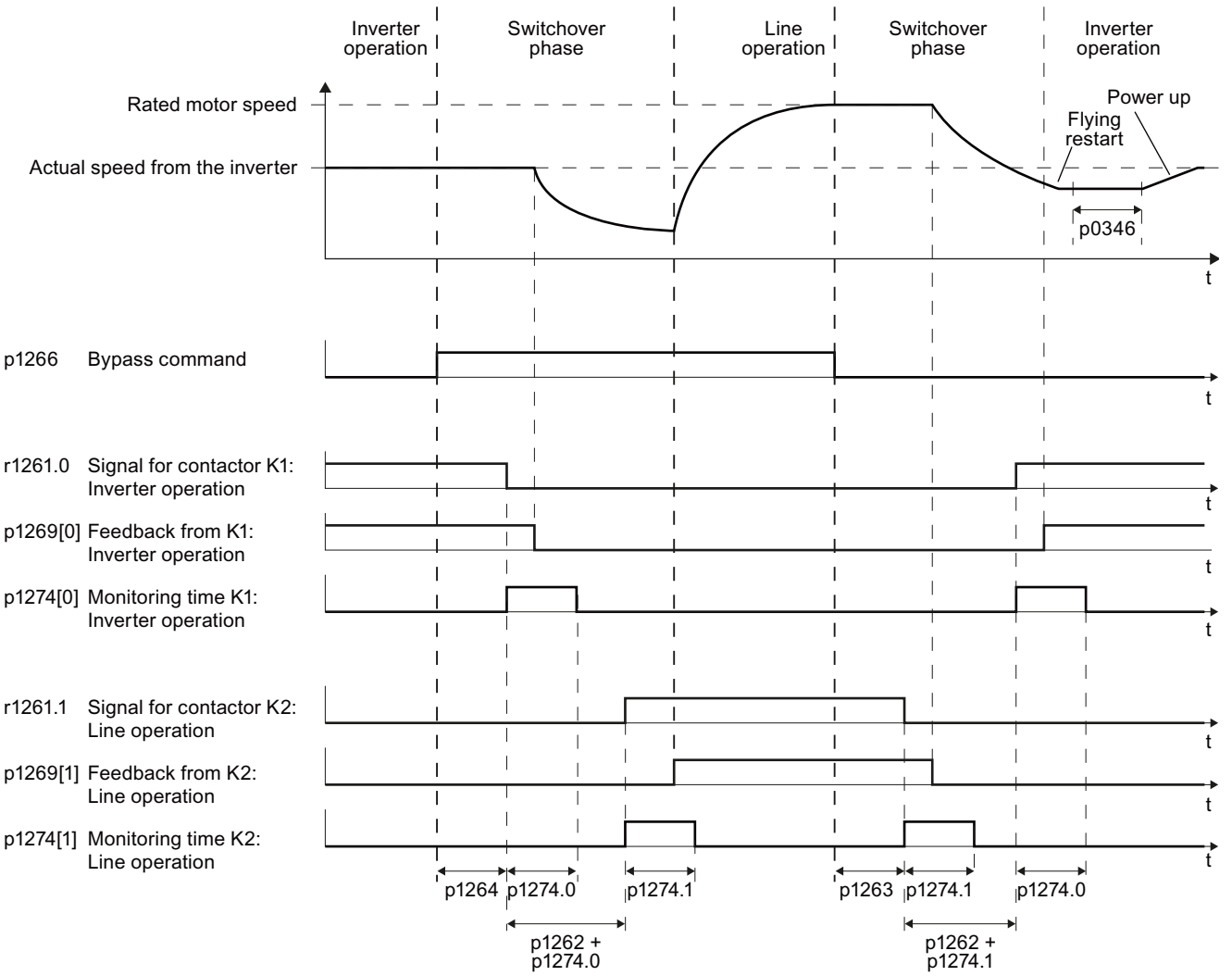


Figure 8-33 Bypass control independent of the speed via a control signal (p1267.0 = 1)

Bypass function is dependent on the speed (p1267.1 = 1)

With this function, changeover to line operation is realized corresponding to the following diagram, if the setpoint lies above the bypass threshold.

If the setpoint falls below the bypass threshold, the inverter captures the motor and the motor is fed from the inverter.

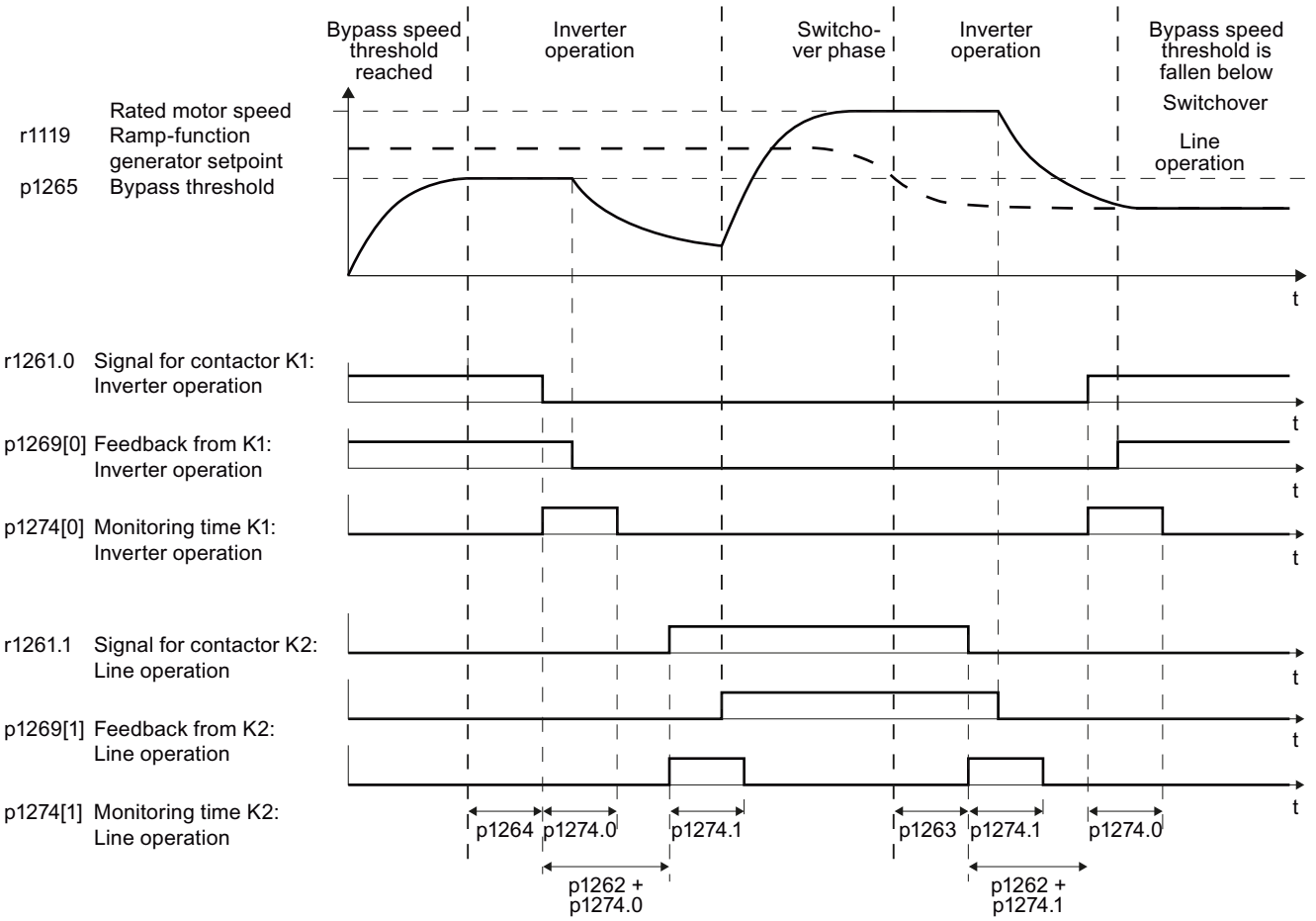


Figure 8-34 Switchover behavior from inverter to line operation dependent on the speed

General properties of the bypass function

- The two motor contactors must be designed for switching under load.
- Contactor K2 must be designed for switching an inductive load.
- Contactors K1 and K2 must be mutually interlocked so that they cannot close at the same time.

Shutdown behavior in bypass operation

- If the motor is in the bypass mode, it cannot be shutdown with OFF 1. The motor coasts down after an OFF2 or OFF3.
- If the motor is running in the bypass mode and the inverter is disconnected from the line supply, then also the bypass contactor does not receive control signals from the inverter and the motor coasts down. If the motor is to continue running once the inverter is switched off, the signal for the bypass contactor must therefore come from the higher-level control.

Temperature monitoring and overload protection in the bypass mode

- If the motor is running in the bypass mode, while the inverter is in the "ready and bypass" state (r899.0 = 1 and r0046.25 = 1), then the motor temperature monitoring via the temperature sensor is active.
- If the motor is running in the bypass mode, while the inverter is in the "ready and bypass" state (r899.0 = 1 and r0046.25 = 1), then the overload protection for the motor must be realized on the plant or system side.

Parameters for setting the bypass function

Parameter	Description
p1260	**Bypass configuration** Activating the bypass function
r1261	**Bypass control/status word** Control and feedback signals for the bypass function.
p1262	**Bypass dead time** Changeover time for contactors. This should be longer than the motor's demagnetizing time!
p1263	**Debypass delay time** Delay time for switching back to inverter operation.
p1264	**Bypass delay time** Delay time for switching to bypass operation.
p1265	**Bypass speed threshold** Speed threshold for switching to bypass operation.
p1266	**Bypass control command** Signal source for switching to bypass operation.
p1267	**Bypass changeover source configuration** Switch to bypass operation using speed threshold or control signal.
p1269	**Bypass switch feedback** Signal source for contactor feedback for the bypass mode.
p1274	**Bypass switch monitoring time** Monitoring time setting for bypass contactors.

For more details about parameters, please refer to the List Manual.

8.9.14 Energy-saving mode

The energy-saving mode is mainly used for pumps and fans. Typical applications include pressure and temperature controls.

In the energy-saving mode, the inverter stops and starts the motor depending on the system conditions. The energy-saving mode can be activated via the technology controller (without external commands via terminals or bus interface) and via an external setpoint input.

The energy-saving mode offers the advantages of energy saving, lowering mechanical wear and reduced noise.

Note

In the energy-saving mode, if the setpoint is to be entered from the motorized potentiometer or from the motorized potentiometer of the technology controller, you must set p1030.4 or p2230.4 = 1.

NOTICE
After the inverter has been powered up, the motor goes into the energy-saving mode if the energy-saving mode start speed has still not been reached after the highest value from p1120 (ramp-up time), p2391 (energy-saving mode delay time) and 20 s have expired.

Operating principle

The energy-saving mode starts as soon as the motor speed drops below the energy-saving mode start speed. However, the motor is only switched off after an adjustable time has expired. If, during this time, the speed setpoint increases above the energy-saving mode start speed due to pressure or temperature changes, the energy-saving mode is exited and the inverter goes into normal operation.

In the energy-saving mode, the motor is shut down; however, the speed setpoint and/or the technology controller deviation are/is monitored.

- **For an external setpoint input (without technology controller) the speed setpoint is monitored** and the motor is switched-on again as soon as the setpoint increases above the restart speed. The restart speed is calculated as follows: Restart speed = P1080 + p2390 + p2393.

  In the factory setting, the positive speed setpoint is monitored, i.e. the motor is switched on as soon as the setpoint exceeds the restart speed.

  If the negative speed setpoint is also to be monitored, the value of the setpoint must be monitored. This can be set using p1110 = 0.

  Additional setting options are described in the parameter list, in function diagrams 3030 and 3040 as well as in the associated parameter descriptions.

- **When the setpoint is entered from the technology controller, the technology controller deviation (r2273) is monitored**and the motor is switched-on if the deviation of the technology controller exceeds the energy-saving mode restart value (2392).

In the factory setting, only the positive deviation of the technology controller is monitored, i.e. the motor is switched on as soon as the technology controller deviation is greater than the energy-saving mode restart value (p2392).

If the motor should also switch back on for negative technology controller deviation, the value of the deviation must be monitored.

In this case p2298 = 2292 must be set. The percentage value for the minimum limit can be specified in p2292.

Additional setting options are provided in the parameter list in function diagram 7958 and in the associated parameter descriptions.

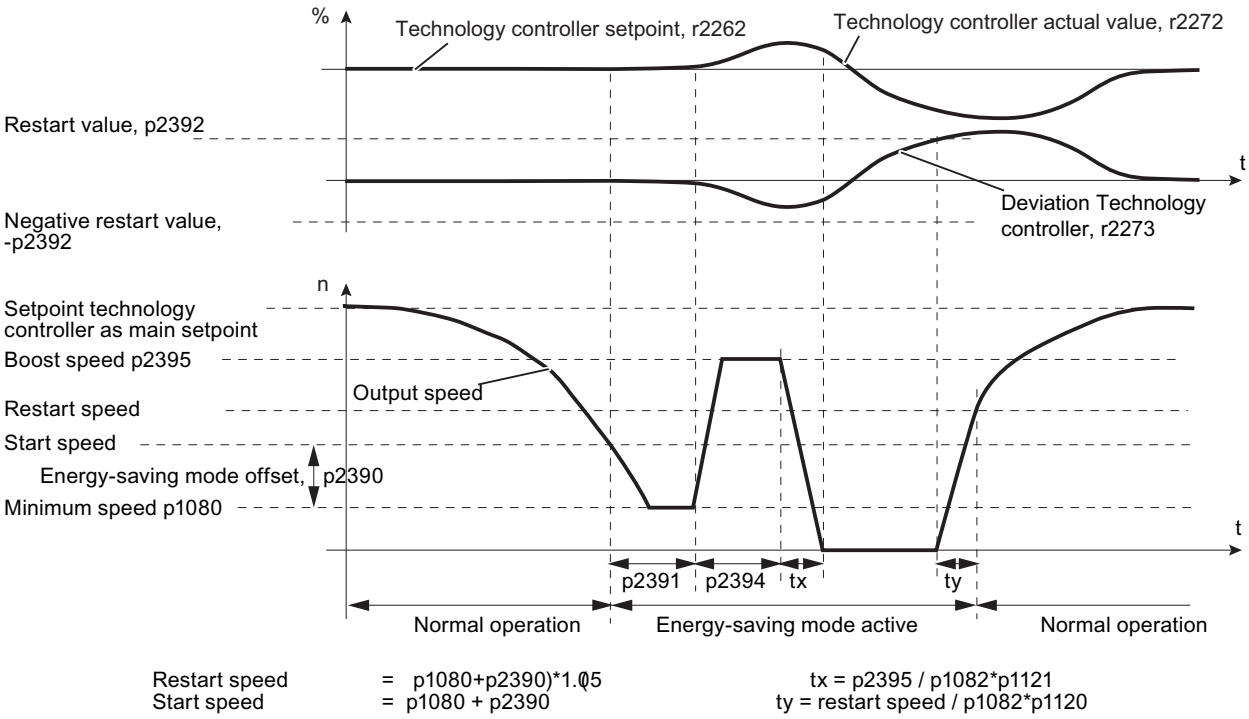
In order to prevent frequent starts and stops, the speed may be boosted for a short time before shutdown (boost). This function can be disabled by setting the boost time (p2394) to 0.

To avoid tank deposits, particularly where liquids are present, it is possible to exit the energy-saving mode after an adjustable time (p2396) has expired and switch to normal operation.

The parameter settings required for the respective variant can be found in the following tables.

Energy-saving mode with setpoint input using the internal technology controller

In this operating mode, the technology controller must be activated as the setpoint source (p2200) and used as the main setpoint (p2251). The function can be operated both with and without boost.

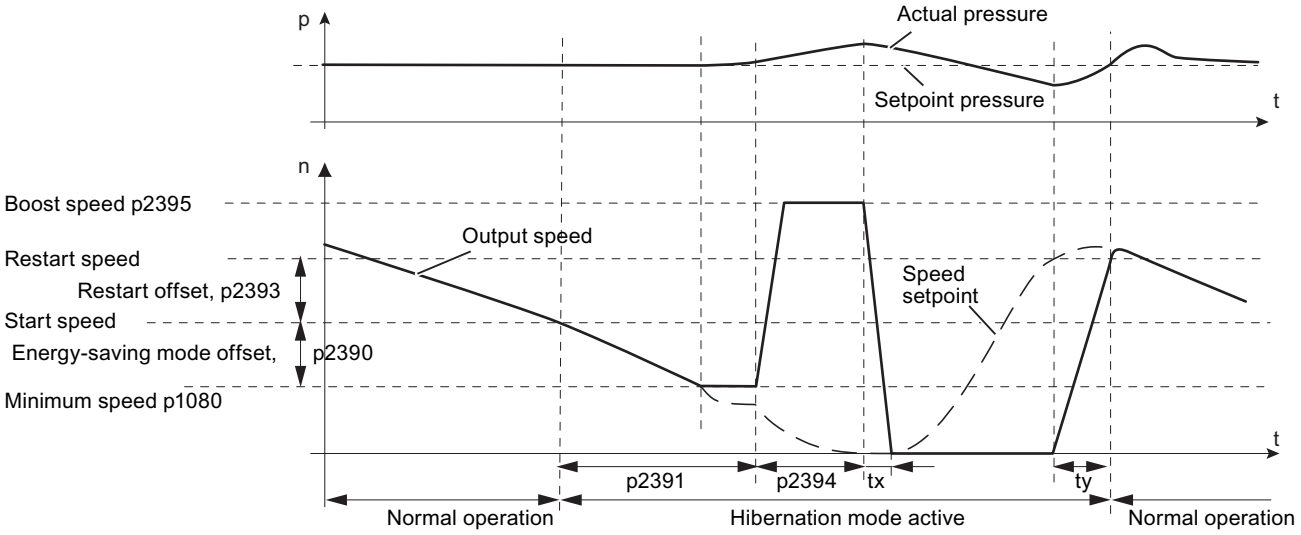


Restart speed = p1080+p2390)*1.05 tx = p2395 / p1082*p1121
Start speed = p1080 + p2390 ty = restart speed / p1082*p1120

Figure 8-35 Energy-saving mode using the technology setpoint as the main setpoint with boost

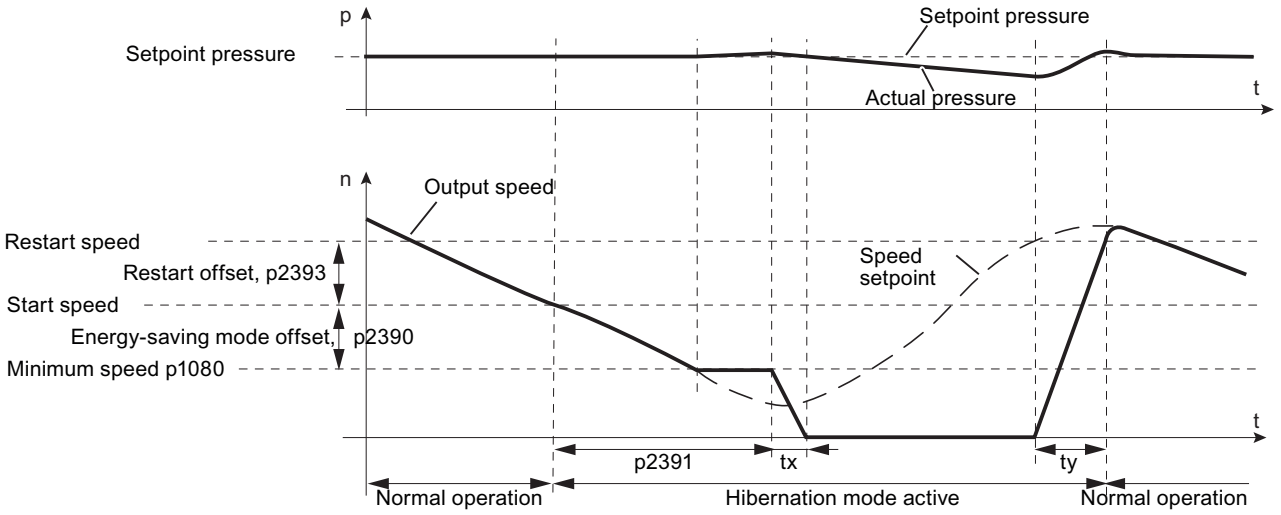
Energy-saving mode with external setpoint input

In this operating mode, the setpoint is specified by an external source (e.g. a temperature sensor); the technology setpoint can be used here as a supplementary setpoint.



Restart speed = 1080 +pp2390 + p2393 tx = p2395 / p1082 * p1121
Start speed = p1080 + p2390 ty = Hibernation restart speed / p1082 * p1120

Figure 8-36 Energy-saving mode using an external setpoint with boost



Restart speed = p1080 + p2390 + p2393 tx = p1080 / p1082 * p1121
Start speed = p1080 + p2390 ty = Restart speed / p1082 * p1120

Figure 8-37 Energy-saving mode using an external setpoint without boost

Adjustable parameters for the energy-saving mode function

Table 8- 61 Main function parameters

Parameter	Description	Via tech. setpoint	Via external setpoint
P1080 = …	**Minimum speed** 0 (factory setting) … 19500 rpm. Lower limit of the motor speed is independent of the speed setpoint.	x	x
P1110 = …	**Block negative direction** Parameter to block the negative direction	-	x
P2200 = …	**Technology controller enable** 0: Technology controller deactivated (factory setting), 1: Technology controller activated	x	-
P2251 = 1	**Technology controller mode** 0: Technology controller as main setpoint (factory setting), 1: Technology controller as supplementary setpoint	x	-
p2298 = …	**Technology controller minimum limiting** Parameter for the minimum limiting of the technology controller	x	-
P2398 = …	**Energy-saving operating mode** 0: Energy-saving mode inhibited (factory setting) 1: Energy-saving mode enabled	x	x
P2390 = …	**Energy-saving mode start speed** 0 (factory setting) … 21000 rpm. As soon as this speed is fallen below, the energy-saving mode delay time starts and switches-off the motor once it expires. The energy-saving mode start speed is calculated as follows: Start speed = P1080 + p2390 P1080 = minimum speed p2390 = energy-saving mode start speed.	x	x
P2391 = …	**Energy-saving mode delay time** 0 ... 3599 s (factory setting 120). The energy-saving mode delay time starts as soon as the output frequency of the inverter drops below the energy-saving mode start speed p2390. If the output frequency increases above this threshold during the delay time, the energy-saving mode delay time is interrupted. Otherwise, the motor is switched off after the delay time has expired (if necessary, after a short boost).	x	x
P2392 = …	**Energy-saving mode restart value (in %)** is required if the technology controller is used as the main setpoint. As soon as the technology controller deviation (r2273) exceeds the energy-saving mode restart value, the inverter switches to normal operation and the motor starts with a setpoint of 1.05 * (p1080 + p2390). As soon as this value is reached, the motor continues to operate with the setpoint of the technology controller (r2260).	x	-
P2393 = …	**Energy-saving mode restart speed (rpm),** required in the case of external setpoint input. The motor starts as soon as the setpoint exceeds the restart speed. The restart speed is calculated as follows: Restart speed = P1080 + p2390 + p2393 P1080 = minimum speed p2390 = energy-saving mode start speed p2393 = energy-saving mode restart speed	-	x

Parameter	Description	Via tech. setpoint	Via external setpoint
P2394 = …	**Energy-saving mode boost duration** 0 (factory setting) … 3599 s. Before the inverter switches over into the energy-saving mode, the motor is accelerated for the time set in p2394 according to the acceleration ramp, but not to more than the speed set in P2395.	x	x
P2395 = …	**Energy-saving mode boost speed** 0 (factory setting) … 21000 rpm. Before the inverter switches over into the energy-saving mode, the motor is accelerated for the time set in p2394 according to the acceleration ramp, but not to more than the speed set in P2395. **Caution:** Make sure that the boost cannot cause any overpressure or overflow conditions.	x	x
P2396 = …	**Maximum energy-saving mode shutdown time** 0 (factory setting) … 863999 s. At the latest when this time expires, the inverter switches to normal operation and is accelerated up to the start speed (P1080 + P2390). If the inverter is switched to normal operation in advance, the shutdown time is reset to the value set in this parameter. With p2396 = 0, automatic changeover to normal operation after a certain time is deactivated.	x	x

Display parameters

Parameter	Description
r2273	**Display of the setpoint/actual value deviation of the technology controller**
r2397	**Actual energy-saving mode output speed** Actual boost speed before the pulses are inhibited or the actual start speed after restart.
r2399	**Energy-saving mode status word** 00 Energy-saving mode enabled (P2398 <> 0) 01 Energy-saving mode active 02 Energy-saving mode delay time active 03 Energy-saving mode boost active 04 Energy-saving mode motor switched off 05 Energy-saving mode motor switched off, cyclic restart active 06 Energy-saving mode motor restarts 07 Energy-saving mode supplies the total setpoint of the ramp-function generator 08 Energy-saving mode bypasses the ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel

8.9.15 Logical and arithmetic functions using function blocks

Additional signal interconnections in the converter can be established by means of free function blocks. Every digital and analog signal available via BICO technology can be routed to the appropriate inputs of the free function blocks. The outputs of the free function blocks are also interconnected to other functions using BICO technology.

Among others, the following free function blocks are available:

- Logic modules AND, OR, XOR, NOT
- Arithmetic blocks ADD, SUB, MUL, DIV, AVA (device for forming absolute values), NCM (numeric comparator), PLI (polyline)
- Time modules MFP (pulse generator), PCL (pulse shortening), PDE (ON delay), PDF (OFF delay), PST (pulse stretching)
- Memories: RSR (RS flip-flop), DSR (D flip-flop)
- Switches NSW (numeric change-over switch) BSW (binary change-over switch)
- Controllers LIM (limiter), PT1 (smoothing element), INT (integrator), DIF (differentiating element)
- Limit value monitoring LVM

You will find an overview of all of the free function blocks and their parameters in the List Manual, in Chapter "Function diagrams" in the section "Free function blocks" (function diagrams 7210 ff).

Activating the free blocks

None of the free function blocks in the converter are used in the factory setting. In order to be able to use a free function block, you must perform the following steps:

- In the parameter list, select the function block from the function diagrams - there you will find all of the parameters that you require to interconnect the block
- Assign the block to a runtime group
- Define the run sequence within the runtime group - this is only required if you have assigned several blocks to the same runtime group.
- Interconnect the block's inputs and outputs with the corresponding signals on the converter.

The runtime groups are calculated at different intervals (time slices). Please refer to the following table to see which free function blocks can be assigned to which time slices.

Table 8- 62 Runtime groups and possible assignments of the free function blocks

	Runtime groups 1 … 6 with associated time slices					
Free function blocks	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**
	8 ms	**16 ms**	**32 ms**	**64 ms**	**128 ms**	**256 ms**
Logic modules AND, OR, XOR, NOT	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Arithmetic blocks ADD, SUB, MUL, DIV, AVA, NCM, PLI	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
Time modules MFP, PCL, PDE, PDF, PST	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
Memories RSR, DSR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Switches NSW	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
Switches BSW	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Controllers LIM, PT1, INT, DIF	-	-	-	-	✓	✓
Limit value monitoring LVM	-	-	-	-	✓	✓

✓: The block can be assigned to the runtime group
-: The block cannot be assigned to this runtime group

Analog signal scaling

If you interconnect a physical quantity, e.g. speed or voltage to the input of a free function block using BICO technology, then the signal is automatically scaled to a value of 1. The analog output signals of the free function blocks are also available as scaled quantities (0 ≙ 0 %, 1≙ 100 %).

As soon as you have interconnected the scaled output signal of a free function block to functions, which require physical input quantities - e.g. the signal source of the upper torque limit (p1522) - then the signal is automatically converted into the physical quantity.

The quantities with their associated scaling parameters are listed in the following:

- Speeds P2000 Reference speed (≙100 %)
- Voltage values P2001 Reference voltage (≙100 %)
- Current values P2002 Reference current (≙100 %)
- Torque values P2003 Reference torque (≙100 %)
- Power values P2004 Reference power (≙100 %)
- Angle P2005 Reference angle (≙100 %)
- Acceleration P2007 Reference acceleration (≙100 %)
- Temperature 100 °C ≙ 100 %

Scaling examples

- Speed:
  Reference speed p2000 = 3000 rpm, actual speed 2100 rpm. As a consequence, the following applies to the scaled input quantity: 2100 / 3000 = 0,7.
- Temperature:
  Reference quantity is 100 °C. For an actual temperature of 120 °C, the input value is obtained from 120 °C / 100 °C = 1.2.

Note

Limits within the function blocks should be entered as scaled values. The scaled value can be calculated as follows using the reference parameter: Scaled limit value = physical limit value / value of the reference parameter.

The assignment to reference parameters is provided in the parameter list in the individual parameter descriptions.

Example: Logic combination of two digital inputs

You want to switch on the motor via digital input 0 and also via digital input 1:

1. Activate a free OR block by assigning it to a runtime group, and define the run sequence.
2. Interconnect the status signals of the two digital inputs DI 0 and DI 1 via BICO to the two inputs of the OR block.
3. Finally, interconnect the OR block output with the internal ON command (P0840).

Table 8- 63 Parameters for using the free function blocks

Parameter	Description
P20048 = 1	**Assignment of block OR 0 to runtime group 1** (factory setting: 9999) The block OR 0 is calculated in the time slice with 8 ms
P20049 = 60	Definition of run sequence within runtime group 1 (factory setting: 60) Within one runtime group, the block with the smallest value is calculated first.
P20046 [0] = 722.0	**Interconnection of first OR 0 input (factory setting: 0)** The first OR 0 input is linked to digital input 0 (r0722.0)
P20046 [1] = 722.1	**Interconnection of second OR 0 input (factory setting: 0)** The second OR 0 input is linked to digital input 1 (r0722.1)
P0840 = 20047	**Interconnection of OR 0 output (factory setting: 0)** The OR 0 output (r20047) is connected with the motor's ON command

Example: AND operation

An example of an AND logic operation, explained in detail, including the use of a time block is provided in the Interconnecting signals in the converter (Page 360)chapter.

You can find additional information in the following manuals:

- Function Manual "Free Function Blocks" (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/35125827)
- Function Manual "Description of the Standard DCC Blocks" (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/29193002)

8.10 Switchover between different settings

In several applications, the inverter must be able to be operated with different settings.

Example:

You connect different motors to one inverter. Depending on the particular motor, the inverter must operate with the associated motor data and the appropriate ramp-function generator.

Drive data sets (DDS)

Your can parameterize several inverter functions differently and then switch over between the different settings.

The associated parameters are indexed (index 0, 1, 2 or 3). Using control commands select one of the four indices and therefore one of the four saved settings.

The settings in the inverter with the same index are known as drive data set.

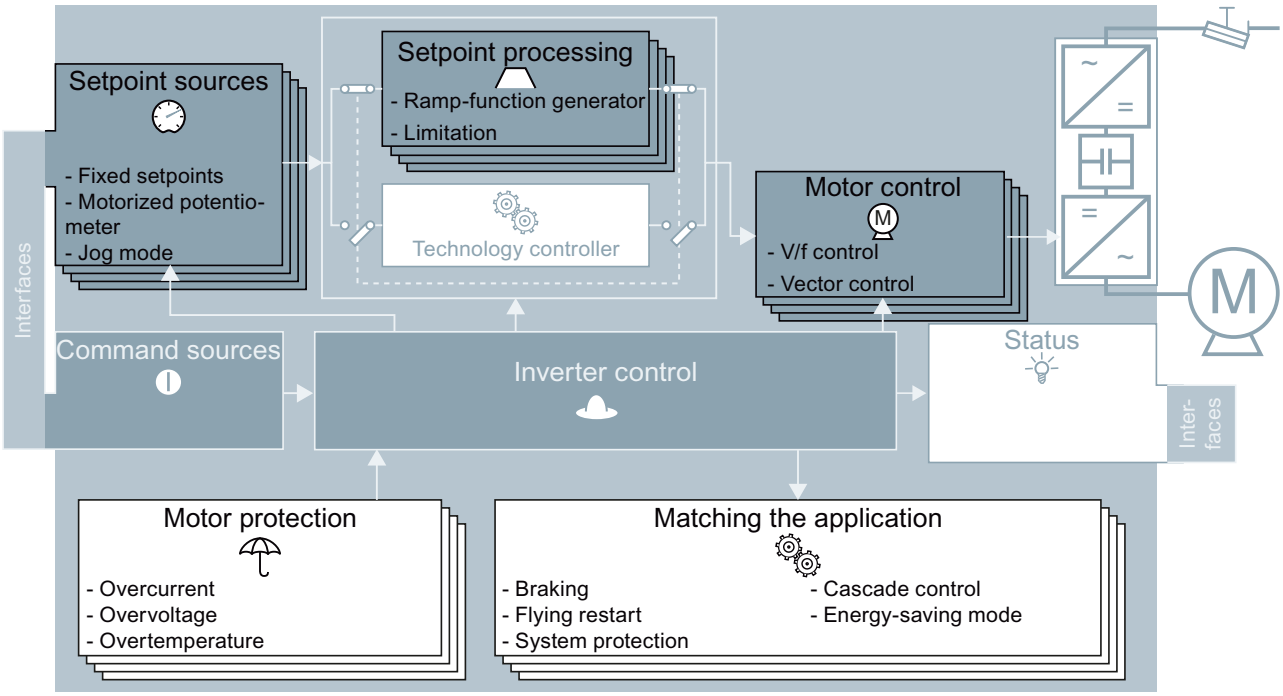


Figure 8-38 DDS switchover in the inverter

Using parameter p0180 you can define the number of command data sets (1 ... 4).

Table 8- 64 Selecting the number of command data sets

Parameter	Description
p0010 = 15	**Drive commissioning:** Data sets
p0180	**Drive data sets (DDS) number**(factory setting: 1)
p0010 = 0	**Drive commissioning:** Ready

Table 8- 65 Parameters for switching the drive data sets:

Parameter	Description
p0820	**Drive data set selection DDS bit 0**
p0821	**Drive data set selection DDS bit 1**
p0826	**Motor changeover, motor number**
r0051	**Displaying the number of the DDS that is currently effective**

For an overview of all the parameters that belong to the drive data sets and can be switched, see the Parameter Manual.

Note

You can only switch over the motor data of the drive data sets in the "ready for operation" state with the motor switched-off. The switchover time is approx. 50 ms.

If you do not switch over the motor data together with the drive data sets (i.e. same motor number in p0826), then the drive data sets can also be switched over in operation.

Table 8- 66 Parameters for copying the drive data sets

Parameter	Description
p0819[0]	**Source drive data set**
p0819[1]	**Target drive data set**
p0819[2] = 1	**Start copy operation**

For more information, see the List Manual (the parameter list and function diagram 8565).

Data backup and standard commissioning

9

External data backup

After commissioning, your settings are saved in the converter so that they are protected against power failure.

We recommend that you additionally back up the parameter settings on a storage medium outside the converter. Without backup, your settings could be lost if the converter developed a defect (see also Replacing the Control Unit (Page 304)).

The following storage media are available for your settings:

1. Memory card
2. PC/PG
3. Operator Panel

Series commissioning

Series commissioning is the commissioning of several identical drives. After commissioning of the first drive, you must do the following:

1. Back up the settings of the first converter to an external storage medium.
2. Transfer the settings of the first converter to another converter via the storage medium.

Note

The control unit to which the parameters are transferred must have the same order number and the same or a higher firmware version as the source control unit.

9.1 Backing up and transferring settings using a memory card

What memory cards do we recommend?

We recommend that you use one of the memory cards with the following order numbers:

- MMC (order number 6SL3254-0AM00-0AA0)
- SD (order number 6ES7954-8LB01-0AA0)

Using memory cards from other manufacturers

If you use other SD or MMC memory cards, then you must format the memory card as follows:

- MMC: Format FAT 16
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card:
    format x: /fs:fat (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC)
- SD: Format FAT 32
  - Insert the card into your PC's card reader.
  - Command to format the card:
    format x: /fs:fat32 (x: Drive code of the memory card on your PC.)

⚠ CAUTION
You use memory cards from other manufacturers at your own risk. Depending on the card manufacturer, not all functions are supported (e.g. download).

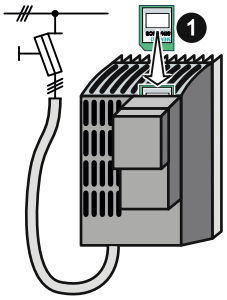
9.1.1 Saving setting on memory card

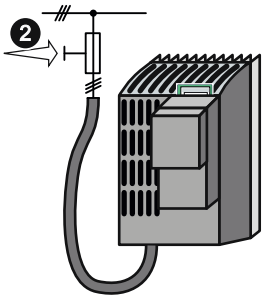
We recommend that you insert the memory card before switching on the converter. The converter always also backs up its settings on an inserted card.

If you wish to backup the converter settings on a memory card, you have two options:

Procedure: Automatic backup

- The converter power supply has been switched off.
  1. Insert an empty memory card into the converter.
  2. Then switch-on the converter power supply.



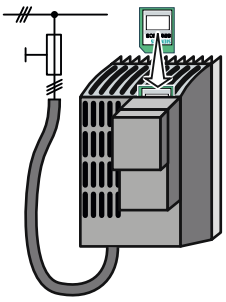


- After it has been switched on, the frequency converter copies its settings to the memory card.

NOTICE
If the memory card is not empty, then the converter accepts the data from the memory card. The previous setting in the converter will be deleted and will not be able to be restored.

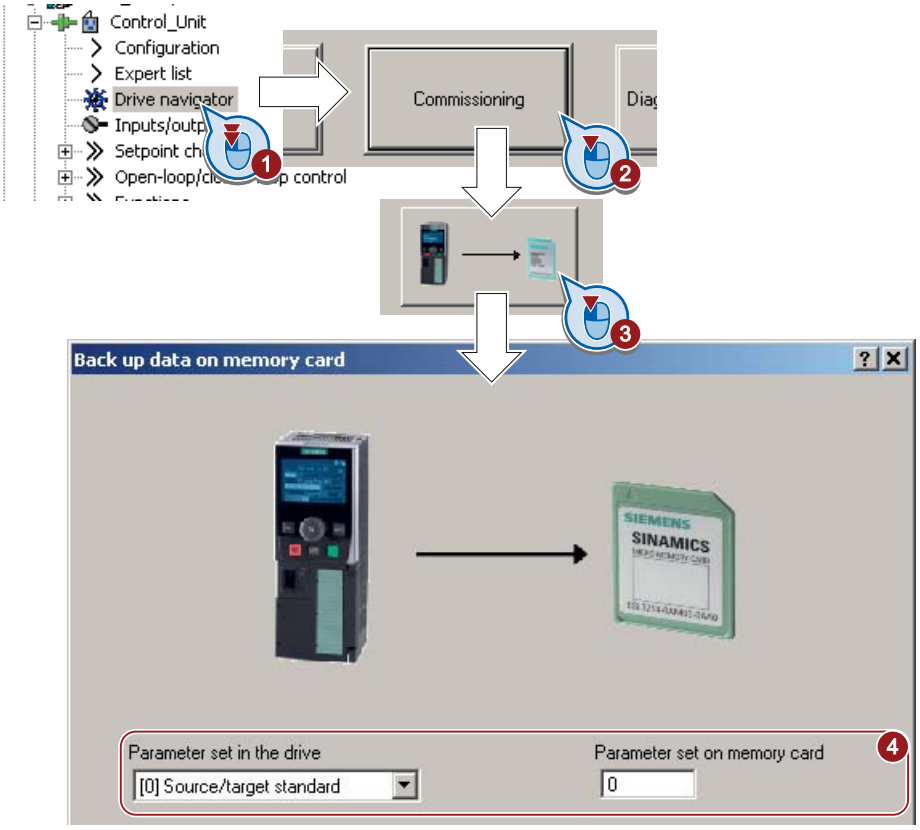
Procedure: Overwrite data on a memory card

- The converter power supply has been switched on.
- Insert a memory card into the converter.



Procedure using STARTER

- Go online with STARTER.



- ① In your drive, select "Drive Navigator".
- ② Select the "Commissioning" button.
- ③ Select the button to transfer the settings to the memory card.
- ④ Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.
- Close the screen forms.

Procedure with the BOP-2

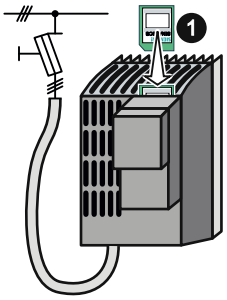
- Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" - "TO CRD".



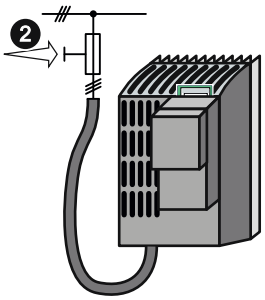
9.1.2 Transferring the setting from the memory card

Procedure

- The converter power supply has been switched off.
  1. Insert the memory card into the converter.



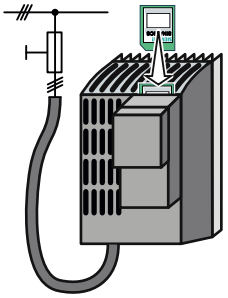
  2. Then switch-on the converter power supply.



- If there is valid parameter data on the memory card, then the converter accepts the data from the memory card.

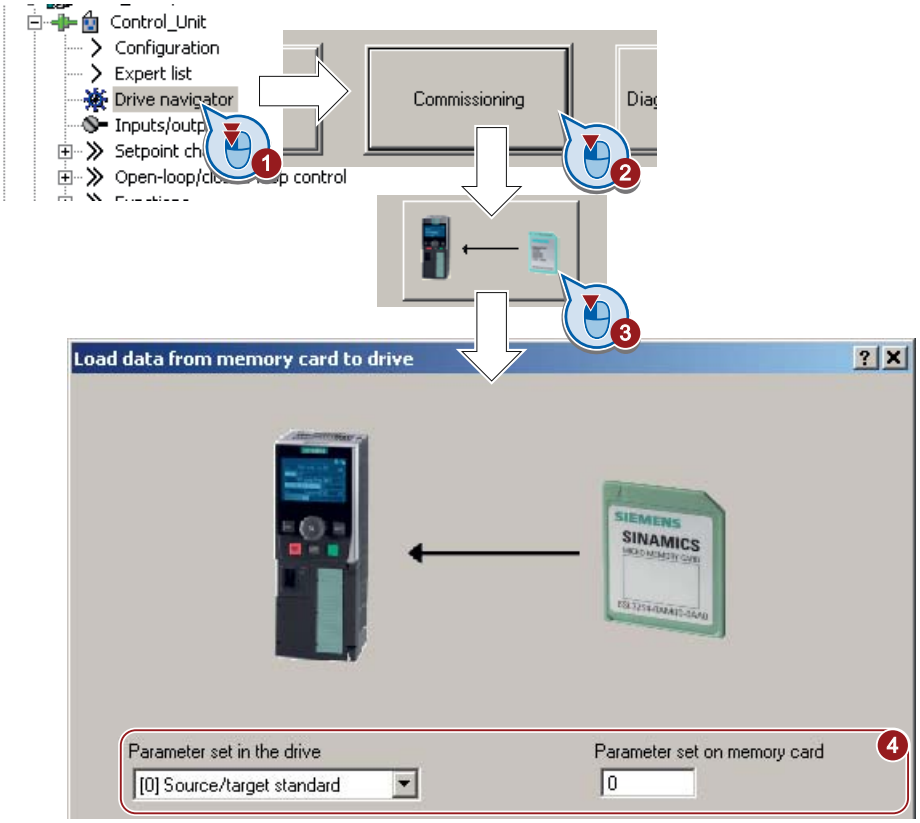
Procedure: Manual data transfer from a memory card

- The converter power supply has been switched on.
- Insert a memory card into the converter.



Procedure using STARTER

- Go online with STARTER.



- ① In your drive, select "Drive Navigator".
- ② Select the "Commissioning" button.
- ③ Select the button to transfer the data from the memory card to the converter.
- ④ Select the settings as shown in the diagram and start the data backup.
- Close the screen forms.
- Go offline with STARTER.
- Switch off the converter power supply.
- Wait until all LED on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.

Procedure with the BOP-2

- Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" - "FROM CRD".
- Switch off the converter power supply.
- Wait until all LED on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.

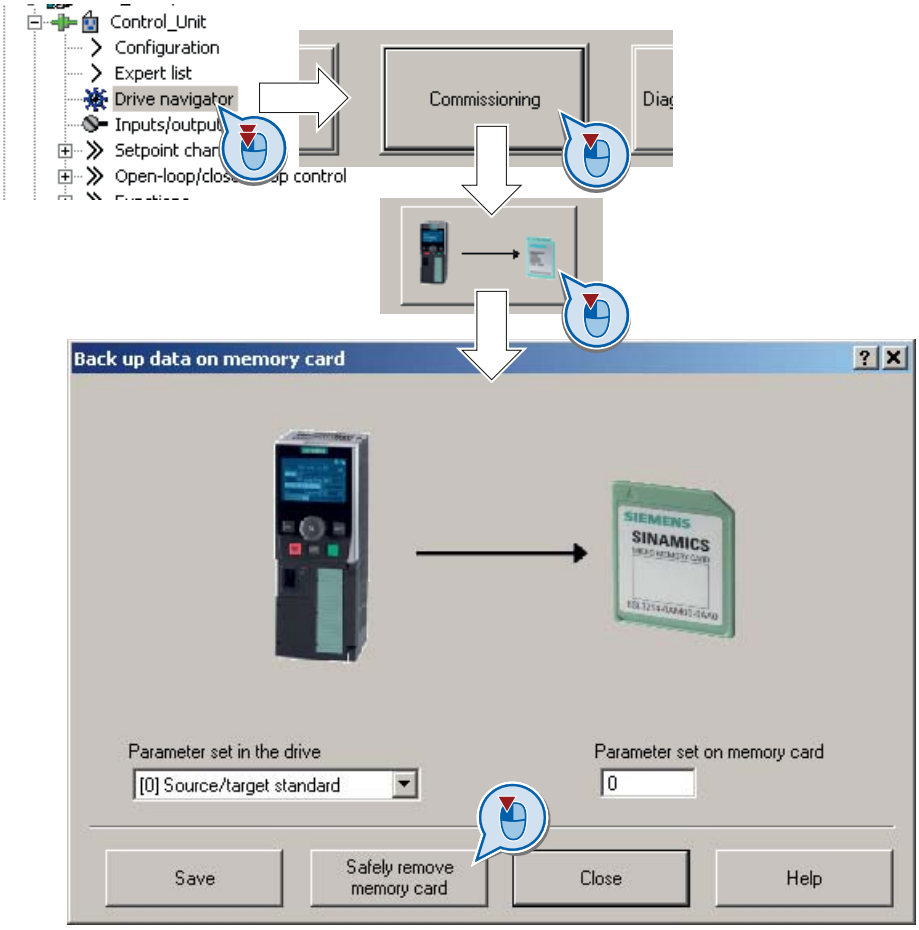


9.1.3 Safely remove the memory card

CAUTION
The file system on the memory card can be destroyed if the memory card is removed while the converter is switched on without first requesting and confirming this using the "safe removal" function. The memory card will then no longer function.

Procedure with STARTER

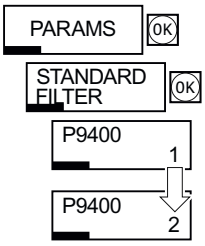
- In the Drive Navigatorselect the following screen form:



- Click on the button to safely remove the memory card.
- You may remove the memory card from the converter after the appropriate message has been output.

Procedure with the BOP-2

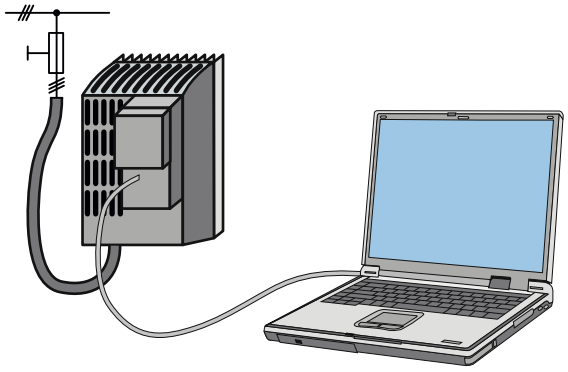
- Go to parameter p9400. If a memory card is correctly inserted, then p9400 = 1.
- Set p9400 = 2 The BOP-2 displays "BUSY" for several seconds and then jumps to either p9400 = 3 or p9400 = 100.
- For Bei p9400 = 3 you may remove the memory card.
- For p9400 = 100, you may not remove the memory card at the moment.
  In this case, try again by setting p9400 = 2.



9.2 Backing up and transferring settings using STARTER

With the supply voltage switched on, you can transfer the converter settings from the converter to a PG/PC, or the data from a PG/PC to the converter.

This requires you to have installed the STARTER commissioning tool on your PG/PC.



You will find additional information about STARTER in the section: Accessories for commissioning and operation (Page 27).

Procedure converter → PC/PG

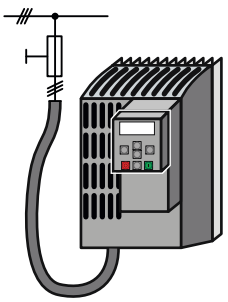
- Go online with STARTER : .
- Select the button "Download project to PG": .
- To save the data in the PG, select the button: .
- Go offline with STARTER : .

Procedure PC/PG → Converter

- Go online with STARTER : .
- Select the button "Download project to target system": .
- To save the data in the converter, select the "Copy RAM to ROM" button: .
- Go offline with STARTER : .

9.3 Saving settings and transferring them using an operator panel

When the power supply is switched on, you can transfer the settings of the converter to the BOP-2 or, vice versa, transfer the data from the BOP-2 to the converter.



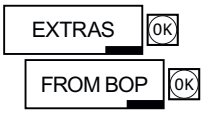
Procedure converter → BOP-2

- Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" - "TO BOP".



Procedure BOP-2 → converter

- Start data transfer in the menu "EXTRAS" - "FROM BOP".
- Switch off the converter power supply.
- Wait until all LED on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again. Your settings only become effective after this power-on reset.



9.4 Other ways to back up settings

Description

In addition to the default setting, the converter has an internal memory for backing up three other settings.

On the memory card, you can back up 99 other settings in addition to the default setting.

You will find additional information on the Internet at: Memory options (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/43512514).

Table 9- 1 Backing up settings in the converter

Parameter	Description
p0970	**Reset drive parameters** Load backed-up setting (number 10, 11 or 12). You overwrite your actual parameter setting when loading.
p0971	**Save parameters** Back up the setting (10, 11 or 12).

Table 9- 2 Backing up additional settings on the memory card

Parameter	Description
p0802	**Data transfer with memory card as source/target** (factory setting: 0) Default setting: p802 = 0 Further settings: p802 = 1 … 99
p0803	**Data transfer with device memory as source/target** (factory setting: 0) Default setting: p803 = 0 Further settings: p803 = 10, 11 or 12

Table 9- 3 Operation on the BOP-2

	Description	
		The converter writes its setting 0, 10, 11 or 12 to the memory card in accordance with p0802. The file on the memory card is assigned the number according to p0802.
		The converter loads the setting with the number according to p0802 from the memory card and thus overwrites its setting 0, 10, 11 or 12.

9.5 Write and know-how protection

The converter offers the option to protect configured settings from being changed or copied.

Write protection and know how protection are available for this purpose.

Write protection - overview

Write protection is primarily used to prevent converter settings from being inadvertently changed. No password is required for write protection, there is no encryption.

The following functions are excluded from the write protection:

- Activating/deactivating write protection (p7761)
- Changing the access level (p0003)
- Saving parameters (p0971)
- Safely removing the memory card (p9400)
- Access to service parameters (p3950) - only for service personnel, a password is required
- Restoring the factory setting
- Upload
- Acknowledging alarms and faults
- Switching over to the control panel
- Trace
- Function generator
- Measuring functions
- Reading out diagnostic buffer

The individual parameters that are excluded from the write protection, can be found in the List Manual in Chapter "Parameters for write protection and protection of know-how".

Know-how protection - overview

The know-how protection is used, for example, so that a machine manufacturer can encrypt his configuration know-how and protect it against changes or copying.

The know-how protection is available in the following versions:

- **Know-how protection without copy protection** (possible with or without memory card)
- **Know-how protection with copy protection** (possible only with Siemens memory card)

A password is required for the know-how protection.

In case of active know-how protection, the STARTER dialog screens are locked. You can, however, read the values of the display parameters from the expert list. The values of the adjustment parameters are not displayed and cannot be changed.

Actions that are also possible during active know-how protection

Actions listed below can also be executed during active know-how protection:

- Restoring factory settings
- Acknowledging messages
- Displaying messages
- Displaying the alarm history
- Reading out diagnostic buffer
- Switching to the control panel (complete control panel functionality: Fetch master control, all buttons and setting parameters)
- Upload (only parameters, which are accessible even though know-how protection is active)

Actions that are not possible during active know-how protection

Actions listed below cannot be executed during active know-how protection:

- Download
- Export/import
- Trace
- Function generator
- Measuring functions
- Automatic controller setting
- Stationary/rotating measurement
- Deleting the alarm history

The individual parameters that are excluded from the know-how protection can be found in the List Manual in Chapter "Parameters for write protection and protection of know-how".

9.5.1 Write protection

Set write protection

In order that you can set write protection, your converter must be connected online with STARTER.

Activate and deactivate write protection

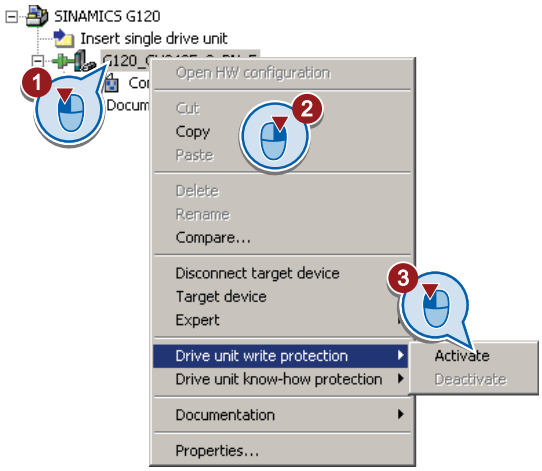
Select the converter in your STARTER project with the left mouse button ①.

Open the shortcut menu by right-clicking ②

Activate write protection ③

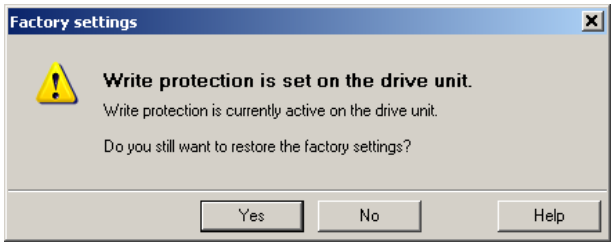
Deactivation is executed in analog.

To make this setting permanent, you need to select "Copy RAM to ROM" . Otherwise, your settings will be lost when the converter is switched off.



Points to note about restoring the factory settings

If you select "Reset to factory settings" using the button when write protection is active, the following confirmation prompt opens.



If you initiate reset using other methods such as the expert list, there is no prompt.

Note

Points to note regarding CAN, BACnet and MODBUS

Using these bus systems, parameter factory settings can be changed despite active write protection. So that write protection is also active when accessing via these fieldbuses, you must additionally set p7762 to 1.

This setting is only possible via the expert list.

9.5.2 Know-how protection

When the converter is operated with know-how protection, please take note of the following information:

Note

Support provided by technical support for active know-how protection

In the case of active know-how protection, support by the technical support is only possible with the consent of the machine manufacturer.

Know-how protection can only be activated online.

If you have created a project offline on your computer, you must download it to the converter and go online. Only then can you activate the know-how protection.

You cannot activate know-how protection in the project on the computer.

Know-how protection with copy protection is only possible with a Siemens memory card.

For "know-how protection with copy protection", a Siemens memory card must be plugged in!

If you try to activate the "know-how protection with copy protection" without a memory card, or with a different memory card, the error message "know-how protection for the drive unit could not be activated" is displayed.

Password check for know-how protection and Windows language settings

Please note that if the Windows language settings are changed, after activating know-how protection, errors can occur when subsequently checking the password. Therefore, only use characters from the ASCII character set for your password.

Commissioning the converter with know-how protection

Recommended procedure for commissioning with know-how protection.

1. Commission the converter.
2. Create the exception list (Page 300)
3. Activate the know-how protection (Page 299).
4. Save the settings in the converter by copying RAM to ROM with  or via p0971 = 1.
5. Save the project with  on the PG/PC. Also back up any other project-related data (machine type, password, etc.) that may be required for the support of the end customer.

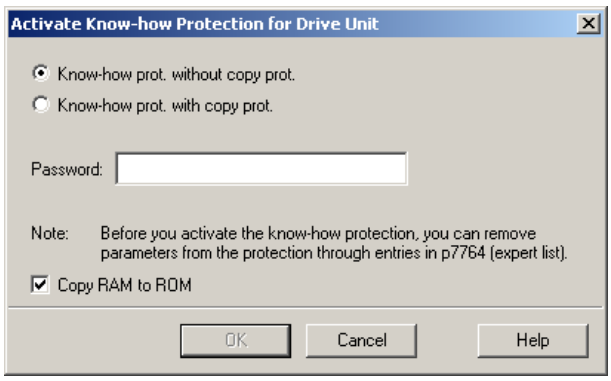
9.5.2.1 Settings for the know-how protection

Activating know-how protection

Select the converter in the STARTER project, and then select "Know-how protection drive unit/activate ..." in the shortcut menu (see also Write protection (Page 297)).

The adjacent screen form then opens:

Enter your password in this screen and confirm with OK. The password must consist of at least one character and can be no longer than 30 characters. All characters are permissible.



In this screen form "Copy RAM to ROM" has been selected in the factory. This will ensure that your settings are permanently stored.

If "Copy RAM to ROM" is not selected, then your know-how protection settings are only saved in the volatile memory, and will no longer be available the next time the system is switched on.

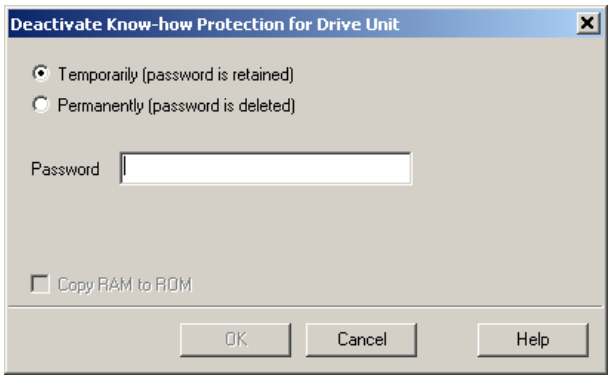
Backing up parameter settings on the memory card

When the know-how protection is activated, you may save the parameter settings via p0971 on the memory card.

To do this, set p0971 = 1. The data is encrypted before being written to the memory card. After saving, p0971 is reset to 0.

Deactivate know-how protection, delete password

1. Select the converter in the STARTER project, and right-click to open the dialog box "Know-how protection drive unit/deactivate …".
2. There, select the desired option.
3. Enter the password and exit the screen form with OK.



Note

Permanently or temporarily deactivating know-how protection

Temporarily deactivating know-how protection means that know-how protection is active again after switching off and switching on. Permanently deactivating means that know-how protection is no longer active after switching off and switching on again.

It goes without saying that you can always reactivate know-how protection, even if you have permanently canceled it, by following the procedure described above in this section.

Deactivating know-how protection temporarily

To temporarily deactivate the know-how protection means that you can change the settings in the converter until you switch the converter off and on again, or until you reactivate the know-how protection.

Finally deactivating know-how protection (delete password)

To finally deactivating the know-how protection means that you delete the password

- Immediately and finally, if you select "Copy RAM to ROM"
- Until the next OFF/ON if you do not select "Copy RAM to ROM"

Changing the password

Select the converter in the STARTER project and open the dialog box via the shortcut menu "know-how protection drive unit/change password … ".

9.5.2.2 Creating an exception list for the know-how protection

Using the exception list, you as a machine manufacturer may make individual adjustable parameters accessible to end customers although know-how protection is active. You may define the exception list via parameters p7763 and p7764 in the expert list. Specify the number of parameters for the selection list in p7763. Assign the individual indices to the parameter numbers of the selection list in p7764.

NOTICE
Procedure to change p7763 (number of parameters for the selection list) 1. Save the converter settings via an upload ( ) on the computer/PG and go offline ( ) 2. In the project on the computer, set p7763 to the desired value. Save the project. 3. Go online and load the project into the converter ( ). 4. Now make the additional settings in p7764.

Factory setting for the exception list:

- p7763 = 1 (selection list contains precisely one parameter)
- p7764[0] = 7766 (parameter number for entering the password)

⚠ CAUTION

Take special care when creating the exception list!

If you remove p7766 from the exception list, you can no longer enter a password and therefore no longer deactivate know-how protection. The only possibility to be able to access the converter again is to reset the converter to the factory settings.

9.5.2.3 Replacing devices with active know-how protection

Replacing devices during know-how protection without copy protection

During know-how protection without copy protection, you can save the configuration settings of the converter with the automatic upload (see Saving setting on memory card (Page 287)) on an empty memory card, and with the automatic download (see Transferring the setting from the memory card (Page 289)) you can transfer these to another converter – and thus replace devices or commission other converters.

Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection

The know-how protection with copy protection prevents the converter settings from being copied and passed on. This function is predominantly used by machine manufacturers.

If know-how protection with copy protection is active, the converter cannot be replaced as described in "Replacing the Control Unit (Page 304)".

However, to allow the converter to be replaced, it must be operated with a Siemens memory card, and the machine manufacturer must have an identical machine that he uses as sample.

There are two options for replacing the device:

Case 1: The machine manufacturer only knows the serial number of the new converter

Procedure:

1. The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
   - For which machine must the converter be replaced?
   - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new converter?
2. The machine manufacturer goes online on the sample machine.
   - deactivates the know-how protection, see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 299)
   - enters the serial number of the new converter in p7759
   - enters the serial number of the inserted memory card as reference serial number in p7769
   - activates the know-how protection with copy protection ("Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated!), see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 299)

- writes the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card
- sends the memory card to the end customer

3. The end customer inserts the memory card and switches on the converter.

When powering up, the converter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the converter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the converter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

Case 2: The machine manufacturer knows the serial number of the new converter and the serial number of the MMC

Procedure

1. The end customer provides the machine manufacturer with the following information:
   - For which machine must the converter be replaced?
   - What is the serial number (r7758) of the new converter?
   - What is the serial number of the memory card?
2. The machine manufacturer goes online on the sample machine.
   - deactivates the know-how protection, see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 299)
   - enters the serial number of the new converter in p7759
   - enters the serial number of the customer's memory card as reference serial number in p7769
   - activates the know-how protection with copy protection ("Copy RAM to ROM" must be activated!), see Settings for the know-how protection (Page 299)
   - writes the configuration with p0971 = 1 to the memory card
   - copies the encrypted project from the card to his PC
   - for example, sends it by e-mail to the end customer
3. The end customer copies the project to the Siemens memory card that belongs to the machine, inserts it in the converter and switches on the converter.

When powering up, the converter checks the serial numbers of the card and when there is a match, the converter goes into the "ready to start" state.

If the numbers do not match, then the converter signals fault F13100 (no valid memory card).

Service and maintenance

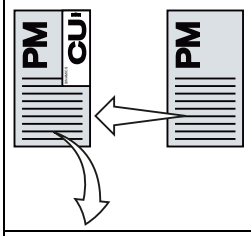
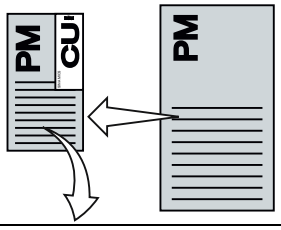
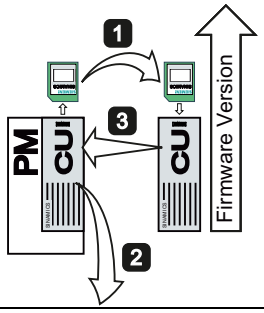
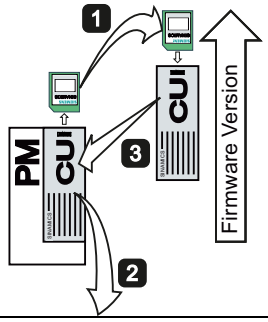
10

10.1 Overview of replacing converter components

In the event of a permanent function fault, you can replace the converter's Power Module or Control Unit independently of one another. In the following cases, you may immediately switch on the motor again after the replacement.

⚠ WARNING
In all other cases, you must recommission the drive.

Component replacement, general

Replacing the Power Module		Replacing the Control Unit with external backup of the settings, e.g. on a memory card	
Replacement: • Same type • Same power rating	Replacement: • Same type • *Higher* power rating	Replacement: • Same type • Same firmware version	Replacement: • Same type • *higher* firmware version (e.g. replace FW V4.2 by FW V4.3)
			
	Power Module and motor must be adapted to one another (ratio of motor and Power Module rated power > 1/8)	The converter automatically loads the settings on the memory card into the new CU. If you have saved the settings of your converter on another medium, e.g. on an operator panel or on a PC, then after the replacement, the settings must be loaded into the converter.	

Device replacement without removable storage medium - only for communication via PROFINET

If you have created a topology in your control, using the environment detection, you can replace a defective converter by a new device of the same type and with the identical software release without having to recommission the system.

You can either load the converter settings into the converter using the memory card, or – if you are using a SIMATIC S7 control with DriveES – using DriveES.

Details of the device replacement without removable storage medium can be found in the Profinet system description (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/19292127).

10.2 Replacing the Control Unit



⚠WARNING

230 V AC can be connected via the relay outputs DO 0 and DO 2 of the Control Unit. These terminals can carry 230 V AC independent of the voltage condition of the Power Module. Therefore please observe appropriate safety measures when working on the inverter.

After commissioning has been completed, we recommend that you back up your settings on an external storage medium, e.g.: on a memory card or the operator panel.

If you do not back up your data, you have to recommission the drive when you replace the Control Unit.

Procedure for replacing a Control Unit with a memory card

- Disconnect the line voltage to the Power Module and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the Control Unit.
- Remove the signal cables from the Control Unit.
- Remove the defective CU.
- Mount the new CU onto the Power Module. The new CU must have the same order number and the same or a higher firmware version as the CU that was replaced.
- Remove the memory card from the old Control Unit and insert it in the new Control Unit.
- Reconnect the signal cables of the Control Unit.
- Connect up the line voltage again.
- The converter adopts the settings from the memory card, saves them (protected against power failure) in its internal parameter memory, and switches to "ready to start" state.
- Switch on the motor and check the function of the drive.

Procedure for replacing a Control Unit without a memory card

- Disconnect the line voltage to the Power Module and (if installed) the external 24 V supply or the voltage for the digital outputs of the Control Unit.
- Remove the signal cables of the Control Unit.
- Remove the defective CU.
- Mount the new CU onto the Power Module.
- Reconnect the signal cables of the Control Unit.
- Connect up the line voltage again.

- The converter goes into the "ready-to-switch-on" state.
- If you have backed up your settings:
  - Load the settings from the operator panel or via STARTER into the converter.
  - For converters of the same type and the same firmware version, you can now switch-on the motor. Check the function of the drive.
  - For a different type of converter, the converter outputs alarm A01028. The alarm indicates that the settings that have been loaded are not compatible with the converter. In this case, clear the alarm with p0971 = 1 and recommission the drive.
- If you have not backed up your settings, then you must recommission the drive.

10.3 Replacing the Power Module

Procedure for replacing a Power Module

- Disconnect the Power Module from the line supply.
- If being used, switch off the 24 V supply of the Control Unit.



⚠DANGER

Risk of electrical shock!

Hazardous voltage is still present for up to 5 minutes after the power supply has been switched off.

It is not permissible to carry out any installation work before this time has expired!

- Remove the connecting cables of the Power Module.
- Remove the Control Unit from the Power Module.
- Replace the old Power Module with the new Power Module.
- Mount the Control Unit onto the new Power Module.
- Connect up the new Power Module using the connecting cables.
- Switch on the line supply and, if being used, the 24 V supply for the Control Unit.
- If necessary, recommission the drive (also see Overview of replacing converter components (Page 303)).

Alarms, faults and system messages

11

The converter has the following diagnostic types:

- LED

  The LED at the front of the converter immediately informs you about the most important converter states right at the converter.

- Alarms and faults

  The converter signals alarms and faults via the fieldbus, the terminal strip (when appropriately set), on a connected operator panel or STARTER.
  Alarms and faults have a unique number.

If the converter no longer responds

Due to faulty parameter settings, e.g. by loading a defective file from the memory card, the converter can adopt the following condition:

Case 1

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the converter, either via the Operator Panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flicker and after 3 minutes the converter has still not powered up.

In this case, proceed as follows:

- Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the converter.
- Perform a power-on reset. Procedure for power on reset:
  - Switch off the converter power supply.
  - Wait until all LEDs on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again
- Repeat the power on reset as often as required until the converter outputs fault F01018:
- Now set p0971 = 1 and perform an additional power-on reset. The converter now powers up with the factory settings.
- Recommission the converter.

Case 2

- The motor is switched off.
- You cannot communicate with the converter, either via the Operator Panel or other interfaces.
- The LEDs flash and are dark - this process is continually repeated.

In this case, proceed as follows:

- Remove the memory card if one is inserted in the converter.
- Perform a power-on reset. Procedure for power on reset:
  - Switch off the converter power supply.
  - Wait until all LEDs on the converter go dark. Now switch on the converter power supply again
- Repeat the power on reset until the converter outputs fault F01018, whereby you must switch off the converter if the LED flashes orange.
- Now set p0971 = 1 and perform an additional power-on reset. The converter now powers up with the factory settings.
- Recommission the converter.

11.1 Operating states indicated on LEDs

The LED RDY (Ready) is temporarily orange after the power supply voltage is switched-on. As soon as the color of the LED RDY changes to either red or green, the LEDs signal the inverter state.

Signal states of the LED

In addition to the signal states "on" and "off" there are two different flashing frequencies:

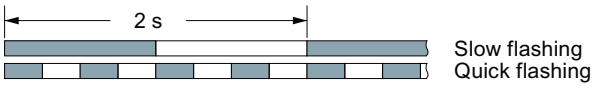


Table 11- 1 Inverter diagnostics

LED		Explanation
RDY	BF	
GREEN - on	---	There is presently no fault
GREEN - slow	---	Commissioning or reset to factory settings
RED - fast	---	There is presently a fault
RED - fast	RED - fast	Incorrect memory card

Table 11- 2 Inverter diagnostics

LNK LED	Explanation
GREEN - on	The communication via PROFINET is in order.
GREEN - slow	Device naming is active.
Off	No communication via PROFINET.

Table 11- 3 Communication diagnostics via RS485

LED BF	Explanation
On	Receive process data
RED - slow	Bus active - no process data
RED - fast	No bus activity

Table 11- 4 Communication diagnostics via PROFIBUS DP

LED BF	Explanation
off	Cyclic data exchange (or PROFIBUS not used, p2030 = 0)
RED - slow	Bus fault - configuration fault
RED - fast	Bus fault - no data exchange - baud rate search - no connection

LED BF display for CANopen

In addition to the signal states "on" and "off" there are three different flashing frequencies:

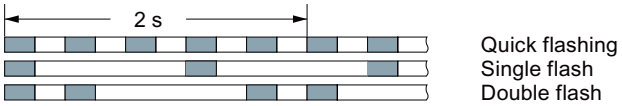


Table 11- 5 Communication diagnostics via CANopen

BF LED	Explanation
GREEN - on	Bus state "Operational"
GREEN - fast	Bus state "Pre-Operational"
GREEN - single flash	Bus state "Stopped"
RED - on	No bus
RED - single flash	Alarm - limit reached
RED - double flash	Error event in control (Error Control Event)

11.2 Alarms

Alarms have the following properties:

- They do not have a direct effect in the inverter and disappear once the cause has been removed
- They do not need have to be acknowledged
- They are signaled as follows
  - Status display via bit 7 in status word 1 (r0052)
  - at the Operator Panel with a Axxxxx
  - via STARTER, if you click on TAB at the bottom left of the STARTER screen

In order to pinpoint the cause of an alarm, there is a unique alarm code and also a value for each alarm.

Alarm buffer

For each incoming alarm, the inverter saves the alarm, alarm value and the time that the alarm was received.

	Alarm code	Alarm value		Alarm time received		Alarm time removed	
1. Alarm	r2122[0]	r2124[0]	r2134[0]	r2145[0]	r2123[0]	r2146[0]	r2125[0]
		I32	Float	Days	ms	Days	ms

Figure 11-1 Saving the first alarm in the alarm buffer

r2124 and r2134 contain the alarm value - important for diagnostics - as "fixed point" or "floating point" number.

The alarm times are displayed in r2145 and r2146 (in complete days) as well as in r2123 and r2125 (in milliseconds referred to the day of the alarm).
The inverter uses an internal time calculation to save the alarm times. More information on the internal time calculation can be found in Chapter Real time clock (RTC) (Page 254).

As soon as the alarm has been removed, the inverter writes the associated instant in time into parameters r2125 and r2146. The alarm remains in the alarm buffer even if the alarm has been removed.

If an additional alarm is received, then this is also saved. The first alarm is still saved. The alarms that have occurred are counted in p2111.

	Alarm code	Alarm value		Alarm time received		Alarm time removed	
1. Alarm	r2122[0]	r2124[0]	r2134[0]	r2145[0]	r2123[0]	r2146[0]	r2125[0]
2. Alarm	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]

Figure 11-2 Saving the second alarm in the alarm buffer

The alarm buffer can contain up to eight alarms. If an additional alarm is received after the eighth alarm - and none of the last eight alarms have been removed - then the next to last alarm is overwritten.

	Alarm code	Alarm value		Alarm time received		Alarm time removed	
1. Alarm	r2122[0]	r2124[0]	r2134[0]	r2145[0]	r2123[0]	r2146[0]	r2125[0]
2. Alarm	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]
3. Alarm	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]
4. Alarm	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]
5. Alarm	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]
6. Alarm	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]
7. Alarm	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]
Last alarm	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]

Figure 11-3 Complete alarm buffer

Emptying the alarm buffer: Alarm history

The alarm history traces up to 56 alarms.

The alarm history only takes alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer. If the alarm buffer is completely filled - and an additional alarm occurs - then the inverter shifts all alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer into the alarm history. In the alarm history, alarms are also sorted according to the "alarm time received", however, when compared to the alarm buffer, in the inverse sequence:

- the youngest alarm is in index 8
- the second youngest alarm is in index 9
- etc.

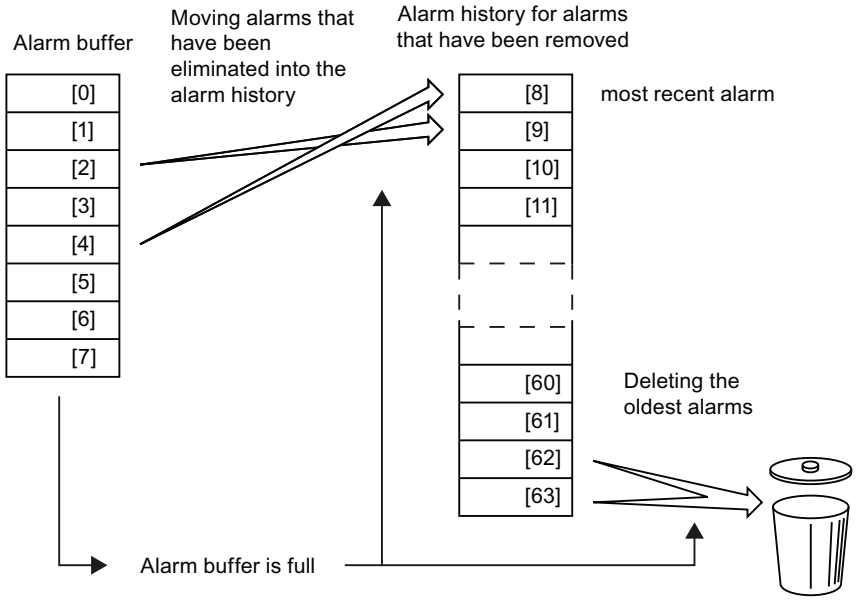


Figure 11-4 Shifting alarms that have been removed into the alarm history

The alarms that have still not been removed remain in the alarm buffer and are resorted so that gaps between the alarms are filled.

If the alarm history is filled up to index 63, each time a new alarm is accepted in the alarm history, the oldest alarm is deleted.

Parameters of the alarm buffer and the alarm history

Table 11- 6 Important parameters for alarms

Parameter	Description
r2122	**Alarm code** Displays the numbers of alarms that have occurred
r2123	**Alarm time received in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the alarm occurred
r2124	**Alarm value** Displays additional information about the alarm
r2125	**Alarm time removed in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the alarm was removed
p2111	**Alarm counter** Number of alarms that have occurred after the last reset When setting p2111 = 0, all of the alarms that have been removed from the alarm buffer [0...7] are transferred into the alarm history [8...63]
r2145	**Alarm time received in days** Displays the time in days when the alarm occurred
r2132	**Actual alarm code** Displays the code of the alarm that last occurred
r2134	**Alarm value for float values** Displays additional information about the alarm that occurred for float values
r2146	**Alarm time removed in days** Displays the time in days when the alarm was removed

Extended settings for alarms

Table 11- 7 Extended settings for alarms

Parameter	Description
You can change up to 20 different alarms into a fault or suppress alarms:	
p2118	**Setting the message number for the message type** Select the alarms for which the message type should be changed
p2119	**Setting the message type** Setting the message type for the selected alarm 1: Fault 2: Alarm 3: No message

You will find details in function block diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

11.3 Faults

A fault displays a severe fault during operation of the inverter.

The inverter signals a fault as follows:

- at the Operator Panel with Fxxxxx
- on the converter using the red LED RDY
- in bit 3 of the status word 1 (r0052)
- via STARTER

To delete a fault message, you need to remedy the cause of the fault and acknowledge the fault.

Every fault has a clear fault code and also a fault value. You need this information to determine the cause of the fault.

Fault buffer of actual values

For each fault received, the inverter saves the fault code, fault value and the time of the fault.

	Fault code	Fault value		Fault time received		Fault time removed	
1st fault	r0945[0]	r0949[0]	r2133[0]	r2130[0]	r0948[0]	r2136[0]	r2109[0]
		I32	Float	Days	ms	Days	ms

Figure 11-5 Saving the first fault in the fault buffer

r0949 and r2133 contain the fault value - important for diagnostics - as "fixed point" or "floating point" number.

The "fault time received" is in parameter r2130 (in complete days) as well as in parameter r0948 (in milliseconds referred to the day of the fault). The "fault time removed" is written into parameters r2109 and r2136 when the fault has been acknowledged.
The inverter uses its internal time calculation to save the fault times. More information on the internal time calculation can be found in Chapter Real time clock (RTC) (Page 254).

If an additional fault occurs before the first fault has been acknowledged, then this is also saved. The first alarm remains saved. The fault cases that have occurred are counted in p0952. A fault case can contain one or several faults.

	Fault code	Fault value		Fault time received		Fault time removed	
1st fault	r0945[0]	r0949[0]	r2133[0]	r2130[0]	r0948[0]	r2136[0]	r2109[0]
2nd fault	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]

Figure 11-6 Saving the second fault in the fault buffer

The fault buffer can accept up to eight actual faults. The next to last fault is overwritten if an additional fault occurs after the eighth fault.

	Fault code	Fault value		Fault time received		Fault time removed	
1st fault	r0945[0]	r0949[0]	r2133[0]	r2130[0]	r0948[0]	r2136[0]	r2109[0]
2nd fault	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]	[1]
3rd fault	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]
4th fault	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]	[3]
5th fault	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]	[4]
6th fault	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]
7th fault	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]	[6]
Last fault	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]	[7]

Figure 11-7 Complete fault buffer

Fault acknowledgement

In most cases, you have the following options to acknowledge a fault:

- Switch-off the inverter power supply and switch-on again.
- Press the acknowledgement button on the operator panel
- Acknowledgement signal at digital input 2
- Acknowledgement signal in bit 7 of control word 1 (r0054) for Control Units with fieldbus interface

Faults that are triggered by internal converter hardware and firmware monitoring functions can only be acknowledged by switching off and on again. You will find a note about this restricted option to acknowledge faults in the fault list of the List Manual.

Emptying the fault buffer: Fault history

The fault history can contain up to 56 faults.

The fault acknowledgement has no effect as long as none of the fault causes of the fault buffer have been removed. If at least one of the faults in the fault buffer has been removed (the cause of the fault has been removed) and you acknowledge the faults, then the following happens:

1. The inverter accepts all faults from the fault buffer in the first eight memory locations of the fault history (indices 8 ... 15).
2. The inverter deletes the faults that have been removed from the fault buffer.
3. The inverter writes the time of acknowledgement of the faults that have been removed into parameters r2136 and r2109 (fault time removed).

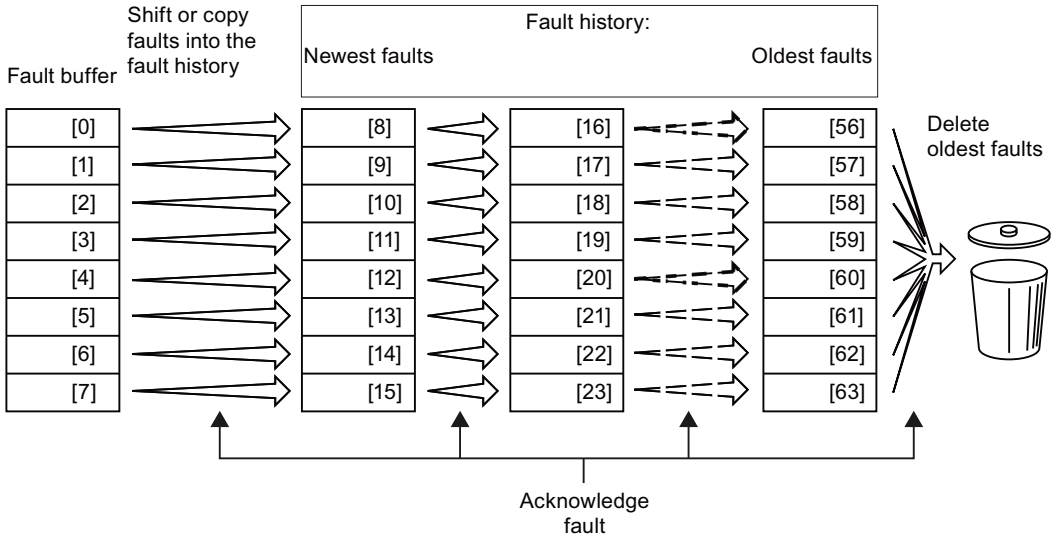


Figure 11-8 Fault history after acknowledging the faults

After acknowledgement, the faults that have not been removed are located in the fault buffer as well as in the fault history. For these faults, the "fault time coming" remains unchanged and the "fault time removed" remains empty.

If less than eight faults were shifted or copied into the fault history, the memory locations with the higher indices remain empty.

The inverters shifts the values previously saved in the fault history each by eight indices. Faults, which were saved in indices 56 … 63 before the acknowledgement, are deleted.

Deleting the fault history

If you wish to delete all faults from the fault history, set parameter p0952 to zero.

Parameters of the fault buffer and the fault history

Table 11- 8 Important parameters for faults

Parameter	Description
r0945	**Fault code** Displays the numbers of faults that have occurred
r0948	**Fault time received in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the fault occurred
r0949	**Fault value** Displays additional information about the fault
p0952	**Fault cases, counter** Number of fault cases that have occurred since the last acknowledgement The fault buffer is deleted with p0952 = 0.
r2109	**Fault time removed in milliseconds** Displays the time in milliseconds when the fault occurred
r2130	**Fault time received in days** Displays the time in days when the fault occurred
r2131	**Actual fault code** Displays the code of the oldest fault that is still active
r2133	**Fault value for float values** Displays additional information about the fault that occurred for float values
r2136	**Fault time removed in days** Displays the time in days when the fault was removed

The motor cannot be switched-on

If the motor cannot be switched-on, then check the following:

- Is a fault present?
  If yes, then remove the fault cause and acknowledge the fault.
- Does p0010 = 0?
  If not, the inverter is e.g. still in a commissioning state.
- Is the inverter reporting the "ready to start" status (r0052.0 = 1)?
- Is the inverter missing enabling (r0046)?
- Are the interfaces of the converter (p0015) correctly parameterized?
  In other words, how is the converter receiving its setpoint and its commands?

Extended settings for faults

Table 11- 9 Advanced settings

Parameter	Description
You can change the fault response of the motor for up to 20 different fault codes:	
p2100	**Setting the fault number for fault response** Selecting the faults for which the fault response should be changed
p2101	**Setting, fault response** Setting the fault response for the selected fault
You can change the acknowledgement type for up to 20 different fault codes:	
p2126	**Setting the fault number for the acknowledgement mode** Selecting the faults for which the acknowledgement type should be changed
p2127	**Setting, acknowledgement mode** Setting the acknowledgement type for the selected fault 1: Can only be acknowledged using POWER ON 2: IMMEDIATE acknowledgment after removing the fault cause
You can change up to 20 different faults into an alarm or suppress faults:	
p2118	**Setting the message number for the message type** Selecting the message for which the message type should be selected
p2119	**Setting the message type** Setting the message type for the selected fault 1: Fault 2: Alarm 3: No message

You will find details in function diagram 8075 and in the parameter description of the List Manual.

11.4 List of alarms and faults

Axxxxx Alarm

Fyyyyy: Fault

Table 11- 10 Faults, which can only be acknowledged by switching the inverter off and on again (power on reset)

Number	Cause	Remedy
F01000	Software fault in CU	Replace CU.
F01001	Floating Point Exception	Switch CU off and on again.
F01015	Software fault in CU	Upgrade firmware or contact technical support.
F01018	Power-up aborted more than once	After this fault has been output, the module is booted with the factory settings. Remedy: Back up factory setting with p0971=1. Switch CU off and on again. Recommission the inverter.
F01040	Parameters must be saved	Save parameters (p0971). Switch CU off and on again.
F01044	Loading of memory data card defective	Replace memory card or CU.
F01105	CU: Insufficient memory	Reduce number of data records.
F01205	CU: Time slice overflow	Contact technical support.
F01250	CU hardware fault	Replace CU.
F01512	An attempt has been made to establish an conversion factor for scaling which is not present	Create scaling or check transfer value.
F01662	CU hardware fault	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30022	Power Module: Monitoring U_{CE}	Check or replace the Power Module.
F30052	Incorrect Power Module data	Replace Power Module or upgrade CU firmware.
F30053	Error in FPGA data	Replace the Power Module.
F30662	CU hardware fault	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30664	CU power up aborted	Switch CU off and on again, upgrade firmware, or contact technical support.
F30850	Software fault in Power Module	Replace Power Module or contact technical support.

Table 11- 11 The most important alarms and faults

Number	Cause	Remedy
F01018	Power-up aborted more than once	1. Switch the module off and on again. 2. After this fault has been output, the module is booted with the factory settings. 3. Recommission the converter.
A01028	Configuration error	Explanation: Parameterization on the memory card has been created with a different type of module (order number, MLFB) Check the module parameters and recommission if necessary.
F01033	Unit switchover: Reference parameter value invalid	Set the value of the reference parameter not equal to 0.0 (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01034	Unit switchover: Calculation of the parameter values after reference value change unsuccessful	Select the value of the reference parameter so that the parameters involved can be calculated in the per unit notation (p0304, p0305, p0310, p0596, p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, r2004).
F01122	Frequency at the probe input too high	Reduce the frequency of the pulses at the probe input.
A01590	Motor maintenance interval lapsed	Carry out maintenance and reset the maintenance interval (p0651).
A01900	PROFIBUS: Configuration telegram faulty	Explanation: A PROFIBUS master is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram. Check the bus configuration on the master and slave side.
A01910 F01910	Setpoint timeout	The alarm is generated when p2040 ≠ 0 ms and one of the following causes is present: • The bus connection is interrupted • The MODBUS master is switched off • Communications error (CRC, parity bit, logical error) • An excessively low value for the fieldbus monitoring time (p2040)
A01920	PROFIBUS: Cyclic connection interrupt	Explanation: The cyclic connection to PROFIBUS master is interrupted. Establish the PROFIBUS connection and activate the PROFIBUS master with cyclic operation.
F03505	Analog input, wire break	Check the connection to the signal source for interrupts. Check the level of the signal supplied. The input current measured by the analog input can be read out in r0752.
A03520	Temperature sensor fault	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.
A05000 A05001 A05002 A05004 A05006	Power Module overtemperature	Check the following: - Is the ambient temperature within the defined limit values? - Are the load conditions and duty cycle configured accordingly? - Has the cooling failed?
F06310	Supply voltage (p0210) incorrectly parameterized	Check the parameterized supply voltage and if required change (p0210). Check the line voltage.

Number	Cause	Remedy
F07011	Motor overtemperature	Reduce the motor load. Check ambient temperature. Check the wiring and connection of the sensor.
A07012	I2t Motor Module overtemperature	Check and if necessary reduce the motor load. Check the motor's ambient temperature. Check thermal time constant p0611. Check overtemperature fault threshold p0605.
A07015	Motor temperature sensor alarm	Check that the sensor is connected correctly. Check the parameter assignment (p0601).
F07016	Motor temperature sensor fault	Make sure that the sensor is connected correctly. Check the parameterization (p0601). Deactivate the temperature sensor fault (p0607 = 0).
F07086 F07088	Unit switchover: Parameter limit violation	Check the adapted parameter values and if required correct.
F07320	Automatic restart aborted	Increase the number of restart attempts (p1211). The actual number of start attempts is shown in r1214. Increase the wait time in p1212 and/or monitoring time in p1213. Connect an ON command (p0840). Increase the monitoring time of the power unit or switch off (p0857). Reduce the wait time for resetting the fault counter p1213[1] so that fewer faults are registered in the time interval.
A07321	Automatic restart active	Explanation: The automatic restart (AR) is active. During voltage recovery and/or when remedying the causes of pending faults, the drive is automatically switched back on.
F07330	Search current measured too low	Increase search current (p1202), check motor connection.
A07400	V_{DC_max} controller active	If it is not desirable that the controller intervenes: • Increase the ramp-down times. • Deactivate the V_{DC_max} controller (p1240 = 0 for vector control, p1280 = 0 for U/f control).
A07409	U/f control, current limiting controller active	The alarm automatically disappears after one of the following measures: • Increase the current limit (p0640). • Reduce the load. • Slow down the up ramp for the setpoint speed.
F07426	Technology controller actual value limited	• Adapt the limits to the signal level (p2267, p2268). • Check the actual value scaling (p2264).

Number	Cause	Remedy
F07801	Motor overcurrent	Check current limits (p0640). Vector control: Check current controller (p1715, p1717). U/f control: Check the current limiting controller (p1340 … p1346). Increase acceleration ramp (p1120) or reduce load. Check motor and motor cables for short circuit and ground fault. Check motor for star-delta connection and rating plate parameterization. Check power unit / motor combination. Select flying restart function (p1200) if switched to rotating motor.
A07805	Drive: Power unit overload I2t	• Reduce the continuous load. • Adapt the load cycle. • Check the assignment of rated currents of the motor and power unit.
F07806	Regenerative power limit exceeded	Increase deceleration ramp. Reduce driving load. Use power unit with higher energy recovery capability. For vector control, the regenerative power limit in p1531 can be reduced until the fault is no longer activated.
F07807	Short circuit detected	• Check the converter connection on the motor side for any phase-phase short-circuit. • Rule out that line and motor cables have been interchanged.
A07850 A07851 A07852	External alarm 1 … 3	The signal for "external alarm 1" has been triggered. Parameters p2112, p2116 and p2117 determine the signal sources for the external alarm 1… 3. Remedy: Remove the causes of these alarms.
F07860 F07861 F07862	External fault 1 … 3	Remove the external causes for this fault.
F07900	Motor blocked	Check that the motor can run freely. Check the torque limits (r1538 and r1539). Check the parameters of the "Motor blocked" message (p2175, p2177).
F07901	Motor overspeed	Activate precontrol of the speed limiting controller (p1401 bit 7 = 1). Increase hysteresis for overspeed signal p2162.
F07902	Motor stalled	Check whether the motor data has been parameterized correctly and perform motor identification. Check the current limits (p0640, r0067, r0289). If the current limits are too low, the drive cannot be magnetized. Check whether motor cables are disconnected during operation.
A07903	Motor speed deviation	Increase p2163 and/or p2166. Increase the torque, current and power limits.

Number	Cause	Remedy
A07910	Motor overtemperature	Check the motor load. Check the motor's ambient temperature. Check the KTY84 sensor. Check the overtemperatures of the thermal model (p0626 ... p0628).
A07920	Torque/speed too low	The torque deviates from the torque/speed envelope curve. • Check the connection between the motor and the load. • Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
A07921	Torque/speed too high	
A07922	Torque/speed out of tolerance	
F07923	Torque/speed too low	• Check the connection between the motor and the load. • Adapt the parameterization corresponding to the load.
F07924	Torque/speed too high	
A07927	DC braking active	Not required
A07980	Rotary measurement activated	Not required
A07981	No enabling for rotary measurement	Acknowledge pending faults. Establish missing enables (see r00002, r0046).
A07991	Motor data identification activated	Switch on the motor and identify the motor data.
F08501	Setpoint timeout	• Check the PROFINET connection. • Set the controller into the RUN mode. • If the error occurs repeatedly, check the monitoring time set (p2044).
F08502	Monitoring time, sign-of-life expired	• Check the PROFINET connection.
F08510	Send configuration data not valid	• Check the PROFINET configuration
A08511	Receive configuration data not valid	
A08526	No cyclic connection	• Activate the controller with cyclic operation. • Check the parameters "Name of Station" and "IP of Station" (r61000, r61001).
A08565	Consistency error affecting adjustable parameters	Check the following: • IP address, subnet mask or default gateway is not correct. • IP address or station name used twice in the network. • Station name contains invalid characters.
F08700	Communications error	A CAN communications error has occurred. Check the following: • Bus cable • Baud rate (p8622) • Bit timing (p8623) • Master Start the CAN controller manually with p8608 = 1 after the cause of the fault has been resolved!

Number	Cause	Remedy
F13100	Know-how protection: Copy protection error	The know-how protection and the copy protection for the memory card are active. An error occurred when checking the memory card. • Insert a suitable memory card and switch the converter supply voltage temporarily off and then on again (POWER ON). • Deactivate the copy protection (p7765).
F13101	Know-how protection: Copy protection cannot be activated	Insert a valid memory card.
F30001	Overcurrent	Check the following: • Motor data, if required, carry out commissioning • Motor connection method (Y / Δ) • U/f operation: Assignment of rated currents of motor and Power Module • Line quality • Make sure that the line commutating reactor is connected properly • Power cable connections • Power cables for short-circuit or ground fault • Power cable length • Line phases If this doesn't help: • U/f operation: Increase the acceleration ramp • Reduce the load • Replace the power unit
F30002	DC-link voltage overvoltage	Increase the ramp-down time (p1121). Set the rounding times (p1130, p1136). Activate the DC link voltage controller (p1240, p1280). Check the line voltage (p0210). Check the line phases.
F30003	DC-link voltage undervoltage	Check the line voltage (p0210).
F30004	Converter overtemperature	Check whether the converter fan is running. Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range. Check whether the motor is overloaded. Reduce the pulse frequency.
F30005	I2t converter overload	Check the rated currents of the motor and Power Module. Reduce current limit p0640. When operating with U/f characteristic: Reduce p1341.
F30011	Line phase failure	Check the converter's input fuses. Check the motor cables.
F30015	Motor cable phase failure	Check the motor cables. Increase the ramp-up or ramp-down time (p1120).

Number	Cause	Remedy
F30021	Ground fault	• Check the power cable connections. • Check the motor. • Check the current transformer. • Check the cables and contacts of the brake connection (a wire might be broken).
F30027	Time monitoring for DC link pre-charging	Check the supply voltage at the input terminals. Check the line voltage setting (p0210).
F30035	Overtemperature, intake air	• Check whether the fan is running. • Check the fan filter elements. • Check whether the ambient temperature is in the permissible range.
F30036	Overtemperature, inside area	
F30037	Rectifier overtemperature	See F30035 and, in addition: • Check the motor load. • Check the line phases
A30049	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.
F30059	Internal fan defective	Check the internal fan and if required replace.
A30502	DC link overvoltage	• Check the unit supply voltage (p0210). • Check the dimensioning of the line reactor.
A30920	Temperature sensor fault	Check that the sensor is connected correctly.
A50001	PROFINET configuration error	A PROFINET controller is attempting to establish a connection with a faulty configuration telegram. Check to see whether "Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2).
A50010	PROFINET name of station invalid	Correct name of station (p8920) and activate (p8925 = 2).
A50020	PROFINET: Second controller missing	"Shared Device" is activated (p8929 = 2). However, only the connection to a PROFINET controller is present.

For further information, please refer to the List Manual.

Technical data

12

12.1 Technical data for CU230P-2

Table 12- 1 General technical data of the CU230P-2

Feature	Data / explanation	
Order numbers	6SL3243-0BB30-1CA2	With CANopen interface
	6SL3243-0BB30-1HA2	With RS485 interface for the following protocols: • USS • Modbus RTU • BacNet MS/TP
	6SL3243-0BB30-1PA2	With PROFIBUSinterface.
	6SL3243-0BB30-1FA0	With PROFINETinterface.
Operating voltage	• Supply from the Power Module • or externally via terminals 31 and 32 with 24 VDC, a maximum of 200VA Use a power supply with PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage according to EN 61800-5-1): The 0 V of the power supply must be connected to the PE of the system through a low ohmic connection. Example: SITOP Power power supply unit 5 A.	
Power loss	5.0 W	
Output voltages	+24V out (terminal 9),18V … 28.8V, 100mA max.	
	+10V out (terminals 1 and 35), 9.5V … 10.5V, 10mA max.	
Setpoint resolution	0.01 Hz	
Digital inputs	6 (DI 0 … DI 5)	• Low < 5V, high > 11V • electrically isolated • 30V maximum input voltage • 5.5mA current drain • SIMATIC-compatible • PNP/NPN switchable • 10 ms response time for debounce time p0724 = 0.

Feature	Data / explanation	
Analog inputs	4 (AI 0 … AI 3)	• Differential inputs • Switchable: – 0V … 10V, 0mA … 20mA or -10V … +10V – Temperature • 12 bit resolution • 13ms response time • If AI 0 and AI 1 are configured as supplementary digital inputs: Low < 1.6V, high > 4.0V, 13ms ± 1ms response time for a debounce time p0724 = 0.
Digital outputs / relay outputs	3 (DO 0 … DO 2)	• DO 0, DO 2: 30 VDC 5A / 230 VAC, 2A • DO 1: 30 VDC 0.5A • Update time: 2ms
Analog outputs	2 (AO 0 … AO 1)	• 0V … 10V or 0mA … 20mA • Reference potential: "GND" • 16 bit resolution • 4ms update time
Motor temperature sensor	PTC	• Short-circuit monitoring < 20Ω • Overtemperature 1650Ω
	KTY84	• Short-circuit monitoring < 50Ω • Wire break: > 2120Ω
	Temperature switch with isolated contact	
USB interface	Mini-B	
Dimensions (WxHxD)	73mm × 199mm × 50mm	Depth when mounting on the Power Module
Memory card (optional)	MMC	Recommendation: 6SL3254-0AM00-0AA0
	SD	Recommendation: 6SL3254-0AM00-0AA0 SDHC are not possible (SD High Capacity).
Weight	0.61kg	
Operating temperature	0°C … 60°C	For operation without inserted operator panel.
	0°C … 50°C	For operation with inserted operator panel.
	Observe any possible restrictions regarding the operating temperature as a result of the Power Module.	
Storage temperature	- 40°C … 70°C	
Relative humidity	< 95 %	Condensation is not permissible.

12.2 Technical data, Power Modules

Permissible converter overload

There are two different power data specifications for the Power Modules: "**Low Overload**" (LO) and "**High Overload**" (HO), depending on the expected load.

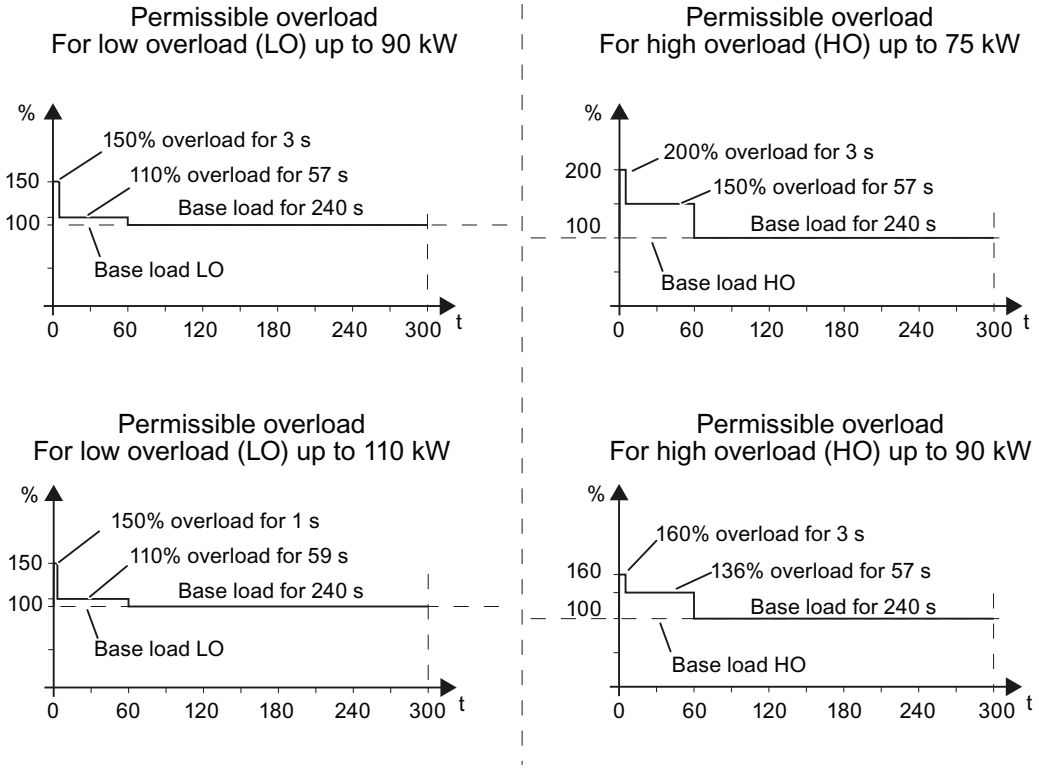


Figure 12-1 Duty cycles, "High Overload" and "Low Overload"

Note

The base load (100% power or current) of "Low Overload" is greater than the base load of "High Overload".

We recommend the "SIZER" engineering software to select the inverter based on duty cycles. See Manuals for your inverter (Page 382).

Definitions

- **LO input current** 100 % of the permissible input current for a load cycle according to Low Overload (LO base load input current).
- **LO output current** 100 % of the permissible output current for a load cycle according to Low Overload (LO base load output current).
- **LO power** Power of the inverter for LO output current.
- **HO input current** 100 % of the permissible input current for a load cycle according to High Overload (HO base load input current).
- **HO output current** 100 % of the permissible output current for a load cycle according to High Overload (HO base load output current).
- **HO power** Power of the inverter for HO output current.

If the power data comprise rated values without any further specifications they always refer to an overload capability corresponding to Low Overload.

12.2.1 Technical data, PM230 IP20

12.2.1.1 General data, PM230 - IP20

Feature	Version
Line voltage	380 V ... 480 V 3-ph. AC ± 10%
Output voltage	0 V 3-ph. AC … input voltage x 0.95 (max.)
Input frequency	50 Hz … 60 Hz, ± 3 Hz
Output frequency	0 … 650 Hz, depending on the control mode
Power factor λ	0.9
Line impedance	Uk ≤ 1%, no line reactor permitted
Starting current	Less than the input current
Pulse frequency (factory setting)	4 kHz The pulse frequency can be increased in 2 kHz steps up to 16 kHz (up to 8 kHz for 55 kW and 75 kW). An increase in the pulse frequency results in a lower output current.
Electromagnetic compatibility	Devices with filters in compliance with EN 61800-3: 2004 are suitable for Category C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2.
Braking methods	DC braking
Degree of protection	IP20 built-in units — IP20 when mounted in a control cabinet PT devices — IP54 on the control cabinet wall
Operating temperature	LO without power reduction: 0° C … +40° C HO without power reduction: 0° C … +50° C LO/HO with power reduction: to 60° C For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual.
Storage temperature	-40° C … +70° C
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible
Dirt and contamination	Protected according to pollution degree 2 to EN 61800-5-1: 2007
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995
Installation altitude	without power reduction: up to 1000 m above sea level with power reduction: up to 4000 m above sea level For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual
Permissible short-circuit current	Frame size D ... F: 65 kA [1]
Overvoltage category	Supply circuits: Overvoltage category III Non-supply circuits: Overvoltage category II
Standards	UL [1],[2], CE, C-tick The drive only satisfies the UL requirements when UL-certified fuses are used.

[1] If fuse-protected with a listed Class J or 3NE1 fuse, rated voltage 600 VAC with the rated current of the specific converter.

[2] UL available soon for frame sizes D … F

12.2.1.2 Power-dependent data, PM230, IP20

Note

For the Power Modules PM230, IP20, the low overload values (LO) are identical to the rated values.

Table 12- 2 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE11-3UL0**	**…1NE11-7UL0**	**…1NE12-2UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE11-3AL0**	**…1NE11-7AL0**	**…1NE12-2AL0**
LO power		0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
LO input current		1.3 A	1.8 A	2.3 A
LO Output current		1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
HO power		0.25 kW	0.37 kW	0.55 kW
HO input current		0.9 A	1.3 A	1.8 A
HO output current		0.9 A	1.3 A	1.7 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 813-0	3NE1 813-0	3NE1 813-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT2 / 3NE1 813-0	AJT4 / 3NE1 813-0	AJT4 / 3NE1 813-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.04 kW	0.04 kW	0.05 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.04 kW	0.04 kW	0.05 kW
Required cooling air flow		1.5 l/s	1.5 l/s	4.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.4 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg
Weight, filtered		1.6 kg	1.6 kg	1.6 kg

Table 12- 3 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE13-1UL0**	**…1NE14-1UL0**	**…-1NE15-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE13-1AL0**	**…1NE14-1AL0**	**…-1NE15-8AL0**
LO power		1.1 kW	1.5 kW	2.2 kW
LO input current		3.2 A	4.2 A	6.1 A
LO Output current		3.1 A	4.1 A	5.9 A
HO power		0.75 kW	1.1 kW	1.5 kW
HO input current		2.3 A	3.2 A	4.2 A
HO output current		2.2 A	3.1 A	4.1 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 813-0	3NE1 813-0	3NE1 813-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT6 / 3NE1 813-0	AJT6 / 3NE1 813-0	AJT10 / 3NE1 813-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.06 kW	0.07 kW	0.08 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.06 kW	0.07 kW	0.08 kW
Required cooling air flow		4.5 l/s	4.5 l/s	4.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1.5 … 2.5 mm^2 16 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.4 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg
Weight, filtered		1.6 kg	1.6 kg	1.6 kg

Table 12- 4 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE17-7UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE17-7AL0**
LO power		3 kW
LO input current		8.0 A
LO Output current		7.7 A
HO power		2.2 kW
HO input current		6.1 A
HO output current		5.9 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 813-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT10 / 3NE1 813-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.11 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.11 kW
Required cooling air flow		4.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 2.5 mm^2 16 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.4 kg
Weight, filtered		1.6 kg

Table 12- 5 PM230, PT, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE17-7UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE17-7AL0**
LO power		3 kW
LO input current		8.0 A
LO Output current		7.7 A
HO power		2.2 kW
HO input current		6.1 A
HO output current		5.9 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 813-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT10 / 3NE1 813-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.11 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.11 kW
Required cooling air flow		4.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 2.5 mm^2 16 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.7 kg
Weight, filtered		1.9 kg

Table 12- 6 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes B, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE21-0UL0**	**…1NE21-3UL0**	**…1NE21-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE21-0AL0**	**…1NE21-3AL0**	**…1NE21-8AL0**
LO power		4 kW	5.5 kW	7.5 kW
LO input current		10.5 A	13.6 A	18.6 A
LO Output current		10.2 A	13.2 A	18 A
HO power		3 kW	4 kW	5.5 kW
HO input current		8.0 A	10.5 A	13.6 A
HO output current		7.7 A	10.2 A	13.2 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 813-0	3NE1 814-0	3NE1 815-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT15 / 3NE1 813-0	AJT20 / 3NE1 814-0	AJT25 / 3NE1 815-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.12 kW	0.15 kW	0.22 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.12 kW	0.15 KW	0.24 KW
Required cooling air flow		9.2 l/s	9.2 l/s	9.2 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG	1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG	1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.6 Nm / 5 lbf in	0.6 Nm / 5 lbf in	0.6 Nm / 5 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		2.8 kg	2.8 kg	2.8 kg
Weight, filtered		3 kg	3 kg	3 kg

Table 12- 7 PM230, PT, Frame Sizes B, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE21-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE21-8AL0**
LO power		7.5 kW
LO input current		18.6 A
LO Output current		18 A
HO power		5.5 kW
HO input current		13.6 A
HO output current		13.2 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 815-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT25 / 3NE1 815-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.22 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.24 KW
Required cooling air flow		9.2 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.6 Nm / 5 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		3.4 kg
Weight, filtered		3.6 kg

Table 12- 8 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE22-6UL0**	**…1NE23-2UL0**	**…1NE23-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE22-6AL0**	**…1NE23-2AL0**	**…1NE23-8AL0**
LO power		11 kW	15 kW	18.5 kW
LO input current		26.9 A	33.1 A	39.2 A
LO Output current		26 A	32 A	38 A
HO power		7.5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
HO input current		18.6 A	26.9 A	33.1 A
HO output current		18 A	26 A	32 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 803-0	3NE1 817-0	3NE1 817-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT35 / 3NE1 803-0	AJT45 / 3NE1 817-0	AJT50 / 3NE1 817-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.3 kW	0.35 kW	0.45 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.3 kW	0.35 KW	0.45 KW
Required cooling air flow		18.5 l/s	18.5 l/s	18.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		6 …16 mm^2 10 … 6 AWG	6 …16 mm^2 10 … 6 AWG	6 …16 mm^2 10 … 6 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		1.3 Nm / 12 lbf in	1.3 Nm / 12 lbf in	1.3 Nm / 12 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		4.5 kg	4.5 kg	4.5 kg
Weight, filtered		5.1 kg	5.1 kg	5.1 kg

Table 12- 9 PM230, PT, Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE23-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3211…**	**…1NE23-8AL0**
LO power		18.5 kW
LO input current		39.2 A
LO Output current		38 A
HO power		15 kW
HO input current		33.1 A
HO output current		32 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1 817-0
Fuse according to UL		AJT50 / 3NE1 817-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.45 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.45 KW
Required cooling air flow		18.5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		6 …16 mm^2 10 … 6 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		1.3 Nm / 12 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		5.4 kg
Weight, filtered		6 kg

Table 12- 10 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE24-5UL0**	…**1NE26-0UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	…**1NE24-5AL0**	…**1NE26-0AL0**
LO power		22 kW	30 kW
LO input current		42 A	56 A
LO output current		45 A	60 A
HO power		18.5 kW	22 kW
HO input current		36 A	42 A
HO output current		38 A	45 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1818-0	3NE1820-0
Fuse according to UL		3NE1818-0	3NE1820-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.52 kW	0.68 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.52 kW	0.68 kW
Required cooling air flow		80 l/s	80 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		16 … 35 mm^2 5 … 2 AWG	16 … 35 mm^2 5 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		11 kg	11 kg
Weight, filtered		14 kg	14 kg

Table 12- 11 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes E, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	…**1NE27-5UL0**	**…1NE28-8UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	…**1NE27-5AL0**	**…1NE28-8AL0**
LO power		37 kW	45 kW
LO input current		70 A	84 A
LO output current		75 A	90 A
HO power		30 kW	37 kW
HO input current		56 A	70 A
HO output current		60 A	75 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1021-0	3NE1022-0
Fuse according to UL		3NE1021-0	3NE1022-0
Power losses, unfiltered		0.99 kW	1.2 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.99 kW	1.2 kW
Required cooling air flow		80 l/s	80 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		25 … 50 mm^2 3 … 1-1/0 AWG	25 … 50 mm^2 3 … 1-1/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		15 kg	15 kg
Weight, filtered		22 kg	22 kg

Table 12- 12 PM230, IP20, Frame Sizes F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE31-1UL0**	**…1NE31-5UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1NE31-1AL0**	**…1NE31-5AL0**
LO power		55 kW	75 kW
LO input current		102 A	135 A
LO output current		110 A	145 A
HO power		45 kW	55 kW
HO input current		84 A	102 A
HO output current		90 A	110 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NE1224-0	3NE1225-0
Fuse according to UL		3NE1224-0	3NE1225-0
Power losses, unfiltered		1.4 kW	2.0 kW
Power losses, filtered		1.4 kW	2.0 kW
Required cooling air flow		150 l/s	150 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		15 kg	34 kg
Weight, filtered		22 kg	46 kg

12.2.2 Technical data, PM230 - IP55

12.2.2.1 General data, PM230, IP55

Feature	Version
Line voltage	3 AC. 380V ... 480V ± 10%
Output voltage	3 AC 0V … input voltage x 0.95 (max.)
Input frequency	50Hz … 60Hz, ± 3Hz
Output frequency	0 … 650Hz, depending on the control mode
Power factor λ	0.9
Line impedance	Uk ≤ 1%, no line reactor permitted
Starting current	Less than the input current
Pulse frequency (factory setting)	4 kHz The pulse frequency can be increased in 2 kHz steps up to 16 kHz (up to 8 kHz for 75kW and 90kW). An increase in the pulse frequency results in a lower output current.
Electromagnetic compatibility	The devices comply with EN 61800-3: 2004 suitable for Category C1 and C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2
Braking methods	DC braking
Degree of protection	FSA … FSC IP55 / UL Type 12 FSD … FSF IP55 / UL Type 12 in preparation Note: For the end cover plate, you must use the relevant bolting plates for the cable glands and the corresponding cable glands and seals to achieve the degree of protection UP55 (UL type 12). Degree of protection IP54 / UL Type 12 is reached if an IOP is inserted.
Operating temperature	without power reduction: 0°C … +40°C — For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual with power reduction: to 60°C
Storage temperature	-40°C … +70°C
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible
Contamination	Protected from contact with dangerous parts, dust, spray water and water jets
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995
Installation altitude	without power reduction: up to 1000m above sea level — For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual with power reduction: up to 4000m above sea level
Permissible short-circuit current	Frame size A ... C: 40kA [1] Frame sizes D ... F: 65kA [1]
Standards	UL [2], CE, C-tick The drive only satisfies the UL requirements when UL-certified fuses are used.

[1] If fuse-protected with a listed Class J fuse, rated voltage 600 VAC with the rated current of the specific converter.

[2] UL available soon for frame sizes D … F

12.2.2.2 Power dependent data, PM230, IP55

Table 12- 13 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A **6SL3223-…** **Order No. - Filtered, Class B** **6SL3223-…**	**…0DE13-7AA0** **…0DE13-7BA0**	**…0DE15-5AA0** **…0DE15-5BA0**	**…0DE17-5AA0** **…0DE17-5BA0**
Rated / LO power Rated / LO input current Rated / LO Output current	0.37 kW 1.3 A 1.3 A	0.55 kW 1.8 A 1.7 A	0.75 kW 2.3 A 2.2 A
HO power HO input current HO output current	0.25 kW 0.9 A 0.9 A	0.37 kW 1.3 A 1.3 A	0.55 kW 1.8 A 1.7 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL	3NA3803 10 A, class J	3NA3803 10 A, class J	3NA3803 10 A, class J
Power losses	0.06 kW	0.06 kW	0.06 kW
Required cooling air flow	7 l/s	7 l/s	7 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in
Weight	4.3 kg	4.3 kg	4.3 kg

Table 12- 14 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A **6SL3223-…** **Order No. - Filtered, Class B** **6SL3223-…**	**…0DE21-1AA0** **…0DE21-1BA0**	**…0DE21-5AA0** **…0DE21-5BA0**	**…0DE22-2AA0** **…0DE22-2BA0**
Rated / LO power Rated / LO input current Rated / LO Output current	1.1 kW 3.2 A 3.1 A	1.5 kW 4.2 A 4.1 A	2.2 kW 6.1 A 5.9 A
HO power HO input current HO output current	0.75 kW 2.3 A 2.2 A	1.1 kW 3.2 A 3.1 A	1.5 kW 4.2 A 4.1 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL	3NA3803 10 A, class J	3NA3803 10 A, class J	3NA3803 10 A, class J
Power losses	0.07 kW	0.08 kW	0.1 kW
Required cooling air flow	7 l/s	7 l/s	7 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in
Weight	4.3 kg	4.3 kg	4.3 kg

Table 12- 15 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE23-0AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE23-0BA0**
Rated / Low Overlaod values		
Rated / LO power		3 kW
Rated / LO input current		8,0 A
Rated / LO Output current		7,7 A
High Overload values		
HO power		2,2 kW
HO input current		6,1 A
HO output current		5,9 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3803
Fuse according to UL		10 A, class J
Power losses		0.12 kW
Required cooling air flow		7 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in
Weight		4.3 kg

Table 12- 16 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes B, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE24-0AA0**	**…0DE25-5AA0**	**…0DE27-5AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE24-0BA0**	**…0DE25-5BA0**	**…0DE27-5BA0**
Rated / LO power		4 kW	5.5 kW	7.5 kW
Rated / LO input current		10.5 A	13.6 A	18.6 A
Rated / LO Output current		10.2 A	13.2 A	18 A
HO power		3 kW	4 kW	5.5 kW
HO input current		8.0 A	10.5 A	13.6 A
HO output current		7.7 A	10.2 A	13.2 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3805	3NA3807	3NA3810
Fuse according to UL		16 A, class J	25 A, class J	35 A, class J
Power losses		0.14 kW	0.18 kW	0.24 kW
Required cooling air flow		9 l/s	9 l/s	9 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		2.5 … 6 mm^2 14 … 10 AWG	4 … 6 mm^2 12 … 10 AWG	4 … 6 mm^2 12 … 10 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4.4 lbf in
Weight		6.3 kg	6.3 kg	6.3 kg

Table 12- 17 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE31-1AA0**	**…0DE31-5AA0**	**…0DE31-8AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE31-1BA0**	**…0DE31-5BA0**	**-**
Rated / Low Overlaod values				
Rated / LO power		11 kW	15 kW	18.5 kW
Rated / LO input current		26,9 A	33,1 A	39,2 A
Rated / LO Output current		26 A	32 A	38 A
High Overload values				
HO power		7,5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
HO input current		18,6 A	26,9 A	33,1 A
HO output current		18 A	26 A	32 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3814	3NA3820	3NA3820
Fuse according to UL		40 A, class J	50 A, class J	50 A, class J
Power losses		0.32 kW	0.39 kW	0.46 kW
Required cooling air flow		20 l/s	20 l/s	20 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		6 … 16 mm^2 10 … 5 AWG	10 … 16 mm^2 7 … 5 AWG	10 … 16 mm^2 7 … 5 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in	1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in	1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in
Weight		9,5 kg	9,5 kg	9,5 kg

Table 12- 18 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**-**	**…0DE32-2AA0**	**…0DE33-0AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE31-8BA0**	**…0DE32-2BA0**	**…0DE33-0BA0**
Rated / LO power		18.5 kW	22 kW	30 kW
Rated / LO input current		39.2 A	42 A	56 A
Rated / LO Output current		38 A	45 A	60 A
HO power		15 kW	18.5 kW	22 kW
HO input current		33.1 A	36 A	42 A
HO output current		32 A	38 A	45 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3820	3NA3822	3NA3824
Fuse according to UL		50 A, class J	63 A, class J	80 A, class J
Power losses		0.46 kW	0.52 kW	0.68 kW
Required cooling air flow		20 l/s	39 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		10 … 35 mm^2 7 … 2 AWG	16 … 35 mm^2 5 … 2 AWG	16 … 35 mm^2 5 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight		30.2 kg	30.2 kg	30.2 kg

Table 12- 19 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes E, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE33-7AA0**	**…0DE34-5AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE33-7BA0**	**…0DE34-5BA0**
Rated / LO power		37 kW	45 kW
Rated / LO input current		70 A	84 A
Rated / LO Output current		75 A	90 A
HO power		30 kW	37 kW
HO input current		56 A	70 A
HO output current		60 A	75 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3830	3NA3832
Fuse according to UL		100 A, class J	125 A, class J
Power losses		0.99 kW	1.2 kW
Required cooling air flow		39 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		25 … 50 mm^2 3 … 1 AWG	25 … 50 mm^2 3 … 1 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight		35.8 kg	35.8 kg

Table 12- 20 PM230, IP55, Frame Sizes F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered, Class A	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE35-5AA0**	**…0DE37-5AA0**	**…0DE38-8AA0**
Order No. - Filtered, Class B	**6SL3223-…**	**…0DE35-5BA0**	**…0DE37-5BA0**	**…0DE38-8BA0**
Rated / LO power		55 kW	75 kW	90 kW
Rated / LO input current		102 A	135 A	166 A
Rated / LO Output current		110 A	145 A	178 A
HO power		45 kW	55 kW	75 kW
HO input current		84 A	102 A	135 A
HO output current		90 A	110 A	145 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3836	3NA3140	3NA3144
Fuse according to UL		160 A, class J	200 A, class J	250 A, class J
Power losses		1.4 kW	1.9 kW	2.3 kW
Required cooling air flow		117 l/s	117 l/s	117 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in
Weight		70.0 kg	70.0 kg	70.0 kg

12.2.3 Technical data, PM240

12.2.3.1 General data, PM240

Feature	Version			
Line voltage	380 V ... 480 V 3-ph. AC ± 10%			
Output voltage	0 V 3-ph. AC … input voltage x 0.95 (max.)			
Input frequency	50 Hz … 60 Hz, ± 3 Hz			
Output frequency	0 … 650 Hz, depending on the control mode			
Power factor λ	0.7 ... 0.85			
Starting current	Less than the input current			
Pulse frequency (factory setting)	4 kHz for 0.37 kW ... 90 kW 2 kHz for 110 kW ... 250 kW The pulse frequency can be increased in 2 kHz steps. An increase in the pulse frequency results in a lower output current.			
Electromagnetic compatibility	The devices in compliance with EN 61800-3: 2004 are suitable for Category C1 and C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2			
Braking methods	DC braking, compound braking, dynamic braking with integrated braking chopper			
Degree of protection	IP20 chassis units			
Operating temperature	LO without power reduction: HO without power reduction: HO without power reduction: LO/HO with power reduction:	all power ratings 0.37 ... 110 kW 132 … 200 kW all power ratings	0° C … +40° C 0° C … +50° C 0° C … +40° C up to 60° C	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual.
Storage temperature	-40° C … +70° C			
Dirt and contamination	Protected according to pollution degree 2 to EN 61800-5-1: 2007			
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible			
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995			
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995			
Installation altitude	without power reduction: with power reduction:	0.37 kW ... 132 kW 160 kW ... 250 kW all power ratings	up to 1000 m above sea level up to 2000 m above sea level up to 4000 m above sea level	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual
Standards	UL, cUL, CE, C-tick, SEMI F47 The drive only satisfies the UL requirements when UL-certified fuses are used.			

12.2.3.2 Power-dependent data, PM240

Note

The given input currents are valid for operation without a line reactor for a line voltage of 400 V with Vk = 1 % referred to the rated power of the inverter. If a line reactor is used, the specified values are reduced by a few percent.

Table 12- 21 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	6SL3224-…	…0BE13-7UA0	…0BE15-5UA0	…0BE17-5UA0
Rated / LO power		0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
Rated / LO input current		1.6 A	2.0 A	2.5 A
Rated / LO Output current		1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
HO power		0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
HO input current		1.6 A	2.0 A	2.5 A
HO output current		1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
Fuse		10 A, class J	10 A, class J	10 A, class J
Power losses		0.097 kW	0.099 kW	0.102 kW
Required cooling air flow		4.8 l/s	4.8 l/s	4.8 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight		1.2 kg	1.2 kg	1.2 kg

Table 12- 22 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	6SL3224-…	…0BE21-1UA0	…0BE21-5UA0
Rated / LO power		1.1 kW	1.5 kW
Rated / LO input current		3.9 A	4.9 A
Rated / LO Output current		3.1 A	4.1 A
HO power		1,1 kW	1,5kW
HO input current		3.8 A	4.8 A
HO output current		3.1 A	4.1 A
Fuse		10 A, class J	10 A, class J
Power losses		0.108 kW	0.114 kW
Required cooling air flow		4.8 l/s	4.8 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight		1.1 kg	1.1 kg

Table 12- 23 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes B, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE22-2UA0**	**…0BE23-0UA0**	**…0BE24-0UA0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE22-2AA0**	**…0BE23-0AA0**	**…0BE24-0AA0**
Rated / LO power		2.2 kW	3 kW	4 kW
Rated / LO input current		7.6 A	10.2 A	13.4 A
Rated / LO Output current		5.9 A	7.7 A	10.2 A
HO power		2.2 kW	3 KW	4 kW
HO input current		7.6 A	10.2 A	13.4 A
HO output current		5.9 A	7.7 A	10.2 A
Fuse		16 A, Class J	16 A, Class J	20 A, Class J
Power losses		0.139 kW	0.158 kW	0.183 kW
Required cooling air flow		24 l/s	24 l/s	24 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG	1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG	1.5 … 6 mm^2 16 … 10 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in	1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in	1.5 Nm / 13 lbf in
Weight		4.3 kg	4.3 kg	4.3 kg

Table 12- 24 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE25-5UA0**	**…0BE27-5UA0**	**…0BE31-1UA0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE25-5AA0**	**…0BE27-5AA0**	**…0BE31-1AA0**
Rated / LO power		7.5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
Rated / LO input current		21.9 A	31.5 A	39.4 A
Rated / LO Output current		18 A	25 A	32 A
HO power		5.5 kW	7.5 kW	11 kW
HO input current		16.7 A	23.7 A	32.7 A
HO output current		13.2 A	19 A	26 A
Fuse		20 A, Class J	32 A, Class J	35 A, Class J
Power losses		0.240 kW	0.297 kW	0.396 kW
Required cooling air flow		55 l/s	55 l/s	55 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		4 … 10 mm^2 12 … 8 AWG	4 … 10 mm^2 12 … 8 AWG	4 … 10 mm^2 12 … 8 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in	2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in	2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered Weight, filtered		6.5 kg 7 kg	6.5 kg 7 kg	6.5 kg 7 kg

Table 12- 25 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE31-5UA0**	**…0BE31-8UA0**	**…0BE32-2UA0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE31-5AA0**	**…0BE31-8AA0**	**…0BE32-2AA0**
Rated / LO power		18.5 kW	22 kW	30 kW
Rated / LO input current		46 A	53 A	72 A
Rated / LO Output current		38 A	45 A	60 A
HO power		15 kW	18.5 kW	22 kW
HO input current		40 A	46 A	56 A
HO output current		32 A	38 A	45 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3820	3NA3822	3NA3824
Fuse according to UL		50 A, Class J	63 A, Class J	80 A, Class J
Power losses		0.44 kW	0.55 kW	0.72 kW
		0.42 kW	0.52 kW	0.69 kW
Required cooling air flow		22 l/s	22 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		10 … 35 mm²	10 … 35 mm²	16 … 35 mm²
		7 … 2 AWG	7 … 2 AWG	5 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		13 kg	13 kg	13 kg
Weight, filtered		16 kg	16 kg	16 kg

Table 12- 26 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes E, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE33-0UA0**	**…0BE33-7UA0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE33-0AA0**	**…0BE33-7AA0**
Rated / LO power		37 kW	45 kW
Rated / LO input current		88 A	105 A
Rated / LO Output current		75 A	90 A
HO power		30 kW	37 kW
HO input current		73 A	90 A
HO output current		60 A	75 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3830	3NA3832
Fuse according to UL		100 A, Class J	125 A, Class J
Power losses, unfiltered		0.99 kW	1.2 kW
Power losses, filtered		1.04 kW	1.2 kW
Required cooling air flow		22 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		25 … 35 mm²	25 … 35 mm²
		3 … 2 AWG	3 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		16 kg	16 kg
Weight, filtered		23 kg	23 kg

Table 12- 27 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE34-5UA0**	**…0BE35-5UA0**	**…0BE37-5UA0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE34-5AA0**	**…0BE35-5AA0**	**…0BE37-5AA0**
Rated / LO power		55 kW	75 kW	90 kW
Rated / LO input current		129 A	168 A	204 A
Rated / LO Output current		110 A A	145 A	178 A
HO power		45 kW	55 kW	75 kW
HO input current		108 A	132 A	169 A
HO output current		90 A	110 A	145 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3832	3NA3140	3NA3144
Fuse according to UL		160 A, Class J	200 A, Class J	250 A, Class J
Power losses, unfiltered		1.4 kW	1.9 kW	2.3 kW
Power losses, filtered		1.5 kW	2.0 kW	2.4 kW
Required cooling air flow		94 l/s	94 l/s	117 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	70 … 120 mm^2 2/0 … 4/0 AWG	95 … 120 mm^2 3/0 … 4/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		36 kg	36 kg	36 kg
Weight, filtered		52 kg	52 kg	52 kg

Table 12- 28 PM240, IP20, Frame Sizes F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3224-…**	**…0BE38-8UA0**	**…0BE41-1UA0**
Rated / LO power		110 kW	132 kW
Rated / LO input current		234 A	284 A
Rated / LO Output current		205 A	250 A
HO power		90 kW	110 kW
HO input current		205 A	235 A
HO output current		178 A	205 A
Fuse according to IEC		---	---
Fuse according to UL		250 A, Class J	315 A, Class J
Power losses		2.4 kW	2.5 kW
Required cooling air flow		117 l/s	117 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		95 … 120 mm^2 3/0 … 4/0 AWG	95 … 120 mm^2 3/0 … 4/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in
Weight,		39 kg	39 kg

Table 12- 29 PM240 Frame Sizes GX, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	6SL3224-…	…0XE41-3UA0	…0XE41-6UA0	…0XE42-0UA0
Rated / Low Overlaod values				
Rated / LO power		160 kW	200 kW	240 kW
Rated / LO input current		297 A	354 A	442 A
Rated / LO Output current		302 A	370 A	477 A
High Overload values				
HO power		132 kW	160 kW	200 kW
HO input current		245 A	297 A	354 A
HO output current		250 A	302 A	370 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL		3NA3254 355 A, Class J	3NA3260 400 A, Class J	3NA3372 630 A, Class J
Power losses,		3.9 kW	4.4 kW	5.5 kW
Required cooling air flow		360 l/s	360 l/s	360 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		95 ... 2 x 240 mm^2 3/0 … 2 x 600 AWG	120 ... 2 x 240 mm^2 4/0 … 2 x 600 AWG	185 ... 2 x 240 mm^2 6/0 … 2 x 600 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		14 Nm / 120 lbf in	14 Nm / 120 lbf in	14 Nm / 120 lbf in
Weight,		176 kg	176 kg	176 kg

12.2.4 Technical data, PM240-2

12.2.4.1 General data, PM240-2

Feature	Version		
Line voltage	380 V ... 480 V 3-ph. AC ± 10%		
Output voltage	0 V 3-ph. AC … input voltage x 0.95 (max.)		
Input frequency	50 … 60 Hz, ± 3 Hz		
Output frequency	0 … 650 Hz, depending on the control mode		
Power factor λ	0.7 without line reactor; 0.85 with line reactor		
Line impedance	Uk ≥ 1%, a line reactor is required for lower values		
Starting current	Less than the input current		
Pulse frequency (factory setting)	4 kHz The pulse frequency can be increased in 2 kHz steps. An increase in the pulse frequency results in a lower output current.		
Electromagnetic compatibility	Devices with filters in compliance with EN 61800-3: 2004 are suitable for Category C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2.		
Braking methods	DC braking, compound braking, dynamic braking with integrated braking chopper		
Degree of protection	IP20 built-in units PT devices	IP20 when mounted in a control cabinet IP54 on the control cabinet wall	
Operating temperature	LO without power reduction: HO without power reduction: LO/HO with power reduction:	0° C … +40° C 0° C … +50° C to 60° C	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual.
Storage temperature	-40° C … +70° C (-40° F … 158° F)		
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible		
Dirt and contamination	Protected according to pollution degree 2 to EN 61800-5-1: 2007		
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995		
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995		
Installation altitude	without power reduction: with power reduction:	up to 1000 m above sea level up to 4000 m above sea level	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual
Standards	UL, cUL, CE, C-tick, SEMI F47 The drive only satisfies the UL requirements when UL-certified fuses are used.		

12.2.4.2 Power-dependent data PM240-2

Table 12- 30 PM240-2, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1PE11-8UL0**	**…1PE12-3UL0**	**…1PE13-2UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1PE11-8AL0**	**…1PE12-3AL0**	**…1PE13-2AL0**
LO power		0.55 kW	0.75 kW	1.1 kW
LO input current		2.3 A	2.9 A	4.1 A
LO output current		1.7 A	2.2 A	3.1 A
HO power		0.37 kW	0.55 kW	0.75 kW
HO input current		2 A	2.6 A	3.3 A
HO output current		1.3 A	1.7 A	2.2 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3 801 (6 A)	3NA3 801 (6 A)	3NA3 801 (6 A)
Fuse according to UL		10 A class J	10 A class J	10 A class J
Power losses, unfiltered		0.04 kW	0.04 kW	0.04 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.04 kW	0.04 kW	0.04 kW
Required cooling air flow		5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.4 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg
Weight, filtered		1.5 kg	1.5 kg	1.5 kg

Table 12- 31 PM240-2, IP20, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3210…**	**…1PE14-3UL0**	**…1PE16-1UL0**	**…1PE18-0UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3210…**	**…1PE14-3AL0**	**…1PE16-1AL0**	**---**
LO power		1.5 kW	2.2 kW	3 kW
LO input current		5.5 A	7.7 A	10.1 A
LO output current		4.1 A	5.9 A	7.7 A
HO power		1.1 kW	1.5 kW	2.2 kW
HO input current		4.7 A	6.1 A	8.8 A
HO output current		3.1 A	4.1 A	5.9 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3 803 (10 A)	3NA3 803 (10 A)	3NA3 805 (16 A)
Fuse according to UL		10 A class J	10 A class J	15 A class J
Power losses, unfiltered		0.07 kW	0.1 kW	0.12 kW
Power losses, filtered		0.07 kW	0.1 kW	0.12 kW
Required cooling air flow		5 l/s	5 l/s	5 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1 … 2.5 mm^2 18 … 14 AWG	1.5 … 2.5 mm^2 16 … 14 AWG	1.5 … 2.5 mm^2 16 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		1.4 kg	1.4 kg	1.4 kg
Weight, filtered		1.5 kg	1.5 kg	---

Table 12- 32 PM240-2, PT, Frame Sizes A, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3211…**	**---**	**…1PE18-0UL0**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3211…**	**…1PE16-1AL0**	**__**
LO power		2.2 kW	3 kW
LO input current		7.7 A	10.1 A
LO Output current		5.9 A	7.7 A
HO power		1.5 kW	2.2 kW
HO input current		6.1 A	8.8 A
HO output current		4.1 A	5.9 A
Fuse according to IEC		3NA3 803 (10 A)	3NA3 805 (16 A)
Fuse according to UL		10 A class J	15 A class J
Power losses, unfiltered		0.1 kW 1)	0.12 kW 2)
Power losses, filtered		0.1 kW 1)	0.12 kW 2)
Required cooling air flow		7 l/s	7 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		1.5 … 2.5 mm²	1.5 … 2.5 mm²
		16 … 14 AWG	16 … 14 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in	0.5 Nm / 4 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		---	1.7 kg
Weight, filtered		1.8 kg	---

1) 0.08 kW via heat sink;

2) 0.1 kW via heat sink

12.2.5 Technical data, PM250

12.2.5.1 General data, PM250

Feature	Version		
Line voltage	380 V ... 480 V 3-ph. AC ± 10%		
Output voltage	0 V 3-ph. AC … input voltage x 0.87 (max.)		
Input frequency	47 Hz … 63 Hz		
Power factor λ	0.9		
Starting current	Less than the input current		
Pulse frequency (factory setting)	4 kHz The pulse frequency can be increased up to 16 kHz in 2 kHz steps. An increase in the pulse frequency results in a lower output current.		
Electromagnetic compatibility	The devices in compliance with EN 61800-3: 2004 are suitable for Category C1 and C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2		
Braking methods	DC braking, energy recovery (up to 100% of the output power)		
Degree of protection	IP20 chassis units		
Operating temperature	LO without power reduction: HO without power reduction: LO/HO with power reduction:	0° C … +40° C 0° C … +50° C to 60° C	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual.
Storage temperature	-40° C … +70° C		
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible		
Dirt and contamination	Protected according to pollution degree 2 to EN 61800-5-1: 2007		
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995		
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995		
Installation altitude	without power reduction: with power reduction:	up to 1000 m above sea level up to 4000 m above sea level	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual
Standards	UL, CE, CE, SEMI F47 The drive only satisfies the UL requirements when UL-certified fuses are used.		

12.2.5.2 Power-dependent data, PM250

Table 12- 33 PM250, IP20, Frame Sizes C, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered	6SL3225-…	0BE25-5AA0	0BE27-5AA0	0BE31-1AA0
Rated / LO power		7.5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
Rated / LO input current		18 A	25 A	32 A
Rated / LO Output current		18 A	25 A	32 A
HO power		5. 5 kW	7.5 kW	11 kW
HO input current		13.2 A	19 A	26 A
HO output current		13.2 A	19 A	26 A
Fuse		20 A, Class J	32 A, Class J	35 A, Class J
Power losses		0.24 kW	0.30 kW	0.31 kW
Required cooling air flow		38 l/s	38 l/s	38 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		2.5 … 10 mm^2 14 … 8 AWG	4.0 … 10 mm^2 12 … 8 AWG	4.0 … 10 mm^2 12 … 8 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in	2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in	2.3 Nm / 20 lbf in
Weight		7.5 kg	7.5 kg	7.5 kg

Table 12- 34 PM250, IP20, Frame Sizes D, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered	6SL3225-…	0BE31-5AA0	0BE31-8AA0	0BE32-2AA0
Rated / LO power		18.5 kW	22 kW	30 kW
Rated / LO input current		36 A	42 A	56 A
Rated / LO Output current		38 A	45 A	60 A
HO power		15 kW	18.5 kW	22 kW
HO input current		30 A	36 A	42 A
HO output current		32 A	38 A	45 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL		3NA3820 50 A, Class J	3NA3822 63 A, Class J	3NA3824 80 A, Class J
Power losses		0.44 kW	0.55 kW	0.72 kW
Required cooling air flow		22 l/s	22 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		10 … 35 mm^2 7 … 2 AWG	10 … 35 mm^2 7 … 2 AWG	16 … 35 mm^2 6 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight		15 kg	15 kg	16 kg

Table 12- 35 PM250, IP20, Frame Sizes E, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered 6SL3225-…	0BE33-0AA0	0BE33-7AA0
Rated / LO power	37 kW	45 kW
Rated / LO input current	70 A	84 A
Rated / LO Output current	75 A	90 A
HO power	30 kW	37 kW
HO input current	56 A	70 A
HO output current	60 A	75 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL	3NA3830 100 A, Class J	3NA3832 125 A, Class J
Power losses	1.04 kW	1.2 kW
Required cooling air flow	22 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable	25 … 35 mm^2 3 … 2 AWG	25 … 35 mm^2 3 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable	6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight	21 kg	21 kg

Table 12- 36 PM250, IP20, Frame Sizes F, 3 AC 380 V … 480 V

Order No. - Filtered 6SL3225-…	0BE34-5AA0	0BE35-5AA0	0BE37-5AA0
Rated / LO power	55 kW	75 kW	90 kW
Rated / LO input current	102 A	135 A	166 A
Rated / LO Output current	110 A	145 A	178 A
HO power	45 kW	55 kW	75 kW
HO input current	84 A	102 A	135 A
HO output current	90 A	110 A	145 A
Fuse according to IEC Fuse according to UL	3NA3836 160 A, Class J	3NA3140 200 A, Class J	3NA3144 250 A, Class J
Power losses	1.5 kW	2.0 kW	2.4 kW
Required cooling air flow	94 l/s	94 l/s	117 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG	35 … 120 mm^2 2 … 4/0 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable	13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in	13 Nm / 115 lbf in
Weight	51 kg	51 kg	51 kg

12.2.6 Technical data, PM260

12.2.6.1 General data, PM260

Feature	Version		
Line voltage	660 V ... 690 V 3-ph. AC ± 10% The power units can also be operated with a minimum voltage of 500 V –10 %. In this case, the power is linearly reduced.		
Input frequency	50 Hz … 60 Hz, ± 3 Hz		
Power factor λ	0.9		
Starting current	Less than the input current		
Pulse frequency	16 kHz		
Electromagnetic compatibility	The devices in compliance with EN 61800-3: 2004 are suitable for Category C1 and C2 environments. For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual, Appendix A2		
Braking methods	DC braking, energy recovery (up to 100% of the output power)		
Degree of protection	IP20 chassis units		
Operating temperature	LO without power reduction: HO without power reduction: LO/HO with power reduction:	0° C … +40° C 0° C … +50° C to 60° C	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual.
Storage temperature	-40° C … +70° C (-40° F … 158° F)		
Relative humidity	< 95% - condensation not permissible		
Dirt and contamination	Protected according to pollution degree 2 to EN 61800-5-1: 2007		
Environmental requirements	Protected against damaging chemical substances according to environmental class 3C2 to EN 60721-3-3; 1995		
Shock and vibration	• Long-term storage in the transport packaging according to Class 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1: 1997 • Transport in the transport packaging according to Class 2M3 to EN 60721-3-2: 1997 • Vibration during operation according to Class 3M2 to EN 60721-3-3: 1995		
Installation altitude	without power reduction: with power reduction:	up to 1000 m above sea level up to 4000 m above sea level	For details, see the Hardware Installation Manual
Standards	CE, C-TICK		

12.2.6.2 Power-dependent data, PM260

Table 12- 37 PM260, IP20, Frame Sizes D - 3 AC 660 V … 690 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3225-…**	**0BH27-5UA1**	**0BH31-1UA1**	**0BH31-5UA1**
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3225-…**	**0BH27-5AA1**	**0BH31-1AA1**	**0BH31-5AA1**
Rated / LO power		11 kW	15 kW	18.5 kW
Rated / LO input current		13 A	18 A	22 A
Rated / LO Output current		14 A	19 A	23 A
HO power		7.5 kW	11 kW	15 kW
HO input current		10 A	13 A	18 A
HO output current		10 A	14 A	19 A
Fuse		20 A	20 A	32 A
Power losses, unfiltered				
Power losses, filtered				
Required cooling air flow		22 l/s	22 l/s	39 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		2,5 … 16 mm²	4 … 16 mm²	6 … 16 mm²
		14 … 6 AWG	12 … 6 AWG	10 … 6 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		1,5 Nm / 53 lbf in	1,5 Nm / 53 lbf in	1,5 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		22 kg	22 kg	22 kg
Weight, filtered		23 kg	23 kg	23 kg
Noise pressure		< 64 dB(A)	< 64 dB(A)	< 64 dB(A)

Table 12- 38 PM260, IP20, Frame Sizes F - 3 AC 660 V … 690 V

Order No. - Unfiltered	**6SL3225-…**	0BH32-2UA1	0BH33-0UA1	0BH33-7UA1
Order No. - Filtered	**6SL3225-…**	0BH32-2AA1	0BH33-0AA1	0BH33-7AA1
Rated / LO power		30 kW	37 kW	55 kW
Rated / LO input current		34 A	41 A	60 A
Rated / LO Output current		35 A	42 A	62 A
HO power		22 kW	30 kW	37 kW
HO input current		26 A	34 A	41 A
HO output current		26 A	35 A	42 A
Fuse		50 A	50 A	80 A
Power losses, unfiltered				
Power losses, filtered				
Required cooling air flow		94 l/s	94 l/s	117 l/s
Cross section of line and motor cable		10 … 35 mm²	16 … 35 mm²	25 … 35 mm²
		8 … 2 AWG	6 … 2 AWG	4 … 2 AWG
Tightening torque for line and motor cable		6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in	6 Nm / 53 lbf in
Weight, unfiltered		56 kg	56 kg	56 kg
Weight, filtered		58 kg	58 kg	58 kg
Noise pressure		< 70 dB(A)	< 70 dB(A)	< 70 dB(A)

Appendix

A

A.1 Star-delta motor connection and application examples

Depending on your application, you can operate the motor in the star or delta connection (Y/Δ).

Examples for operating the converter and motor on a 400 V line supply

Assumption: The motor rating plate states 230/400 V Δ/Y.

Case 1: A motor is normally operated between standstill and its rated speed (i.e. a speed corresponding to the line frequency). In this case, you need to connect the motor in Y. Operating the motor above its rated speed is only possible in field weakening, i.e. the motor torque available is reduced above the rated speed.

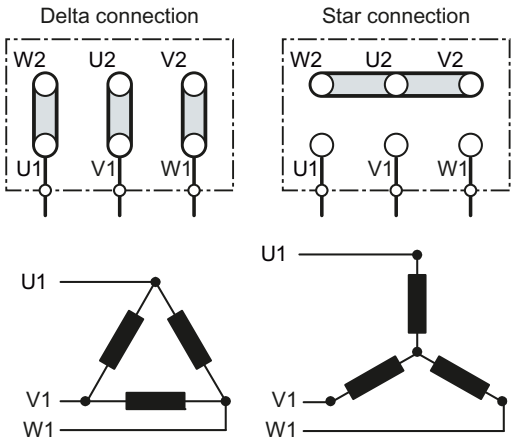
Case 2: If you want to operate the motor with the "87 Hz characteristic", you need to connect the motor in Δ.
With the 87 Hz characteristic, the motor's power output increases. The 87 Hz characteristic is mainly used with geared motors.

Before you connect the motor, ensure that the motor has the appropriate connection for your application:

Motor is connected in the star or delta configuration

With SIEMENS motors, you will see a diagram of both connection methods on the inside of the cover of the terminal box:

- Star connection (Y)
- Delta connection (Δ)



A.2 Parameter

Parameters are the interface between the firmware of the inverter and the commissioning tool, e.g. an operator panel.

Adjustable parameters

Adjustable parameters are the "adjusting screws" with which you adapt the inverter to its particular application. If you change the value of an adjustable parameter, then the inverter behavior also changes.

Adjustable parameters are shown with a "p" as prefix, e.g. p1082 is the parameter for the maximum motor speed.

Display parameters

Display parameters allow internal measured quantities of the inverter and the motor to be read.

Display parameters are shown with a "r" as prefix, e.g. p0027 is the parameter for the inverter output current.

Parameters that in many cases help

Table A- 1 **How to switch to commissioning mode or restore the factory setting**

Parameter	Description
p0010	**Commissioning parameters** 0: Ready (factory setting) 1: Carry out basic commissioning 3: Perform motor commissioning 5: Technological applications and units 15: Define number of data records 30: Factory setting - initiate restore factory settings

Table A- 2 **How to determine the firmware version of the Control Unit**

Parameter	Description
r0018	**The firmware version is displayed:**

Table A- 3 **How to select the command and setpoint sources for the inverter**

Parameter	Description
p0015	Additional information is available in the section Selecting the interface assignments (Page 48).

Table A- 4 **This is how you parameterize the up and down ramps**

Parameter	Description
p1080	**Minimum speed** 0.00 [rpm] factory setting
p1082	**Maximum speed** 1500.000 [rpm] factory setting
p1120	**Rampup time** 10.00 [s]
p1121	**Rampdown time** 10.00 [s]

Table A- 5 **This is how you set the closed-loop type**

Parameter	Description
p1300	0: V/f control with linear characteristic 1: V/f control with linear characteristic and FCC 2: V/f control with parabolic characteristic 3: V/f control with parameterizable characteristic 4: V/f control with linear characteristic and ECO 5: V/f control for drives requiring a precise frequency (textile area) 6: V/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency and FCC 7: V/f control with parabolic characteristic and ECO 19: V/f control with independent voltage setpoint 20: Speed control (without encoder) 22: Torque control (without encoder)

Table A- 6 **This is how you optimize the starting behavior of the V/f control for a high break loose torque and overload**

Parameter	Description
p1310	**Voltage boost to compensate ohmic losses** The voltage boost is active from standstill up to the rated speed. It is at its highest at speed 0 and continually decreases as the speed increases. Value of the voltage boost at zero speed 0 in V: 1.732 × rated motor current (p0305) × stator resistance (r0395) × p1310 / 100%
p1311	**Voltage boost when accelerating** The voltage boost is effective from standstill up to the rated speed. It is independent of the speed and has a value in V of: 1.732 × rated motor current (p0305) × stator resistance (p0350) × p1311 / 100%
p1312	**Voltage boost when starting** Setting to additionally boost the voltage when starting, however only when accelerating for the first time.

A.3 Interconnecting signals in the converter

A.3.1 BICO technology: basic principles

Principle of operation of BICO technology

Open/closed-loop control functions, communication functions as well as diagnostic and operator functions are implemented in the inverter. Every function comprises one or several BICO blocks that are interconnected with one another.

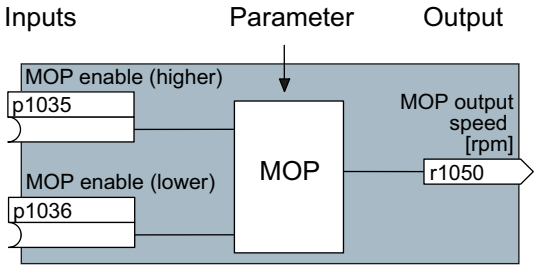


Figure A-1 Example of a BICO block: Motorized potentiometer (MOP)

Most of the BICO blocks can be parameterized. You can adapt the blocks to your application using parameters.

You cannot change the signal interconnection within the block. However, the interconnection between blocks can be changed by interconnecting the inputs of a block with the appropriate outputs of another block.

The signal interconnection of the blocks is realized, contrary to electric circuitry, not using cables, but in the software.

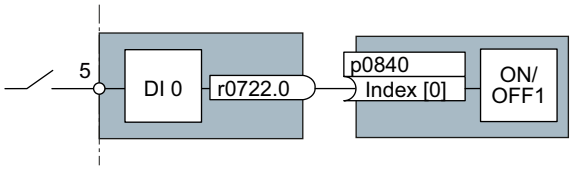


Figure A-2 Example: Signal interconnection of two BICO blocks for digital input 0

Binectors and connectors

Connectors and binectors are used to exchange signals between the individual BICO blocks:

- Connectors are used to interconnect "analog" signals. (e.g. MOP output speed)
- Binectors are used to interconnect "digital" signals. (e.g. 'Enable MOP up' command)

Definition of BICO technology

BICO technology represents a type of parameterization that can be used to disconnect all internal signal interconnections between BICO blocks or establish new connections. This is realized using **Bi**nectors and **Co**nnectors. Hence the name **BICO** technology. (Binector Connector Technology)

BICO parameters

You can use the BICO parameters to define the sources of the input signals of a block. Using BICO parameters you define from which connectors and binectors a block reads-in its input signals. This is how you "interconnect" the blocks stored in the devices according to your particular application requirements. The five different BICO parameter types are shown in the following diagram:

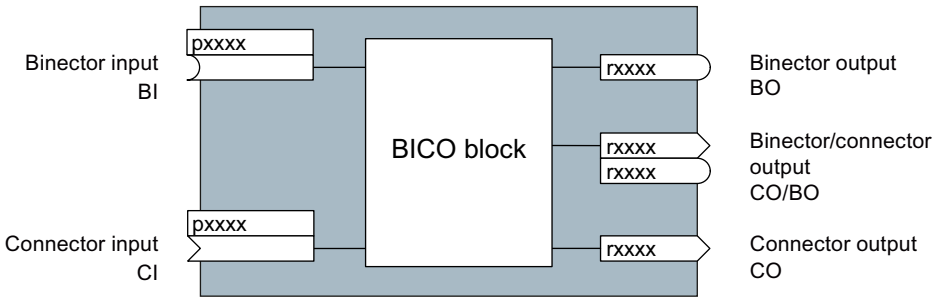


Figure A-3 BICO symbols

Binector/connector outputs (CO/BO) are parameters that combine more than one binector output in a single word (e.g. r0052 CO/BO: status word 1). Each bit in the word represents a digital (binary) signal. This summary reduces the number of parameters and simplifies parameter assignment.

BICO outputs (CO, BO, or CO/BO) can be used more than once.

When do you need to use BICO technology?

BICO technology allows you to adapt the inverter to a wide range of different requirements. This does not necessarily have to involve highly complex functions.

Example 1: Assign a different function to a digital input.

Example 2: Switch the speed setpoint from the fixed speed to the analog input.

What precautions should you take when using BICO technology?

Always apply caution when handling internal interconnections. Note which changes you make as you go along since the process of analyzing them later can be quite difficult.

The STARTER commissioning tool offers various screens that make it much easier for you to use BICO technology. The signals that you can interconnect are displayed in plain text, which means that you do not need any prior knowledge of BICO technology.

What sources of information do you need to help you set parameters using BICO technology?

- This manual is sufficient for simple signal interconnections, e.g. assigning a different significance to the to digital inputs.
- The parameter list in the List Manual is sufficient for signal interconnections that go beyond just simple ones.
- You can also refer to the function diagrams in the List Manual for complex signal interconnections.

A.3.2 BICO technology: example

Example: Shifting a basic PLC functionality into the converter

A conveyor system is to be configured in such a way that it can only start when two signals are present simultaneously. These could be the following signals, for example:

- The oil pump is running (the required pressure level is not reached, however, until after five seconds)
- The protective door is closed

The task is realized by inserting free blocks between the digital input 0 and the internal ON/OFF1 command and interconnecting them.

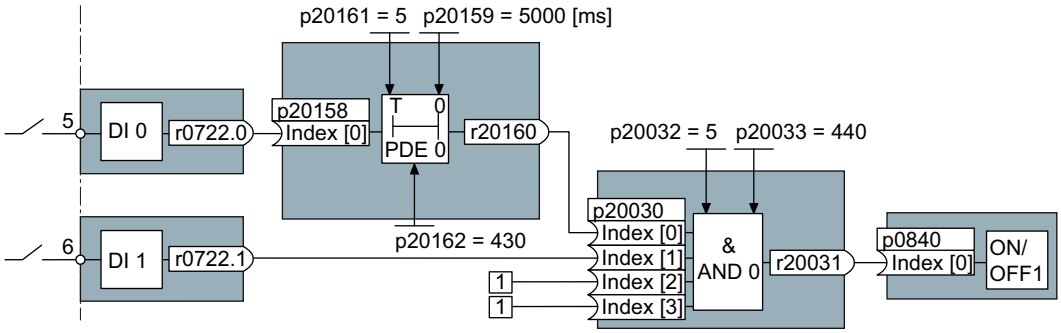


Figure A-4 Example: Signal interconnection for interlock

The signal of digital input 0 (DI 0) is fed through a time block (PDE 0) and is interconnected with the input of a logic block (AND 0). The signal of digital input 1 (DI 1) is interconnected to the second input of the logic block. The logic block output issues the ON/OFF1 command to switch-on the motor.

Table A- 7 Parameterizing an interlock

Parameter	Description
P20161 = 5	The time block is enabled by assigning to runtime group 5 (time slice of 128 ms)
P20162 = 430	Run sequence of the time block within runtime group 5 (processing before the AND logic block)
P20032 = 5	The AND logic block is enabled by assigning to runtime group 5 (time slice of 128 ms)
P20033 = 440	Run sequence of the AND logic block within runtime group 5 (processing after the time block)
P20159 = 5000.00	Setting the delay time [ms] of the time module: 5 seconds
P20158 = 722.0	Connect the status of DI 0 to the input of the time block r0722.0 = Parameter that displays the status of digital input 0.
P20030 [0] = 20160	Interconnecting the time block to the 1st input of the AND
P20030 [1] = 722.1	Interconnecting the status of DI 1 to the 2nd AND input r0722.1 = Parameter that displays the status of digital input 1.
P0840 = 20031	Interconnecting the AND output to the control command ON/OFF1

Explanation of the example using the ON/OFF1 command

Parameter P0840[0] is the input of the "ON/OFF1 command" block of the converter. Parameter r20031 is the output of the AND block. To interconnect the ON/OFF1 command with the output of the AND block, set P0840 to 20031.

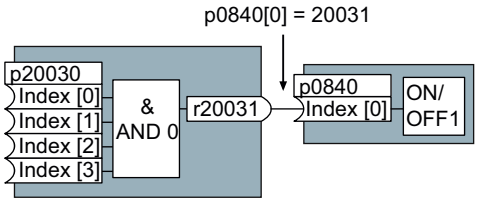


Figure A-5 Interconnecting two BICO blocks by setting p0840[0] = 20031

Principle when connecting BICO blocks using BICO technology

An interconnection between two BICO blocks comprises a connector or binector and a BICO parameter. The interconnection is always established from the perspective of the input of a particular BICO block. This means that the output of an upstream block must always be assigned to the input of a downstream block. The assignment is always made by entering the number of the connector/binector from which the required input signals are read in a BICO parameter.

This interconnection logic involves the question: **where does the signal come from?**

NOTICE
For the basic commissioning, you determine the function of the interfaces for your inverter via predefined settings (p0015). If you subsequently select a different predefined setting for the function of the interfaces, then all BICO interconnections that you changed will be lost.

A.4 Application examples

A.4.1 Configuring PROFIBUS communication in STEP 7

Using a suitable example, the following section provides information on how you connect an inverter to a higher-level SIMATIC control via PROFIBUS.

What prior knowledge is required?

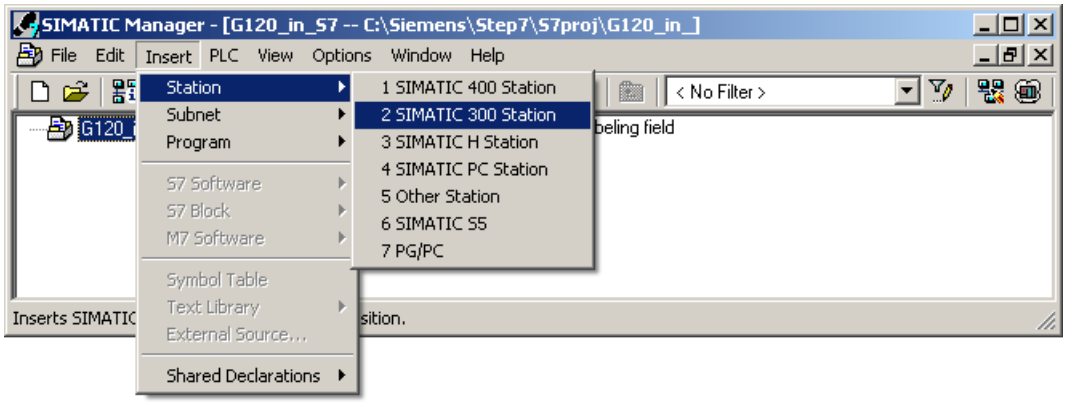
In this example, it is assumed that readers know now to basically use an S7 control and the STEP 7 engineering tool and is not part of this description.

A.4.1.1 Creating a STEP 7 project

PROFIBUS communication between the inverter and a SIMATIC control is configured using the SIMATIC STEP 7 and HW Config software tools.

Procedure

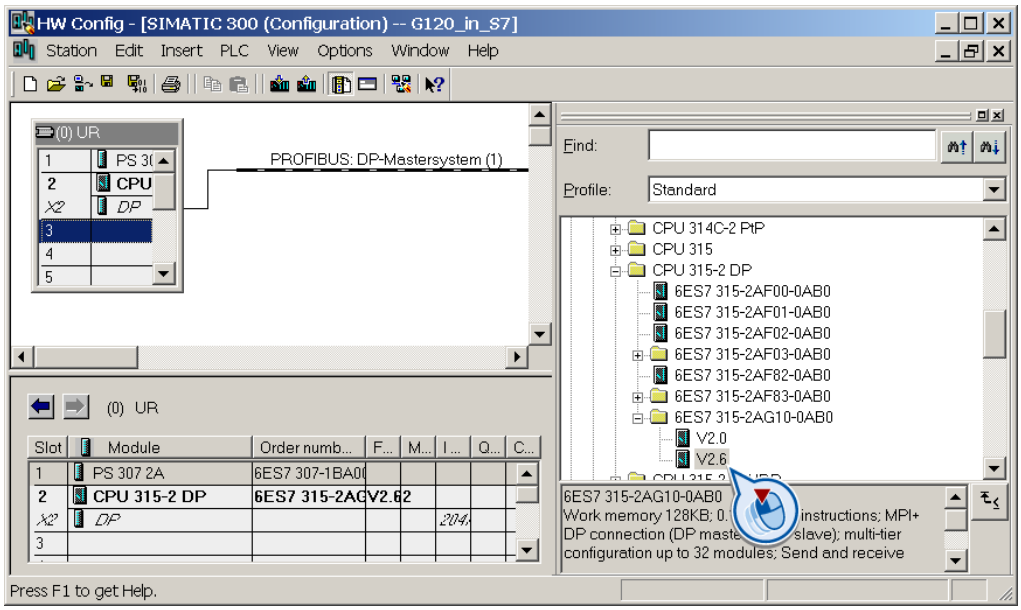
- Create a new STEP 7 project, e.g. "G120_in_S7 ". Add an S7 300 CPU.



- Select the SIMATIC 300 station in your project and open the hardware configuration (HW Config) by double clicking on "Hardware".
- Add an S7 300 mounting rail to your project by dragging and dropping it from the "SIMATIC 300" hardware catalog. Locate a power supply at slot 1 of the mounting rail and a CPU 315-2 DP at slot 2.

When you add the SIMATIC 300, a window is displayed in which you can define the network.

- Create a PROFIBUS DP network.



A.4.1.2 Configuring communications to a SIMATIC control

The inverter can be connected to a SIMATIC control in two ways:

1. Using the inverter GSD
2. Using the STEP 7 object manager

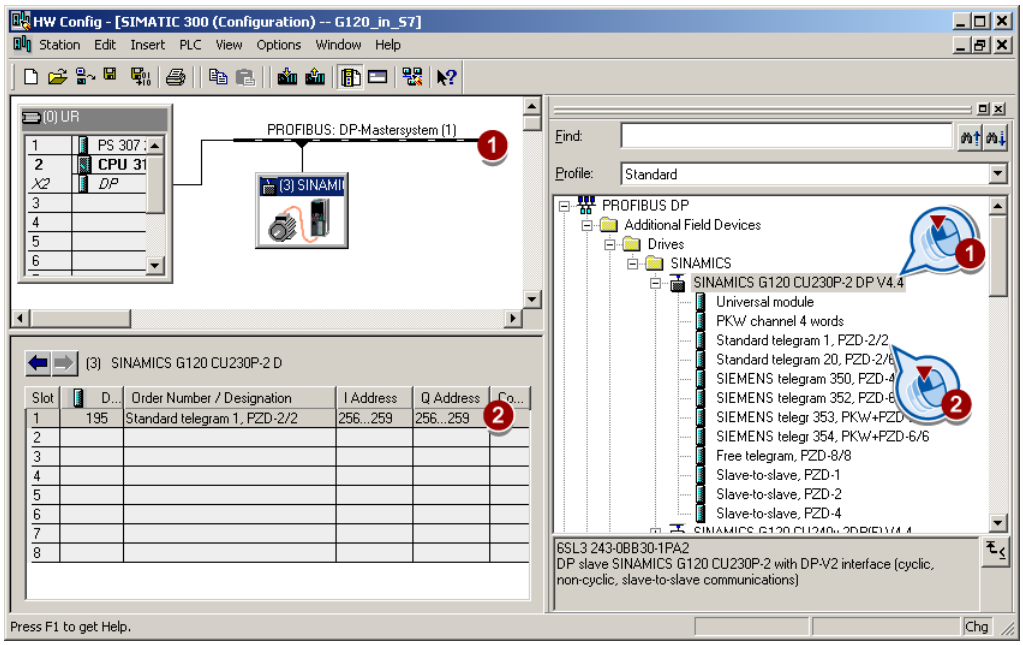
   This somewhat more user-friendly method is only available for S7 controls and installed Drive ES Basic (see Section Accessories for commissioning and operation (Page 27)).

The following section describes how to configure the inverter using the GSD.

A.4.1.3 Inserting the inverter into the STEP 7 project

- Install the GSD of the converter in STEP 7 using HW Config (menu "Options - Install GSD files").

After the GSD has been installed, the converter appears under "PROFIBUS DP - additional field devices" in the hardware catalog of HW Config.



- Drag and drop the converter into the PROFIBUS network. Enter the PROFIBUS address set at the converter in HW Config.
- Insert the communication modules from the HW catalog by dragging & dropping without gaps, starting at slot 1.

Sequence when assigning the slots

- PIV channel (if one is used)
- Standard, SIEMENS or free telegram
- Slave-to-slave module

More information on the telegram types can be found in Chapter Cyclic communication (Page 99).

Note regarding the universal module

It is not permissible to configure the universal module with the following properties:

- PZD length 4/4 words
- Consistent over the complete length

With these properties, the universal module has the same DP identifier (4AX) as the "PKW channel 4 words" and is therefore identified as such by the higher-level control. As a consequence, the control does not establish cyclic communication with the inverter.

Remedy: Change the length to 8/8 bytes in the properties of the DP slave. As an alternative, you can also change the consistency to "unit".

Final steps

- Save and compile the project in STEP 7.
- Establish an online connection between your PC and the S7 CPU and download the project data to the S7 CPU.
- In the inverter, select the telegram type, which you configured in STEP 7, using parameter P0922.

The inverter is now connected to the S7 CPU. This therefore defines the communication interface between the CPU and the inverter. An example of how you can supply this interface with data can be found in the next section.

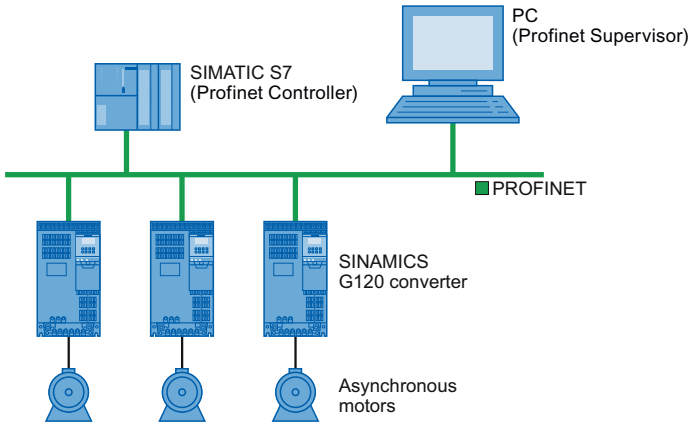
A.4.2 Configuring PROFINET communication in STEP 7

A.4.2.1 Communication via PROFINET - example

Profinet network in a line topology

The adjacent example shows the structure of a Profinet network in a line topology, with one controller (S7-300), three devices (G120 converters) and one supervisor (programming device).

Communication is established via "twisted-pair lines" with RJ45 connectors. 100 Mbit/s in the full duplex mode is required as transmission rate.



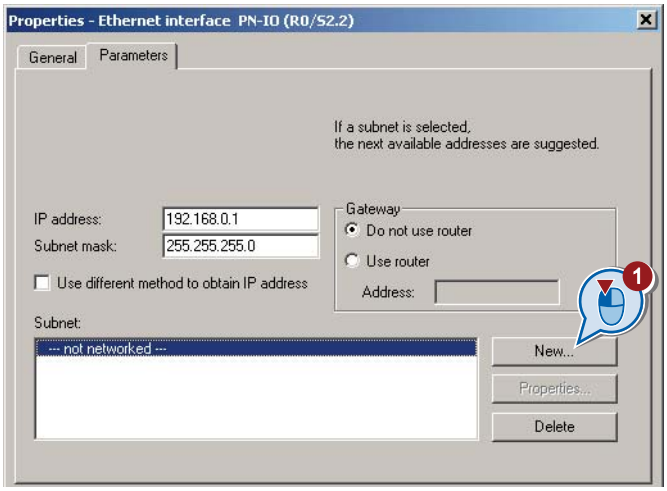
A.4.2.2 Configuring the system in HW Config

Open HW Config in STEP 7 via "Insert/[Station]", and create the components in accordance with your hardware structure. The following example is limited to the components that are absolutely required.

Insert the CPU if you have configured your station with a rack and power supply.

NOTICE
Device name for PROFINET Based on the device name, when booting, the PROFINET controller assigns the IP address; as a consequence, the device names within a subnet must be unique. In the SIMATIC Manager, only lower-case letters may be used for the device name. Spaces and special characters are replaced by "x".

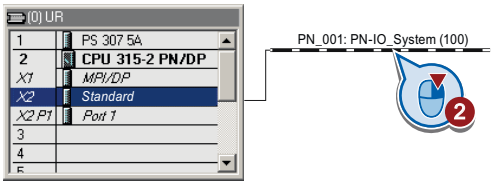
In the screen form that opens, HW Config proposes the next free IP address and a subnet mask. If you have configured a local area network, and are not working within a larger Ethernet network, you can use the proposed entries. Otherwise, ask your administrator about the IP addresses for the PROFINET participants and subnet mask. The subnet mask must have the same address that you assigned when addressing the supervisor.



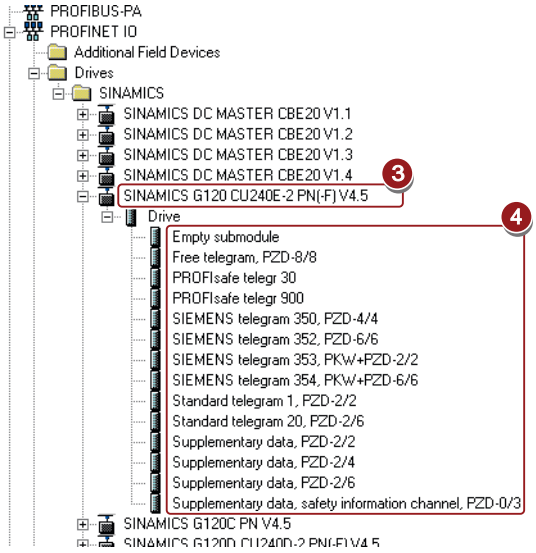
Use the "New" button (①) to either create a new PROFINET subnet or select an existing one.

Assign a name for your PROFINET network there. Additional modifications are not necessary. Exit this screen form and the next one with OK.

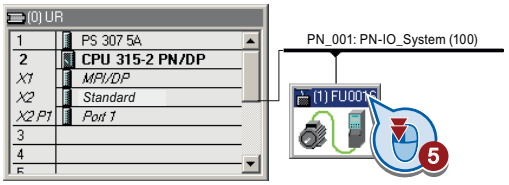
In the next step, select the bus (②), and via the hardware catalog using drag-and-drop, first insert the converter (③) and then the communication telegram (④).



Hardware catalog



Open the properties window of the converter (⑤) and enter a unique and descriptive device name for the converter. You will also find the proposed IP address in this screen form. If required, you can change the IP address via "Properties".



Then save your hardware configuration with "Save and compile" ( ). You have now completed configuring the device in STEP 7.

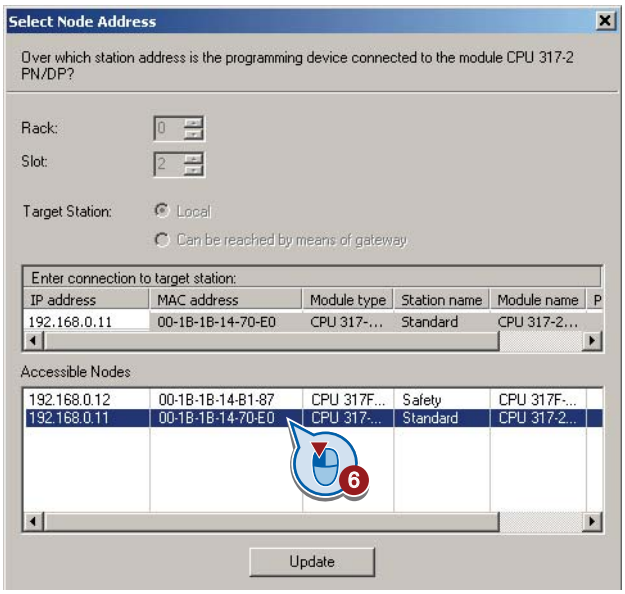
Note

STEP 7 with Drive ES Basic

If you have installed Drive ES Basic, you can now integrate the converter via the object manager and open STARTER in HW Config by double-clicking the converter. In this case, STARTER automatically accepts the device name and IP address. As a consequence, the procedure described in Section Inserting the converter into the SIMATIC Manager (Page 371) is superfluous.

In the next step, load the configuration into the control by clicking the button. In the next screen form, set the IP address of the control.

If you do not have the IP address readily available, you can display the participants that can be reached by clicking the "Display" button. Select the control from the list of accessible participants (⑥), and exit the screen form with OK.



The CPU must be stopped to complete the loading process.

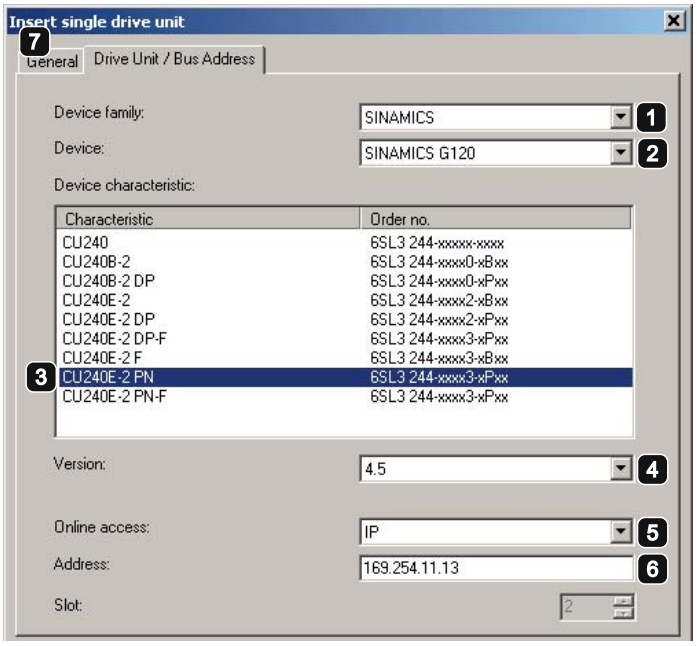
If you have installed Drive ES Basic, open STARTER by double-clicking the converter symbol in the Hardware Manager and configure the converter in STARTER.

If you are working with the GSDML, now close HW Config and insert the converter in the SIMATIC Manager as described in the following section.

A.4.2.3 Inserting the converter into the SIMATIC Manager

Select your project in the SIMATIC Manager and open the "Insert single drive unit" screen form by right clicking on "Insert New Object/SINAMICS".

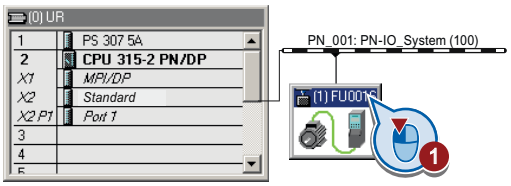
There, under the tab "Drive unit/bus address", as shown in the diagram, select your converter and under the tab "General" (⑦) enter the PROFINET device name. Exit the screen form with OK.



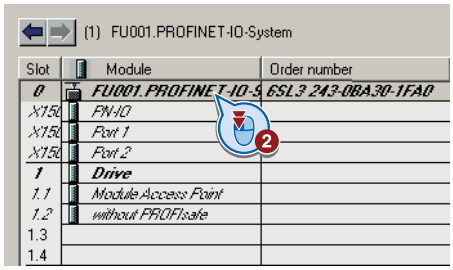
The converter is now displayed in your project in the SIMATIC Manager.

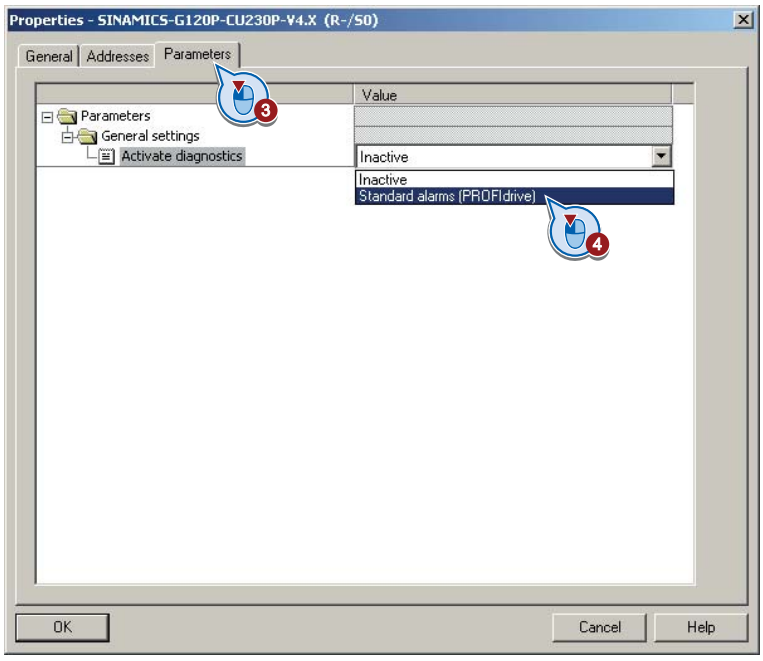
A.4.2.4 Activate diagnostic messages via STEP 7

In HW Config, select the converter ①



Open by double-clicking on slot 0 in the station window ② the properties window for the network settings of the converter and activate there in the parameter ③ tab as shown the standard alarms ④.



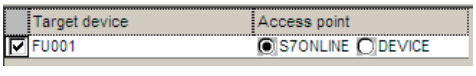


With the next ramp-up of the controller, the diagnostic messages of the converter are then transferred to the controller.

A.4.2.5 Go online with STARTER via PROFINET

Select the converter in SIMATIC Manager with the righthand mouse button and open STARTER via "Open object".

Configure the converter in STARTER and click on the Online button ( ). In the following window, select the converter and then the S7ONLINE as access point.



Exit the screen form with OK and the online connection will be established.

A.4.3 STEP 7 program examples

Data exchange via the fieldbus

Analog signals

The converter always scales signals, which are transferred via the fieldbus, to a value of 4000 hex.

Table A- 8 Signal category and the associated scaling parameters

Signal category	4000 hex ≙ …	Signal category	4000 hex ≙ …
Speeds, frequencies	p2000	Power	p2004
Voltage	p2001	Angle	p2005
Current	p2002	Temperature	p2006
Torque	p2003	Acceleration	p2007

Control and status words

Control and status words consist of a high byte and a low byte. A SIMATIC control interprets words differently than the converter: The higher and lower-order bytes are interchanged when they are transferred. See also the following program example.

A.4.3.1 STEP 7 program example for cyclic communication

Network 1: Control word 1 and setpoint

Control word 1: 047E hex
Setpoint: 2500 hex

```
L    W#16#47E
T    MW    1
L    W#16#2500
T    MW    3
```

Network 2: Acknowledge fault

```
U    E     0.6
=    M     2.7
```

Network 3: Switch the motor on and off

```
U    E     0.0
=    M     2.0
```

Network 4: Write process data

```
L    MW    1
T    PAW   256
L    MW    3
T    PAW   258
```

Network 4: Read process data

Status word 1: MW 5
Actual value: MW 7

```
L    PEW   256
T    MW    5
L    PEW   258
T    MW    7
```

The control and inverter communicate via standard telegram 1. The control specifies control word 1 (STW1) and the speed setpoint, while the inverter responds with status word 1 (ZSW1) and its actual speed.

In this example, inputs E0.0 and E0.6 are linked to the -bit ON/OFF1 or to the "acknowledge fault" bit of STW 1.

Control word 1 contains the numerical value 047E hex. The bits of control word 1 are listed in the following table.

The hexadecimal numeric value 2500 specifies the setpoint frequency of the inverter. The maximum frequency is the hexadecimal value 4000 (also see STEP 7 program examples (Page 373)).

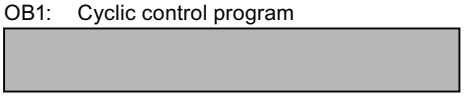
The control cyclically writes the process data to logical address 256 of the inverter. The inverter also writes its process data to logical address 256. You define the address area in HW Config, seeInserting the inverter into the STEP 7 project (Page 366).

Table A- 9 Assignment of the control bits in the inverter to the SIMATIC flags and inputs

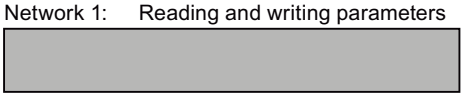
HEX	BIN	Bit in STW1	Significance	Bit in MW1	Bit in MB1	Bit in MB2	Inputs
E	0	0	ON/OFF1	8		0	E0.0
	1	1	ON/OFF2	9		1	
	1	2	ON/OFF3	10		2	
	1	3	Operation enable	11		3	
7	1	4	Ramp-function generator enable	12		4	
	1	5	Start ramp-function generator	13		5	
	1	6	Setpoint enable	14		6	
	0	7	Acknowledge fault	15		7	E0.6
4	0	8	Jog 1	0	0		
	0	9	Jog 2	1	1		
	1	10	PLC control	2	2		
	0	11	Setpoint inversion	3	3		
0	0	12	Irrelevant	4	4		
	0	13	Motorized potentiometer ↑	5	5		
	0	14	Motorized potentiometer ↓	6	6		
	0	15	Data set changeover	7	7		

A.4.3.2 STEP 7 program example for acyclic communication

OB1: Cyclic control program



Network 1: Reading and writing parameters



```
// read parameters
      O(
      U     M     9.2
      UN    M     9.1
      )
      O(
      U     M     9.0
      UN    M     9.1
      )
      R     M     9.3

      SPB   RD

// write parameters
      O(
      U     M     9.3
      UN    M     9.0
      )
      O(
      U     M     9.1
      UN    M     9.0
      )
      R     M     9.2

      SPB   WR
      BEA

RD:   NOP   0
      CALL  FC    1
      BEA
WR:   NOP   0     9.1
      CALL  FC    3
```

M9.0 Starts reading parameters

M9.1 Starts writing parameters

M9.2 displays the read process

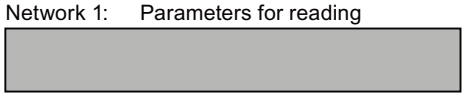
M9.3 displays the write process

The number of simultaneous requests for acyclic communication is limited. More detailed information can be found on http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/de/15364459 (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/15364459).

FC1: PAR_RD

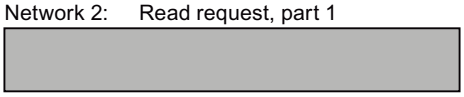


Network 1: Parameters for reading



```
      L     MB    40
      T     DB1.DBB   0
      L     B#16#01
      T     DB1.DBB   1
      T     DB1.DBB   2
      L     MB    62
      T     DB1.DBB   3
// ---------------------------------------
      L     MW    50
      T     DB1.DBW   6
      L     MB    58
      T     DB1.DBB   5
      L     MW    63
      T     DB1.DBW   8
// ---------------------------------------
      L     MW    52
      T     DB1.DBW   12
      L     MB    59
      T     DB1.DBB   11
      L     MW    65
      T     DB1.DBW   14
// ---------------------------------------
      L     MW    54
      T     DB1.DBW   18
      L     MB    60
      T     DB1.DBB   17
      L     MW    67
      T     DB1.DBW   10
// ---------------------------------------
      L     MW    56
      T     DB1.DBW   24
      L     MB    61
      T     DB1.DBB   23
      L     MW    69
      T     DB1.DBW   26
```

Network 2: Read request, part 1



```
      CALL  SFC   58
        REQ     :=M9.0
        IOID    :=B#16#54
        LADDR   :=W#16#170
        RECNUM  :=B#16#2F
        RECORD  :=P#DB1.DBX0.0 BYTE 28
        RET_VAL :=MW10
        BUSY    :=M8.1

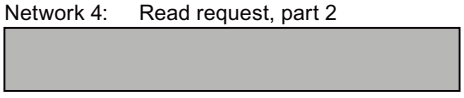
      U     M     8.1
      R     M     9.0
      S     M     9.2
```

Network 3: Read delay after a read request



```
      U     M     8.1
      UN    M     9.1
      L     S5T#1s
      SS    T     1
      U     M     8.3
      R     T     1
      U     T     1
      =     M     8.2
```

Network 4: Read request, part 2



```
      CALL  SFC   59
        REQ     :=M8.2
        IOID    :=B#16#54
        LADDR   :=W#16#170
        RECNUM  :=B#16#2F
        RET_VAL :=MW12
        BUSY    :=M8.3
        RECORD  :=P#DB2.DBX0.0 BYTE 36

      U     M     8.3
      R     M     8.2
```

Figure A-6 Reading parameters

Note

With PROFINET standard function blocks (SFB) instead of system functions (SFC)

With acyclic communication via PROFINET, you must replace the system functions with standard function blocks as follows:

- SFC 58 -> SFB 53
- SFC 59 -> SFB 52

Explanation of FC 1

Table A- 10 Request to read parameters

Data block DB 1	Byte n	Bytes n + 1	n
Header	**Reference** *MB 40*	**01 hex**: Read request	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters (m)** *MB 62*	2
Address, parameter 1	**Attribute** *10 hex: Parameter value*	**Number of indices** *MB 58*	4
	Parameter number *MW 50*		6
	Number of the 1st index *MW 63*		8
Address, parameter 2	**Attribute** *10 hex: Parameter value*	**Number of indices** *MB 59*	10
	Parameter number *MW 52*		12
	Number of the 1st index *MW 65*		14
Address, parameter 3	**Attribute** *10 hex: Parameter value*	**Number of indices** *MB 60*	16
	Parameter number *MW 54*		18
	Number of the 1st index *MW 67*		20
Address, parameter 4	**Attribute** *10 hex: Parameter value*	**Number of indices** *MB 61*	22
	Parameter number *MW 56*		24
	Number of the 1st index *MW 69*		26

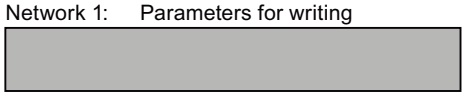
SFC 58 copies the specifications for the parameters to be read from DB 1 and sends them to the converter as a read request. No other read requests are permitted while this one is being processed.

After the read request and a waiting time of one second, the control takes the parameter values from the converter via SFC 59 and saves them in DB 2.

FC3: PAR_WR

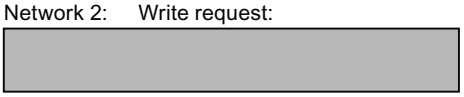


Network 1: Parameters for writing



```
      L     MB    42
      T     DB3.DBB   0
      L     B#16#02
      T     DB3.DBB   1
      L     B#16#01
      T     DB3.DBB   2
      L     MB    44
      T     DB1.DBB   3
//  ----------------------------------------
      L     MW    21
      T     DB3.DBW   6
      L     MW    23
      T     DB3.DBW   8
      L     MW    35
      T     DB3.DBW   12
      L     MB    25
      T     DB3.DBB   10
      L     MB    27
      T     DB3.DBB   11
```

Network 2: Write request:



```
CALL    SFC     58
  REQ       :=M9.1
  IOID      :=B#16#54
  LADDR     :=W#16#170
  RECNUM    :=B#16#2F
  RECORD    :=P#DB3.DBX0.0 BYTE 14
  RET_VAL   :=MW10
  BUSY      :=M8.1

U     M     8.1
R     M     9.1
S     M     9.3
```

Figure A-7 Writing parameters

Explanation of FC 3

Table A- 11 Request to change parameters

Data block DB 3	**Byte n**	**Bytes n + 1**	**n**
Header	**Reference** *MB 42*	**02 hex**: Change request	0
	01 hex	**Number of parameters** *MB 44*	2
Address, parameter 1	**10 hex**: Parameter value	**Number of indices** *00 hex*	4
	Parameter number *MW 21*		6
	Number of the 1st index *MW 23*		8
Values, parameter 1	**Format** *MB 25*	**Number of index values** *MB 27*	10
	Value of 1st index *MW35*		12

SFC 58 copies the specifications for the parameters to be written from DB 3 and sends them to the converter. No other write requests are permitted while this one is being processed.

A.4.4 Configuring slave-to-slave communication in STEP 7

Two drives communicate via standard telegram 1 with the higher-level control. In addition, drive 2 receives its speed setpoint directly from drive 1 (actual speed).

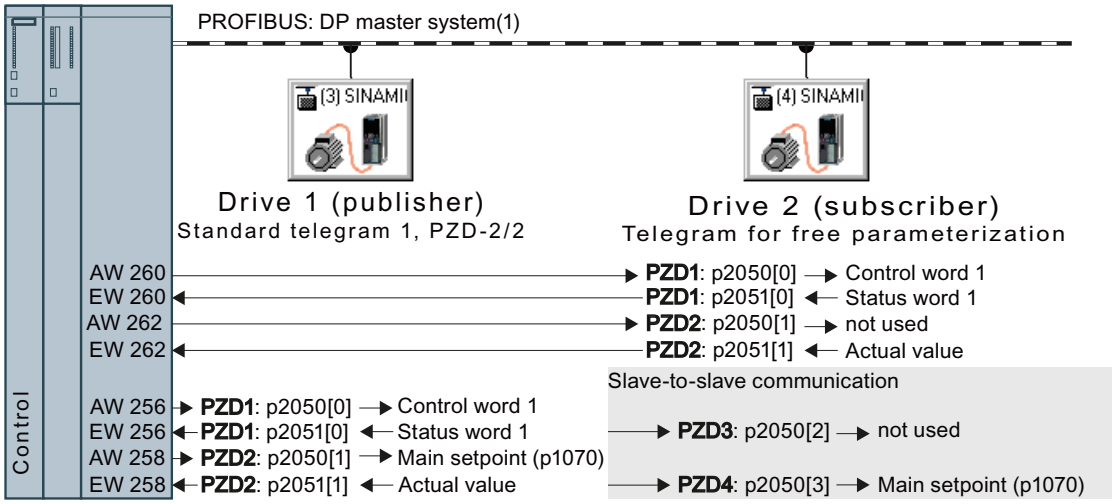
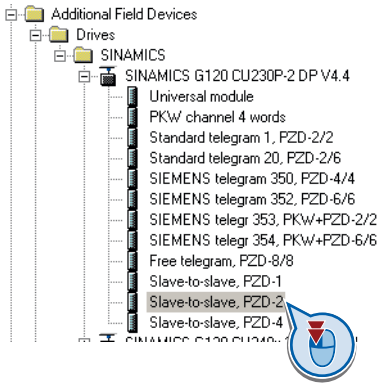


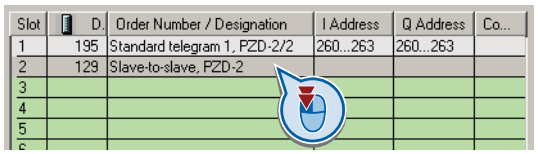
Figure A-8 Communication with the higher-level control and between the drives with slave-to-slave communication

Settings in the control

In HW Config in drive 2 (subscriber), insert a slave-to-slave communication object, e.g. "Slave-to-slave, PZD2".



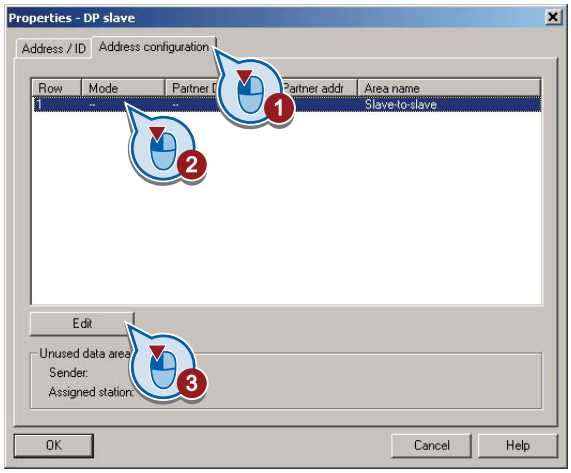
With a double-click, open the dialog box to make additional settings for the slave-to-slave communication.



① Activate the tab "Address configuration".

② Select line 1.

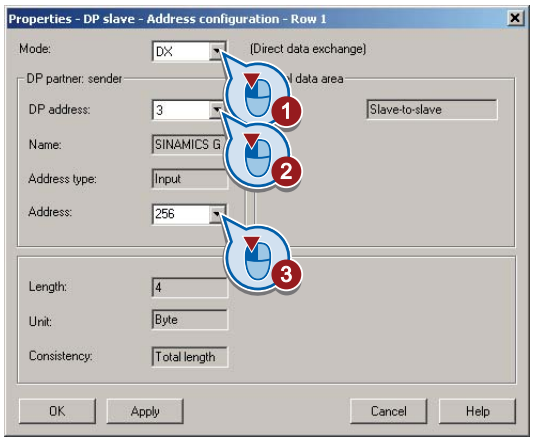
③ Open the dialog box in which you define the Publisher and the address area to be transferred.



① Select DX for direct data exchange

② Select the PROFIBUS address of drive 1 (publisher).

③ In the address field, select the start address specifying the data area to be received from drive 1. In the example, these are the status word 1 (PZD1) and the speed actual value with the start address 256.



Close both screen forms with OK. You have now defined the value range for slave-to-slave communication.

In the slave-to-slave communication, drive 2 receives the sent data and writes this into the next available words, in this case, PZD3 and PZD4.

Settings in drive 2 (subscriber)

Drive 2 is preset in such a way that it receives its setpoint from the higher-level control. In order that drive 2 accepts the actual value sent from drive 1 as setpoint, you must set the following:

- In drive 2 ,set the PROFIdrive telegram selection to "Free telegram configuration with BICO" (p0922 = 999).
- In drive 2, set the source of the main setpoint to p1070 = 2050.3.

A.5 Additional information on the inverter

A.5.1 Manuals for your inverter

Table A- 12 Manuals for your converter

Depth of the information	Manual	Contents	Languages	Download or order number
++	**Getting Started Guide** for the SINAMICS G120 converter with the CU230P-2; CU240B-2 and CU240E-2 Control Units	Installing the converter and commissioning.	English, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Chinese	Download manuals (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/22339653/133300) **SINAMICS Manual Collection** Documentation on DVD, order number 6SL3097-4CA00-0YG0
+++	**Operating instructions**	(this manual)		
+++	**List Manual** for the SINAMICS G120 converter with the CU230P-2 Control Units	Graphic function block diagrams. List of all parameters, alarms and faults.	English, German, Chinese	
+	**Getting Started Guide** for the following SINAMICS G120 Power Modules: • PM240, PM250 and PM260 • PM240-2 • PM230	Installing the Power Module	English	
+	**Installation Instructions** for reactors, filters and braking resistors	Installing components		
+++	**Hardware Installation Manual** for the following SINAMICS G120 Power Modules: • PM230 IP20 • PM230 IP55 • PM240 • PM240-2 • PM250 • PM260	Installing power modules, reactors and filters. Maintaining power modules.	German, English	
+++	**Operating Instructions** for the following Operator Panels: • BOP-2 • IOP	Operating Operator Panels, door mounting kit for mounting of IOP.		

Table A- 13 Support when configuring and selecting the converter

Manual or tool	Contents	Languages	Download or order number
Catalog D 31	Ordering data and technical information for the standard SINAMICS G converters	English, German, Italian, French, Spanish	Everything about SINAMICS G120 (www.siemens.en/sinamics-g120)
Online catalog (Industry Mall)	Ordering data and technical information for all SIEMENS products	English, German	
SIZER	The overall configuration tool for SINAMICS, MICROMASTER and DYNAVERT T drives, motor starters, as well as SINUMERIK, SIMOTION controls and SIMATIC Technology	English, German, Italian, French	You obtain SIZER on a DVD (Order number: 6SL3070-0AA00-0AG0) and in the Internet: Download SIZER (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/10804987/130000)
Configuration Manual	Selecting geared motors, motors, converters and braking resistor based on calculation examples	English, German	Configuration Manual (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/37728795)

If you have further questions

You can find additional information on the product and more in the Internet under: Product support (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/4000024).

In addition to our documentation, under this address we offer our complete knowledge base online: You can find the following information:

- Actual product information (Update), FAQ (frequently asked questions), downloads.
- The Newsletter contains the latest information on the products you use.
- The Knowledge Manager (Intelligent Search) helps you find the documents you need.
- Users and specialists from around the world share their experience and knowledge in the Forum.
- You can find your local representative for Automation & Drives via our contact database under "Contact & Partner".
- Information about local service, repair, spare parts and much more can be found under "Services".

A.6 Mistakes and improvements

If you come across any mistakes when reading this manual or if you have any suggestions for how it can be improved, then please send your suggestions to the following address or by E-mail:

Siemens AG
Drive Technologies
Motion Control Systems
Postfach 3180
91050 Erlangen, Germany

E-mail (mailto:documentation.standard.drives@siemens.com)

Index

8

87 Hz characteristic, 357

A

Acyclic data transfer, 112
Additional technology controller 0, 226
Additional technology controller 1, 226
Additional technology controller 2, 226
Adjustable parameters, 358
Alarm, 254, 307, 311
Alarm buffer, 254, 311
Alarm code, 311
Alarm history, 312
Alarm time, 254, 311
Alarm value, 311
Ambient temperature, 56, 218
Analog input, 47
  Function, 79
Analog output, 47
  Function, 79
Analog outputs
  Functions of the, 87
Analog setpoint, 50
Automatic mode, 191
Automatic restart, 242

B

Back up
  Parameter, 304
Back up parameters, 304
Basic commissioning, 48
BF (Bus Fault), 309
BICO block, 360
BICO parameters, 361
BICO technology, 79, 361
Bimetallic switch, 216
Binectors, 360
Block, 360
Blocking protection, 251, 252
BOP-2
  Display, 63
  Menu, 64
Braking
  Regenerative, 240
Braking chopper, 236
Braking method, 231
Braking module, 25
Braking resistor, 236
Break loose torque, 359
Bus fault, 309
Bypass, 16, 270

C

CAN
  COB, 152
  COB ID, 153
  Device profile, 152
  EMCY, 152
  NMT, 152
  PDO, 152
  SDO, 152
  SYNC, 152
CANopen, 51
CANopen communication profile, 152
Cascade control, 16, 266
Catalog, 383
CDS, 191
Centrifuge, 229, 231, 235, 240
Changing over
  Free PDO mapping / Predefined Connection Set, 160
Changing parameters
  BOP-2, 65
  STARTER, 75
Characteristic
  Additional, 208
  Linear, 207
  parabolic, 207
  square-law, 207
Checklist
  PROFIBUS, 95
  PROFINET, 92
Clockwise, 182
Closing lockout, 102, 182
COB, 152
COB ID, 153
Command Data Set, 191
Command source, 180
  Selecting, 193, 358

Commissioning
Guidelines, 54
Commutation dips, 21
Compound braking, 235, 236
Compressor, 60
Configuring support, 383
Configuring the interfaces, 48
Connectors, 360
Control Data Set, CDS, 191
Control mode, 359
Control Units, 15
Control word, 101, 104
Control word 1, 102
Control word 3, 104
Controlling the motor, 182
Conveyor belt, 231
Conveyor systems, 73
Correction manual, 384
Counterclockwise, 182
Crane, 229, 240

D

Data backup, 289, 292, 293
Data exchange fieldbus, 373
Data set 47, 112, 113, 378
Data transfer, 289, 292, 293
Date, 254
DC braking, 104, 232, 233, 234
DC link overvoltage, 220
DC link voltage, 220
Default settings, 56
Delta connection (Δ), 56, 357
Device profile, 152
Digital input, 47
Function, 79
Digital output, 47
Function, 79
Digital outputs
Functions of the, 82
DIP switch
Analog input, 84
Direction reversal, 182
Display parameters, 358
Down ramp, 359
Download, 27, 289, 292, 293
DP-V1 (PROFIBUS), 112
Drive Data Set, DDS, 283
Drive Data Sets, 283
Drive ES Basic, 365
DS 47, 113, 378
DTC (Digital Time Clock), 256

E

EMCY, 152
Energy recovery option, 240
Energy-saving mode, 16
Essential service mode, 16, 258
Extruders, 60

F

Factory settings, 62
Restoring the, 62
Fan, 60, 73
Fans, 229
Fault, 254, 307, 314
Acknowledge, 314, 315
Fault buffer, 254, 314
Fault case, 314
Fault code, 314
Fault history, 315
Fault time, 254, 314
received, 314
removed, 314
Fault value, 314
FFC (Flux Current Control), 207
Field weakening, 357
Firmware, 15
Firmware version, 358
Flow control, 247
Flying restart, 241, 242
Formatting, 286
Free PDO mapping / Predefined Connection Set, 160
Function blocks
Free, 279, 281
Functions
BOP-2, 64
Fan applications, 180
Heating/air-conditioning systems, 180
HVAC, 180
Overview, 179
Pump applications, 180
Technological, 180

G

Getting Started, 382
Grinding machine, 229, 231, 235
GSD, 49, 50, 365
GSD (Generic Station Description), 96, 151
GSDML (Generic Station Description Markup Language), 93

H

Hardware configuration, 364
Hardware Installation Manual, 382
Harmonics, 21
Hoisting gear, 60, 229, 236, 240
Horizontal conveyor, 235
Horizontal conveyors, 60, 236
Hotline, 383
HW Config, 364
HW Config (hardware configuration), 364

I

I2t monitoring, 215
Identifying motor data, 66, 74, 212, 214
Imax controller, 219
Inclined conveyors, 60, 229, 236
IND, 109, 124
Industry Mall, 383
Inhibit direction of rotation, 201
Installation, 29, 32
Interlock, 362
Inverter control, 180

J

JOG function, 189
Jogging, 49

K

KTY84 sensor, 216

L

LED
  BF, 309
  LNK, 309
  RDY, 309
LED (light emitting diode), 307
Level control, 247
Limit speed, 201
Line filter, 20
List Manual, 382
LNK (PROFINET Link), 309

M

Manual Collection, 382
Manual mode, 191
Manuals
  Converter accessories, 382
  Download, 382
  Overview, 382
Maximum current controller, 219
Maximum speed, 61, 201, 203, 359
Memory card
  Formatting, 286
  MMC, 286
  SD, 286
Menu
  BOP-2, 64
  Operator panel, 64
Minimum speed, 61, 201, 202, 359
Mistakes manual, 384
MMC (memory card), 286
MOP (motorized potentiometer), 195
MotID (motor data identification), 66
Motor control, 180
Motor standard, 224
Motor temperature sensor, 47, 217
Motorized potentiometer, 49, 50, 195
Multi-zone control, 263
Multi-zone controller, 16

N

Network management (NMT service), 166
NMT, 152
No-load monitoring, 251, 252

O

OFF1 command, 182
ON command, 182
Operating instructions, 382
Operation, 182
Operator panel
  Display, 63
  Menu, 64
Operator Panel
  BOP-2, 27
  Handheld, 27
  IOP, 27
  Mounting Kit IP54, 27
Order number, 15
Output reactor, 22
Overload, 219, 359
Overview
  Manuals, 382

Overview of the functions, 179
Overvoltage, 220
Overvoltage protection, 21

P

p0015, configuring macro interfaces, 48
Page index, 109, 124
Parameter channel, 107, 121
  IND, 109, 124
Parameter index, 109, 124
Parameter types, 358
PDO, 152, 160
PELV, 327
PID controller, 247
PLC functionality, 362
Power failure, 242
Power Module, 15
Pressure control, 247
Process industry, 50
Process variables of the technology controller, 226
Protection functions, 180
PTC sensor, 216
Pulse cancelation, 102
Pulse enable, 102
Pump, 60, 73

Q

Questions, 383
Quick stop, 181

R

Radio interference class, 20
Ramp-down time, 61, 204, 359
Ramp-function generator, 201
Rampup time,
RDY (Ready), 309
Ready, 182
Ready to start, 182
Real time clock, 254
Real Time Clock, 254
Regenerative power, 229
Reset
  Parameter, 62
Reverse direction of rotation, 201
Reversing, 201
RPDO, 158
RTC (Real Time Clock), 254, 256
Run sequence, 279
Runtime group, 279

S

Saw, 231, 235
Scaling fieldbus, 373
Scaling, analog input, 84
Scaling, analog output, 87
SD (memory card), 286
SDO, 152, 158
SDO protocols, 156
SDO services, 155
Sequence control, 181
Series commissioning, 27, 285
Setpoint processing, 180, 201
Setpoint source, 180
  Selecting, 195, 200, 358
Setting the node ID, 154
Short-circuit monitoring, 217
Signal interconnection, 360, 361
SIMATIC, 364, 365
SIZER, 383
Slave-to-slave communication, 112, 380
Stall protection, 251, 252
Standard telegram 1, 49
Star connection (Y), 56, 357
STARTER
  Download, 27
Starting characteristics
  Optimization, 208
State overview, 181
Status messages, 180
Status word, 101, 104
Status word 1, 103
Status word 3, 105
STEP 7 object manager, 365
Storage medium, 285
STW1 (control word 1), 101
STW3 (control word 3), 104
Subindex, 109, 124
Suggestions for improvement manual, 384
Support, 383
Switch off
  Motor, 181
  OFF1 command, 181
  OFF2 command, 181
  OFF3 command, 181
Switch on
  Motor, 181
  ON command, 181
SYNC, 152
System runtime, 222

T

Technical data
Control Unit, 327
Technology controller, 104, 247
Telegram 20, 50
Telegram types, 366
Temperature calculation, 218
Temperature monitoring, 215, 218
Temperature sensor, 47
Temperature switch, 216
Terminal assignment
Motorized potentiometer, 49
Three-wire control, 51
Two-wire control, 51
USS, 51
Three-wire control, 51, 182
Time, 254
Time control, 256
Time slices, 279
Time switch, 256
Torque monitoring
Speed-dependent, 251, 252
TPDO, 158
Two-wire control, 51, 182
Type plate
Control Unit, 15
Power Module, 15

U

Unit changeover, 223
Unit system, 225
Unwinders, 240
Up ramp, 359
Upload, 27, 287, 292, 293
USS, 51

V

V/f control, 205, 359
Vector control, 359
Sensorless, 210
Vector control, 359
Vector control, 359
Version
Control Unit, 15
Power Module, 15
Vertical conveyors, 60, 229, 236
Voltage boost, 208, 359

W

Winders, 60, 240
Wire-break monitoring, 84, 217

Z

ZSW1 (status word 1), 103
ZSW3 (status word 3), 105

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Drive Technologies
Motion Control Systems
P.O. Box 3180
91050 ERLANGEN
GERMANY

www.siemens.com/sinamics-g120

We reserve the right to make technical changes.
© Siemens AG 2012